

ЕСЛИ ЗАВТРА ЭКЗАМЕН?!

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

ВСЕ УСТНЫЕ ТЕМЫ
ДЛЯ ПОДГОТОВКИ
К ВЫПУСКНОМУ

11 ЭКЗАМЕНУ
→ И ЕГЭ
класс

Е.И. КИСУНЬКО, Е.С. МУЗЛАНОВА

Если завтра экзамен?!

Е.И. Кисунько, Е.С. Музланова

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

ВСЕ УСТНЫЕ ТЕМЫ
для подготовки
к выпускному экзамену и ЕГЭ

11

класс



АСТ • Астрель
Москва • 2014

УДК 373:811.111
ББК 81.2 Англ-922
К44

Кисунько, Е.И.

К44 Английский язык: Все устные темы для подготовки к выпускному экзамену и ЕГЭ: 11 класс / Е.И. Кисунько, Е.С. Музланова. — М.: АСТ, 2014. — 479, [1] с. — (Если завтра экзамен?!).

ISBN 978-5-17-037569-1

Цель пособия — помочь учащимся подготовиться к итоговой аттестации по английскому языку в соответствии с требованиями государственного стандарта. Оно содержит 21 главу, в которых представлены разнообразные устные темы, определенные требованиями ЕГЭ, а также тематикой бесед, рекомендованной Министерством образования и науки РФ для традиционной формы сдачи выпускного экзамена по английскому языку.

УДК 373:811.111
ББК 81.2 Англ-922

Учебное издание

Кисунько Елена Ильинична, Музланова Елена Сергеевна

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

**Все устные темы для подготовки к выпускному экзамену и ЕГЭ
11 класс**

Редакция «Образовательные проекты»

Ответственный редактор *Н.М. Тимакова*. Художественный редактор
Т.Н. Войткевич. Технический редактор *А.Л. Шелудченко*.
Компьютерная верстка *Э.А. Сандановой*. Корректор *И.Н. Мокина*

Общероссийский классификатор продукции
ОК-005-93, том 2; 953005 — литература учебная

Сертификат соответствия № РОСС RU.AE51.H16407 от 03.10.2012 г.

ООО «Издательство АСТ»

127006, г. Москва, ул. Садовая-Триумфальная, д. 16, стр. 3 пом. 1, комн. 3

Наши электронные адреса: www.ast.ru E-mail: astpub@aha.ru

ISBN 978-5-17-037569-1

© ООО «Издательство АСТ», 2014

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

От авторов	11
UNIT 1	
MY FAMILY, MY FRIENDS AND I	15
My family and I	15
Our Flat	17
Family and Family Problems	19
My Attitude to Family	20
Household Chores	22
My Ideal House	24
Dialogues	25
Writing	28
UNIT 2	
RELATIONSHIP WITH FRIENDS, RELATIVES AND ADULTS	29
My Best Friend	29
Teens' Problems	30
Generation Gap	33
It's Great to Be a Teenager	35
Youth Takes More Risks	37
Russian and American Teens	38
Success in Life	40
Teenagers and Money	42
Childhood and Adolescence	44
In Work and out of Work	46
Understanding Boys and Girls	47
Teenagers in Great Britain	49
Teenage Groups and Movements	51
International Youth Contacts	53
Dialogues	54
Writing	57

UNIT 3	
LEISURE ACTIVITIES	59
Leisure Activities of British and Russian Teenagers	59
How the British Relax	62
Club Culture in Britain	63
Great Dating Ideas	64
Hobbies	66
How Teenagers Spend Their Holidays	67
Dialogues	69
Writing	72
UNIT 4	
FASHION	74
Fashion and Clothes	74
Modern Styles	76
Teenage Clothes and Fashion	78
Tattoos and Body Piercing	80
A Short History of Hair	82
Fashion and Colour	84
Dialogues	86
Writing	88
UNIT 5	
FOOD AND SHOPPING	90
Eating Habits in Britain	91
American Food	92
Shops in Britain	94
British Shopping Habits	96
American Shopping Habits	98
Shopping	100
Dialogues	102
Writing	107
UNIT 6	
EDUCATION AND CAREER	109
Were You Happy at School?	109
My Ideal School	110

Where to Go After School?	112
My Further Education	114
Choosing a Career	117
My Future Profession	119
Dialogues	122
Writing	127

UNIT 7

EDUCATIONAL SYSTEMS	130
British Educational System	130
Schools in Britain	132
Higher Education in Britain	135
American System of Education	137
School Education in the USA	139
Higher Education in the USA	141
Schools in Russia	144
Higher Education in Russia	146
Dialogues	147
Writing	152

UNIT 8

LEARNING FOREIGN LANGUAGES	153
English Today	153
English as a World Language	154
Learning Foreign Languages	157
British English	159
American English	161
Dialogues	163
Writing	167

UNIT 9

TRAVELLING AND TOURISM	169
Travelling	169
Seasons and Travelling	171
Travelling ... What for?	173
Tourism: Pros and Cons	175
Dialogues	177
Writing	185

UNIT 10	
GREAT BRITAIN	187
Great Britain	187
British Climate	189
Britain and the World	191
British Government	193
British Character	195
National Stereotypes	197
What to See in the UK?	200
Dialogues	202
Writing	205
UNIT 11	
THE USA	206
The United States of America	207
American Climate	208
American Political System	210
American Government	212
Political Parties	215
American People	217
American Values and Beliefs	219
Dialogues	221
Writing	225
UNIT 12	
CANADA, AUSTRALIA, NEW ZEALAND	227
Canada	227
The Symbols of Canada	230
Canada's Inventions	231
Australia	233
The Symbols of Australia	236
Plants and Animals in Australia	237
New Zealand	239
Dialogues	241
Writing	244

UNIT 13

FAMOUS CITIES AND TOWNS	245
London	245
London Today	248
Famous British Cities and Towns	250
Washington, DC	253
Main Cities of the USA	255
Main Cities of Canada	258
Canberra	261
Sydney	262
New Zealand's Main Cities	264
Living in the City	266
Dialogues	268
Writing	272

UNIT 14

RUSSIA	274
Russia	274
Russian Political System	276
Russian Character	278
Moscow	280
Saint Petersburg	282
Ancient Russian Cities	284
Famous Russian Cities	286
Dialogues	289
Writing	295

UNIT 15

CULTURE	297
Russian Culture	297
Moscow Museums and Galleries	299
Museums and Art Galleries in St. Petersburg	302
Russian Achievements and Success	304
Artistic and Cultural Life in Britain	306
London Museums and Galleries	309
The Arts in the USA	312

Museums and Galleries in Washington, DC	314
Cultural Life in New York	317
British Music and Musicians	318
Music in America	321
Russian Music and Musicians	322
Music in Our Life	325
History of Music	328
Reading Preferences	330
British Writers and Literary Places	333
Dialogues	335
Writing	340

UNIT 16

HOLIDAYS AND CELEBRATIONS	342
Traditions in Our Life	342
British Traditions and Customs	344
British Holidays	346
American Holidays	350
Memorial Day in the USA	352
Mother's Day	353
Columbus Day	354
Traditional Russian Holidays and Celebrations	356
My Favourite Holidays and Celebrations	358
Christmas in Australia	359
Dialogues	361
Writing	364

UNIT 17

FAMOUS PEOPLE	366
Famous people	366
George Washington	369
Franklin D. Roosevelt	371
Martin Luther King	373
Charles Dickens	376
John Ronald Tolkien	378
Joanne Kathleen Rowling	380
O. Henry	383
Mark Twain	385

Mark Twain's Famous Aphorisms	386
Charlie Chaplin	388
Madame Tussaud	389
Dialogues	392
Writing	395

UNIT 18

SPORTS AND HEALTH	396
Sports in Britain	396
Sports in America	397
Olympic Games	399
Sports in Russia	402
To Watch or to Participate?	404
Sports: For and Against	406
My Favourite Sport	408
Healthy Way of Life	409
Dialogues	412
Writing	416

UNIT 19

MASS MEDIA AND INFORMATION TECHNOLOGIES	417
British Television	417
Newspapers and Magazines in Britain	419
Mass Media in the USA	421
Russian Television	424
TV or not TV?	426
Television: Pros and Cons	428
Learning About the World	431
Computers	435
The Internet: Pros and Cons	437
Dialogues	439
Writing	444

UNIT 20

OUR ENVIRONMENT	446
Animals	446
Trees	448

Pollution	450
Environmental Problems	452
How to Help Our Planet	455
Dialogues	457
Writing	462

UNIT 21

INTERCULTURAL COMMUNICATION	464
Making Introductions	464
Greetings	466
Miss, Mrs or Ms?	467
The Art of Speaking	468
The Language of Conversation	470
Body Language	472
Culture Traditions in Britain	475
Dialogues	476
Writing	479

От авторов

Цель предлагаемого пособия — помочь учащимся 10–11 классов школ, гимназий и лицеев подготовиться к итоговой аттестации по английскому языку в соответствии с требованиями Государственного стандарта. Одним из главных аспектов проверки знаний на экзамене является практическое владение устной речью в стандартных ситуациях в рамках изученных тем, а также коммуникативная компетенция учащихся.

В настоящее время наряду с традиционной формой сдачи экзамена по английскому языку проводится эксперимент по введению единого государственного экзамена по иностранному языку, целью которого является создание системы объективной оценки подготовленности выпускников общеобразовательных учреждений и абитуриентов, поступающих в вузы. ЕГЭ включает 5 разделов: «Аудирование», «Чтение», «Грамматика и лексика», «Письмо», «Говорение». Предлагаемое пособие поможет учащимся успешно подготовиться к выполнению заданий по разделам «Говорение» и «Письмо», а также может быть использовано для развития навыков чтения в широком диапазоне тем.

Раздел ЕГЭ «Говорение» состоит из трех заданий: высказывание по предложенной речевой ситуации (15–20 фраз); диалог-обмен фактической информацией (не менее 5 реплик); диалог-обмен мнениями (не менее 10 реплик).

Пособие содержит 21 главу, в которых представлено 160 разнообразных устных тем, определенных требованиями ЕГЭ (табл. 1), а также тематикой бесед, рекомендованной Министерством образования и науки РФ при традиционной форме сдачи экзамена по английскому языку (табл. 2). Каждая тема представляет собой законченное сообщение и содержит исчерпывающую информацию, необходимую для успешной сдачи экзамена.

Таблица 1

Тематика общения	Unit
1. Мои друзья и я	1
2. Взаимоотношения в семье, со сверстниками и взрослыми	2
3. Учеба и выбор профессии	6
4. Проблемы свободного времени	3
5. Здоровый образ жизни, спорт	18
6. Международные молодежные контакты	2
7. Города (села) своей страны и стран изучаемого языка и их достопримечательности	14, 13
8. Путешествия	9
9. Покупки	5
10. Средства массовой информации и новые информационные технологии	19
11. Молодежная мода	4
12. Праздники и знаменательные даты	16
13. Природа и экология	20
14. Деятели культуры и науки	17
15. Сведения о культуре стран изучаемого языка и их вкладе в мировую культуру	15
16. Географические и природные условия стран изучаемого языка	10, 11, 12
17. Организация быта и досуга в странах изучаемого языка	3
18. Общие сведения о системе образования в странах изучаемого языка	7
19. Особенности речевого и неречевого поведения в процессе межличностного и межкультурного обмена	21

Таблица 2

Тематика бесед	Unit
1. Наша страна	14
2. Москва	14
3. Страны изучаемого языка	10, 11, 12
4. Проблемы молодежи	2
5. Моя визитная карточка	1
6. Выбор профессии	6
7. Спорт и здоровый образ жизни	18
8. Изучение иностранных языков	8
9. Путешествия	9
10. Охрана окружающей среды	20
11. Праздники и традиции в России и в странах изучаемого языка	16
12. Мои любимые праздники	16
13. Выдающиеся деятели нашей страны и страны изучаемого языка	17
14. Средства массовой информации	19
15. Свободное время. Хобби	3
16. Школа	6, 7
17. Искусство (музыка, театр, живопись, кино)	15
18. Музеи и картинные галереи	15
19. Книги	15

Информативная насыщенность текстов расширяет кругозор учащихся и способствует развитию навыков устной речи. В книге представлены познавательные материалы о России, Великобритании, США и других странах изучаемого языка, в текстах использованы лексика и орфография, традиционные для этих стран. Это позволит учащимся расширить свою лингвострановедческую компетенцию и показать

степень информированности в области социокультурных знаний, касающихся народов нашей страны и стран изучаемого языка. Современная лексика и идиоматические выражения помогут обогатить словарный запас учащихся. Тексты снабжены списками слов и выражений, которые рекомендуются для запоминания и последующего употребления в речи. Сопровождающие текст вопросы помогут лучше подготовиться к беседе с экзаменатором.

В каждую главу также включен раздел Dialogues. В него вошло более 100 диалогов, которые наглядно демонстрируют, как учащиеся могут использовать представленную в темах информацию для решения коммуникативных задач, а также являются дополнительным источником информации по данному разделу.

В соответствии с требованиями ЕГЭ в каждой главе имеется раздел Writing. В пособии представлено 45 образцов открыток, личных и деловых писем, которые могут быть использованы для подготовки к выполнению письменных заданий единого экзамена. Следует обратить внимание учащихся на то, что при написании открытки адрес получателя пишется справа, а текст письма слева. При оформлении личного письма в правом верхнем углу указывается адрес отправителя, а под ним дата. Если письмо носит деловой характер, то после даты у левого края поля указывается адрес получателя письма.

Пособие может быть использовано для самостоятельной подготовки к контрольным работам по говорению и письму, а также для более углубленного изучения английского языка. Оно будет полезно и учителям, которые найдут в нем необходимый материал для работы на уроках.

Надеемся, что это пособие поможет быстро и качественно подготовиться к итоговой аттестации по английскому языку и успешно сдать экзамен.

Желаем успеха!

UNIT 1

MY FAMILY, MY FRIENDS AND I

My Family and I

Hello! Let me introduce myself to you. I'm Alexander, Alex for short. I live in Moscow. I'm a student of the 11th grade. We are a family of four: my mother, my father, my elder brother and me. We live in a block of flats on the tenth floor. There are three rooms in our flat and we have all modern conveniences. I share a room with my elder brother. My brother is a student. We don't have any secrets from each other. We get on very well with my brother. Sometimes I even borrow his clothes and he never gets annoyed. We don't feel competitive because we have different interests. I'm more academic and he's more artistic. But we are fond of sports very much. We both go to the swimming pool twice a week. It helps us to keep fit, it gives us good stamina, and it's good for our hearts and lungs. We hardly ever quarrel or fight. My brother never sees me as being in the way. I think I'm quite easy-going. I'm similar in personality to my mother. She is always very friendly to all although she can be quite critical of people. I like to be friendly to the people around me, and I don't normally like to let my bad moods and anger inside me come out and affect other people. I don't know if I'm particularly obsessive.

I like to do different things. I am fond of collecting different things. One day I collect toy cars, the other day I want to collect badges. But most of all I prefer collecting stamps because it's a family hobby. You can learn a tremendous amount through stamps, especially about history. Stamps are a great way to bring history. All the members of my family collect stamps and the theme of our collection is history. It is a long-lasting hobby and who knows — in 20 years or so it may have become an impressive collection that can be appreciated and enjoyed by my own children too.

I have grandparents, my mother's parents. They don't live with us, but I often visit them. They live a very routine life but they like it. I can't put my finger on their flat exactly, but there is

some atmosphere in their house like nothing has changed for twenty years. My parents are doctors and they work in the hospital. They are very giving, caring persons and always consider those around them. They work very hard in their hospital and really put all their energy in their work. They are very much in love, even after years of being married and always caring for each other. My parents have warm friendly eyes and always express a spirit of goodwill towards people.

I love my parents very much and my ambition is to be a doctor too, because I want to help people if they have some problems with their health. I am originally became interested in medicine during my 9th grade, when I realized that my skills and my traits would serve me well in my future career. Besides I'm good at Chemistry, Biology and History and they are my favourite subjects. I'm not very good at English but I understand that it is one of the most important subjects now, and I try my best to improve it.

We have a pet. It's a dog. Her name is Sunny. Her mother is Scotch shepherd dog. I am never lonely with my pet. She is a great favourite with everyone in our family. All people admire her. She wears a good collar with her name. She especially likes morning walks with my father.

My native city is Moscow. Many people associate Moscow with the Kremlin and Red Square as the heart of the city. It is really the oldest historic and architectural centre of Moscow and my favourite place in Moscow, because it's connected with the history of my country.

Nowadays the Moscow Kremlin with all the beauty of the palaces and cathedrals is a wonderful sight. All these cathedrals have been converted into museums. Ivan the Great Bell Tower, one of the most remarkable structures of the 16th century, rises in the centre of the Kremlin. It unites all the Kremlin Cathedrals into a majestic ensemble.

One of the well-known Kremlin museums is the Armoury Chamber. It was built in 1851. The famous golden cap of Monomach, the first Russian imperial crown of Catherine II made of silver, and many other precious historic items are exhibited there. So when you come to my native city, I'll show you all interesting and amazing sights of it.

Vocabulary

block of flats — многоквартирный дом
conveniences — удобства
competitive — соперничающий, конкурирующий
easy-going — общительный
to quarrel — ссориться
tremendous — огромный
stamina — выносливость, стойкость, выдержка
obsessive — одержимый
long-lasting — длительный

to appreciate — оценивать
caring — заботливый
ambition — честолюбие, стремление
shepherd dog — овчарка
to associate — ассоциироваться
to convert — превращать
majestic — волшебный
Armoury Chamber — Оружейная палата
Monomach — Мономах

Questions

1. Where and when were you born? 2. How old are you now?
3. What can you tell us about your flat? 4. What is your hobby?
5. What is your ambition? 6. What can you tell us about your nearest and dearest? 7. What are your parents? 8. What subjects are you good at? 9. What are your favourite subjects at school? 10. What do you know about the historic places of Moscow?

Our Flat

I live in Moscow in a block of flats. It's a typical Moscow 16-storey building. We don't live in the centre of Moscow, but we live not far from the metro station. It takes us 10 minutes to get to the centre of the city. There are three rooms in our flat and we have all modern conveniences. The building is centrally heated; there is cold and hot running water in our flat. We have good kitchen and bathroom facilities really. There is a big living room and two bedrooms in our flat. My brother and I share one big bedroom. We have two beds, a couple of very comfortable chairs and a lot of storage space for us to keep our things. In the hall there is a little corner where our computers live. And in the living room there is a video, a very good hi-fi system and a fantastic television. Our windows look down on a football pitch, which is

occasionally used by schoolchildren. A lot of trees are visible from our windows and we can see the top of the church too.

One of the great advantages of our flat is that our block of flats isn't next to any big roads. So we get virtually no noise from outside. Well, there are two layers of glass separating us from the outside world, a kind of double-glazing. We live on the 11th floor. And I like living high up, because a lot of light comes in. I like to have more sunlight, I think it's healthy for the spirit.

My mother always keeps fresh flowers in our flat. I like flowers very much and so does my brother. They make our flat feel alive. My mother waters them regularly, and I think they are happy, as they are well taken care of.

My mother is a successful career woman, and my father is a software designer. There is always a very nice family atmosphere in our flat. Our parents are very friendly. And besides, every little detail, every picture on the walls, every vase of flowers gives the place a homely atmosphere. So I can say that our flat is very cosy.

Vocabulary

is centrally heated — имеет

центральное отопление

facilities — оборудование

storage space — место для хранения

football pitch — футбольное поле

hi-fi system — музыкальный центр

visible — видимый

advantage — преимущество

to separate — разделять

double-glazing — двойные стекла

sunlight — солнечный свет

spirit — дух, моральная сила

successful career woman —

женщина с успешной карьерой

software designer — разработчик программного обеспечения

cosy — уютный

Questions

1. Where do you live? 2. How many floors are there in your block of flats? 3. What floor do you live on? 4. What modern conveniences do you have in your flat? 5. How many rooms are there in your flat? 6. What furniture is there in your flat? 7. Are there fresh flowers in your flat? 8. Is your flat comfortable and cosy?

Family and Family Problems

A family is an essential part of our society. A family is a little world. According to researches, households of three or even four generations will become typical.

Firstly a family has things shared together like dreams, hopes and possessions. I think it is great. Besides, we need a family for comfort and protection.

Secondly a family is a place where they respect dwellers, a place where all members can enjoy the dignity of their own. Some people say that privacy is impossible in an extended family. But in my opinion trust is more important for a happy family than any other feature.

There are a lot of problems in an extended family, especially between brothers and sisters. They always treat one another badly. Of course, if you have a lot of brothers and sisters, there will be no privacy. But on the other hand, when you have no brothers or sisters, life becomes boring.

There are a lot of problems and conflicts that appear between teenagers and their parents. They don't understand each other.

Parents always want their children to be clever and learn harder. They don't bother themselves to understand their children. They are always glad when their children have trouble with things that are very valuable for them.

Parents always cheat teenagers. They say that school is very important for us and to enter an institute we should have good marks in our school-leaving certificates.

But it's not what the children want. I think that it is necessary to bridge the generation gap, and parents and children must come to an agreement.

Vocabulary

research — исследование
household — семья, домашнее хозяйство
generation — поколение
to share — делить
dream — мечта

hope — надежда
possession — собственность
protection — защита
to respect — уважать
dignity — чувство собственного достоинства

dweller — обитатель, жилец
privacy — личная жизнь
extended family — семья из
нескольких поколений
trust — доверие
to bother — беспокоиться
trouble — проблема
valuable — значимый, ценный

school certificate — школьный
аттестат
to cheat — обманывать
to bridge — наводить мосты,
преодолевать препятствия
generation gap — конфликт
между поколениями
agreement — соглашение

Questions

1. What is a generation gap? 2. How should we overcome it? 3. What family is extended? 4. Do you agree that an extended family is better? 5. Is your family an extended one or not? 6. What problems are there in an extended family? 7. Do you agree that parents often cheat you? 8. Do you think that a school certificate with good results is important?

My Attitude to Family

I'm a perfectionist. However, if you ask me about an ideal family, I'll shrug my shoulders. I think that such an ideal family should be a very normal one.

Today we can talk about a family consisting of two parents (both successful) and two children (both healthy, with rosy cheeks) — a new cell of post-industrial society. At weekends they have breakfast together, then go to the park/picnic/zoo, etc., they broadly smile (but is this smile sincere?)... I can't see any values. It can't be real, can it? Don't forget about conflicts between the generations ("fathers and sons") and between "two loving hearts" (husband and wife).

Marriage is a very important decision. Common interests, purposes, dreams and thoughts — they should be present. And a joint life should be balanced by harmony and disharmony. And parents shouldn't be ashamed of saying "I love you, honey!" in front of their children. Children need to know that their parents love them and each other.

There is a proverb: “There are little problems with small children and big problems with big ones”. I suppose it’s true. The more we grow, the more patient our parents should be. Every generation is different from the one that preceded it. The situation in economic and political spheres and in society changes greatly with every year. So, our parents shouldn’t make us live according to their values. Of course, their judgements are quite right (experience is a great thing that is acquired with years), but I suppose that children want to make their own mistakes and to drain the cup of life. As for me, I always look for the golden mean.

Respect, support, confidence, comprehension are very important. But what is the most important in a family? Of course, love. Love each other and everything will be OK. All obstacles will be overcome, and all gentle words will be found, and this cruel world will turn to you with a kind smile.

I’m sure that my parents will always love me and support me. So shall I. Their love helps me to deal with envious and brutal people. Their love will protect me in our difficult life.

Vocabulary

perfectionist — человек, добивающийся морального совершенства

to shrug one’s shoulders —

пожимать плечами

rosy cheeks — румяные щеки

post-industrial society — постиндустриальное общество

broadly — широко

sincere — искренний

value — ценность

marriage — замужество, женитьба

joint life — совместная жизнь

to balance — балансировать

harmony — гармония

to be ashamed — стыдиться

honey — дорогой

proverb — пословица

patient — терпеливый

to precede — предшествовать

sphere — сфера

judgement — суждение, умение правильно разбираться

to acquire — приобретать

to drain the cup of life — прожить жизнь со всеми ее трудностями

golden mean — золотая середина

respect — уважение

support — поддержка

confidence — уверенность

comprehension — понимание

obstacle — препятствие

to overcome — преодолевать

gentle — нежный

cruel — жестокий

envious — завистливый

brutal — безжалостный

to protect — защищать

Questions

1. Are you a perfectionist? Prove it. 2. What is your attitude to family? 3. What problems do parents have with their children? 4. What problems with your parents do you have? 5. What problems do your parents have with you? 6. Can you overcome these problems? 7. What is the most important in the family? 8. How does your parents' love help you in your life?

Household Chores

Any family is in charge of the welfare, comfort, health, success in work and good relations of every member in the family.

There are stereotypical responsibilities of the husband, the wife and the children. They say that the wife's responsibilities are, basically, to do everything. The typical role of husband is that he goes out to work and earns money for the family. Maybe, at the weekend he cleans his car and does more technical things around the house. Lots of people in Britain are really into DIY, that's do-it-yourself, and they try to make furniture, put their own bathroom appliances, put tiles on the bathroom walls themselves, etc.

In many countries now it's more accepted that a woman can have a family and a career, whereas before it was seen as something shocking, and men were outraged that their children would be left with strangers, and thought that it was the wife's duty to bring them up. I think that's all changed now. I think responsibility for all of the important aspects of life should be shared by both of the parents, especially bringing up the children. I think that the care and early education of children shouldn't only fall into the hands of the mother, but that the father should also take an active part.

I think that children should be given as much responsibility as they'd like to take on from as early as possible. I don't think that they should be too smothered by parents and have everything done for them if they can do things for themselves. It's very good for a child to learn to be able to take care of himself and his things. Of course, the more things he can do, the more versatile person he can become.

As for me, I have always been conscious that the interests of my family ought to be more important than my own wishes and desires, such as buying expensive new things or hanging around with some pals. I don't mind this because I like household chores. In our family I do a lot of things, because my parents usually work. I do most of the washing up, tidy my room and make my bed. I often go shopping. Cleaning the room is probably the best one, and the worst I think is cleaning the bath, because it kills your back. My father and I try to help my mother to do the chores. Everyone in the family is responsible for cleaning and repairing things when they have free time. In order to have a loving family every person ought to do the chores. That is the way I see it.

If I were married, I'd like to create a situation where all of these tasks would be shared fairly equally between me and my husband. Of course, if I like doing some things more and my husband would like other things more, this would be OK. I don't like the situation that my husband goes out to work every day, and I would be just stuck inside the house looking after children, keeping the clothes clean and cooking. This seems very unequal to me.

Vocabulary

welfare — благосостояние
household chores — домашние обязанности
responsibility — ответственность
basically — в основном
bathroom appliances — оборудование для ванной
tile — кафель
to accept — принимать
shocking — шокирующий
to outrage — нарушать закон, поступать возмутительно
duty — обязанность
to bring up — воспитывать
to fall into the hands — ложиться на плечи

to share — делить
to smother — подавлять
versatile — разносторонний
to mind — возражать
washing up — мытье посуды
to tidy — убирать
to make one's bed — стелить кровать
to kill one's back — повредить спину
to create — создавать
fairly equally — в равной степени справедливо
to stick — приклеиваться
unequal — неравный

Questions

1. What are your household chores? 2. Are they difficult? 3. What are your parents' household chores? 4. Who will fulfil household chores in your future family? 5. What is an ideal situation concerning household chores in the family? 6. Who shares responsibility in your family? Why?

My Ideal House

My ideal house would be situated in the countryside, well away from any large cities, maybe even away from roads if possible. I don't like living in the city. The air in the city is a problem. The air quality is awful.

A lot of pollution comes from factories and plants. When I come back from the countryside, I immediately smell the pollution of the city. That's why I prefer living in the country. I would love to live somewhere near running water or near the sea. Also, it would be nice not to have to rely on the central water system, but to have a well or a spring nearby with fresh drinking water. Maybe this is a bit too much of a luxury to ask for. I like trees very much too. That's why I'd like to live near a forest.

I'm a good swimmer, so I'd like to have a river, a sea or a lake nearby. I'd like to live in a stone farmhouse and to have a good view of the sun going down in the evening. I'm fond of flowers. So I'd like to have a lot of flowerbeds in the garden. And, of course, I dream about keeping a lot of fresh flowers in the house. They make a home feel alive. I would really like it.

Then, I'm learning to play the piano now. That's why I would like to have a piano in my house. I think that my standard is improving very quickly and I seem to be talented at almost any instrument I put my hand to.

I can't imagine living with a lot of animals — a cat, a dog, maybe a horse. If I had time to look after them, we would have chickens for eggs and maybe a goat for milk. I like natural products, and I want my family to eat them.

Vocabulary

countryside — пригород
quality — качество
awful — ужасный
pollution — загрязнение
to smell — вдыхать, нюхать
running water — *зд.* водоем
с проточной водой
to rely — полагаться, доверять
central heating system — система
центрального отопления
well — колодец
spring — ключ, источник,
родник
nearby — около

stone — камень
to go down — *зд.* заходить (*о солнце*)
flowerbed — цветочная грядка,
клумба
to dream — мечтать
fresh flowers — свежие цветы
alive — живой
standard is improving very quickly
— уровень улучшается очень
быстро
to put one's hand to — браться
за что-л., заниматься
chicken — цыпленок
goat — коза

Questions

1. What is the house of your dream? 2. Can you realize your ideas in future? 3. Where do you prefer to live — in the country or in the city? 4. What are positive aspects of living in the country? 5. What are negative aspects of living in the country? 6. What are positive aspects of living in the city? 7. What are negative aspects of living in the city? 8. How can you choose the golden mean?

Dialogues

1.

— Hello!

— Hello! Do you have grandparents?

— Yes, I'm a lucky one. I have two grannies and two grandpas.

And you?

— So do I. Let's talk about our grandparents.

— OK. I'd like to tell you about my mother's father. He is a very interesting man for me. He has a very big garden, and he keeps bees, five bee hives. Once I organized an excursion to his hives. It was interesting to watch his work with his hives.

— Did you taste honey?

— Sure. He gave us fresh honey with tea. All my classmates were very glad to taste it.

— It's very interesting. And I'd like to tell you about my father's mother. She has a piano, and she is a very good musician. When she was young, she used to go to different parts of our country with the concerts. I think that my musical ability comes from her. Now she doesn't have concerts, she daily teaches me to play the piano. I'm very thankful to her.

— OK. Thank you for our talk. Maybe I'll come to your place to listen to your granny.

— Maybe. And I'd like to go to the country to see your grandpa's hives. Bye.

— Bye-bye.

2.

— What flat do you live in?

— It's rather large and comfortable. And a good thing about our flat is that the kitchen is rather big.

— Who do you live there with?

— I live there with my parents and my elder sister. And you?

— I live with my parents and grandparents.

— Are they still working?

— No, they are on pension.

— And where do they live?

— In a country house, not very far from Moscow. It takes me 35 minutes to get to the downtown.

— Do you have all modern conveniences?

— Sure. And our house is rather big. It's a two-storey building. I have a room of my own there. There is a big living room and a kitchen, but the bathroom is not very large.

— I'd like to come to your place. Can I do it tomorrow?

— Of course. Write down my address. See you tomorrow at 5 pm.

— Bye-bye.

3.

— What is your idea of the perfect flat?

— I don't think it's possible.

— Let's try!

— OK. I think there will be ten rooms in it, including a large living room and a kitchen.

— But a person doesn't need ten rooms.

— It's only a dream. Besides, there will be a river or a lake not far from the house.

— What about flowers?

— Of course. There will be a lot of flowerbeds with different bright flowers.

— What about furniture?

— I dream about old pieces of furniture. I prefer this style. And there will be a home library in one of the rooms. You know, I'm a bookworm. I read a lot.

— Maybe you'll draw such a perfect flat?

— Sure. Let's meet tomorrow. I'll show you my picture.

Bye-bye.

— See you tomorrow. Bye.

4.

— I think there is a lot housework to do.

— As for me, I don't think so.

— But I do. There is a lot of dust everywhere and a lot of mess in the kitchen.

— That's true, but I can't do it because I'm busy.

— Really? You eat, drink and watch television! And it means that you're busy!

— But the TV programme is very interesting today. Would you like to sit down and watch this film with me? It's about cops and robbers. Besides I think this is more interesting than doing household chores.

— But I can't watch TV.

— Why not?

— The television is too dusty!

Writing

1.

My honey,

Thank you for your postcard. It was very interesting to get some information about your new flat.

I'd like to come and see everything with my own eyes. When I imagine your large kitchen with a balcony full of flowers, I begin to envy. It's my dream to have such a kitchen!

Is there a river or a lake nearby? How do you usually get to your office? How long does it take you to get there?

I love you so much,

Susan

2.

25 Harrington Road
South Kensington
London SW7 3EU

14 November 2005

Dear Mum,

How are you? It's nice of you to write me about our new country house. I hope you liked it. I wish I were there with you.

I think I'll be able to return back in a month. Unfortunately I have a lot of work to do here. By the way, I'm moving to a new flat and I am sending you my new address.

Looking forward to seeing you,

Jane

UNIT 2

RELATIONSHIP WITH FRIENDS, RELATIVES AND ADULTS

My Best Friend

Friends, those that you choose to spend your time with and that you love, are one of the most important aspects of our life. Friendship is something that cannot be bought or sold. It's just something that happens naturally between people that have something in common. Such friends feel similar to each other in a certain way, or just like being together.

There are many factors which are important in a friendship. One of them is keeping up communication: how often you can see your friend, whether you are ready to help your friend. I think some kind of shared interest or a similar sense of humour is important. Also, there are some shared points of reference, so you always have something to talk about. Many people feel that in order to keep a friendship strong it's important to live in close vicinity to each other and to be able to meet regularly. If you can see your friend very often and you can feel that you have a lot in common, a very deep friendship can develop.

There is no limit to the number of friends that you can have. But I think that a close friend can be only one. My close friend is my classmate. He is rather tall and overweight. I don't feel he takes as much exercise as he should. He used to go to the gym, but he found it really boring. His main exercise is walking and swimming. He has very short hair. He is brown-haired. He has blue eyes and wears glasses. He is calm and quite easy-going. We have long walks with each other during which we discuss different things. We learn through the experience of all the things that happen to us. We try not to get too depressed by everything and think about the positive side of the things. My friend is witty and you can laugh with him and joke. If my friend is ill or in trouble, I always try to help him cope with his problems. We are equal in our friendship. There is a

saying that communication can occur between equals, and I really believe it is so. I really feel that a fantastic foundation for achieving or creating anything is a strong friendship.

Vocabulary

friendship — дружба

to buy — покупать

to sell — продавать

naturally — естественно

to have something in common —
иметь что-то общее

to keep up communication —
общаться

shared interest — общий интерес

shared points of reference —
общие ориентиры

humour — юмор

vicinity — соседство, окрестность

number of friends — количество
друзей

classmate — одноклассник

easy-going — общительный

overweight — избыточный вес

boring — скучный

to depress — подвергаться
депрессии

experience — опыт

witty — остроумный

to cope with — справляться с

equal — равный

to occur — происходить

foundation — основа

to achieve — достигать

to create — создавать

Questions

1. Do you have a close friend? 2. Will you describe your close friend? 3. What is important in a friendship? 4. What is it necessary to do in order to keep a friendship strong? 5. How many close friends can a teen have? Why? 6. What is a fantastic foundation for achieving or creating anything in life? 7. What shared interest do you have with your close friend? 8. Why is it necessary to have a close friend?

Teens' Problems

It's hard not to agree that teenagers nowadays have a lot of problems. One of the real problems is having no close friend. Several days ago I had my best friend, but now I don't. My friend was much more to me than just a person who I communicated with. We were as thick as thieves. We helped each other to survive and got along well. But some days ago we quarrelled, and now I'm at a loss what to do. Fortune turned its back on me and I feel very disappointed.

I can't say that my parents don't understand me, they try to support me, but I think only time can heal me. Some young people are just sure that their parents don't want to understand them. It's a very serious problem. I'm sure that this point of view is absolutely wrong. Psychologists believe parents — child conflicts cannot be avoided in a society that is undergoing rapid change. In our society youngsters are at odds with their parents on a wide range of issues, from how late they can stay up to who they should marry. It's called a generation gap. But I think our parents are people who we can trust. In most cases teens don't understand their parents and become very nervous. When it happens, it's time to say "stop". And try to find in your parents more positive than negative traits. Our parents should understand one thing that today's children will become tomorrow's civilization. So they should obtain a child's understanding, they should find a teen's problem and help solve it.

The other very important problem is our school life. Teens are often under pressure in many ways at school — they are supposed to be "macho" — good at school subjects, able to stand up for themselves without crying. If they can't, they are "wimps" and often children will tease and bully them, especially at school. But all children are different — they have different needs and talents, likes and dislikes. Teens are not just "machos" and "wimps", they are rebels and conformists, extroverts and introverts. Our teachers and our parents should assure us that all these types are good, and it will reduce a lot of our problems.

There are so called "problem teenagers", who take drugs. A large number of teens use them very often. They are drug addicts. I don't have such friends and I think that there should be special programmes to solve this problem.

One more problem is connected with biorhythms. Not all people know what it is, and they begin to laugh at you and can offend you, when sometimes you are all fingers and thumbs, when you are accident-prone or when your temper seems to be on a short fuse. It is because we all have an internal "body clock", which regulates the rise and the fall of our body energies, and it's called biorhythms. So our teachers, parents and classmates should understand it and shouldn't pay attention to it because it's the law of our life and nature.

My other serious problem is to enter a good university and find a good job afterwards. Unemployment rates are extremely high —

even qualified people with great knowledge can't find something good, but in spite of that I hope for the best.

I always want to impress people. But the first impression we make almost fully depends on what we wear and how we wear. Manners and speech are noticed next and character only later. Many teens have the same taste. They like to keep up-to-date with the changes in our society. They like to wear clothes which look good on and which you feel comfortable in. Being in fashion makes you feel good, in tune with the world you live in. But when you are at school, it is important to wear the right clothes, even formal ones and not to dress up. I understand it, but some of my classmates don't. They like to shock their teachers and parents and provoke them, and that's why they have some problems at school. So you should have some "clothes sense" to know and feel the types of things that are your style in formal situations (when you are at school) and at the parties.

As for me, I try to cope with all my problems alone or with the help of my parents. My parents are real friends and they understand me and try to help me or give a piece of advice.

So if someone denies all of the problems teenagers have, it's not right. Teens have a lot of problems. But the first thing we have to think about is the future we're building for ourselves and our children. The better we are now, the better our place will be when we grow up.

Vocabulary

to be as thick as thieves — быть закадычными друзьями

to quarrel — ссориться

to be at a loss — быть в растерянности

to be at odds — иметь разногласия

to support — поддерживать

issue — вопрос, проблема

generation gap — разрыв между поколениями, проблема отцов и детей

to trust — доверять

to be under pressure — быть в критической ситуации

to tease — дразнить

to bully — задирать, грубо обращаться, дразнить

drug addict — наркоман

to be all fingers and thumbs — быть неловким

accident-prone — невезучий

to be on a short fuse — быть вспыльчивым

unemployment rate — уровень безработицы

to keep up-to-date with — идти в ногу с

to dress up — наряжаться

to cope with — справляться с

to deny — отрицать

Questions

1. Do your parents understand you? Why do you think so?
2. What problems do you have with your parents?
3. What problems do you have at school?
4. What problems do teens have at school?
5. Is it fair to say that your parents don't understand anything? Why?
6. What do you know about a generation gap?
7. Do all parents help their children? Why?
8. In what way do teenagers try to impress people?
9. What problems do you have with your friends?
10. How do you cope with your problems?

Generation Gap

Sometimes our parents don't understand us. They don't understand some problems and things which are very important in teens' life; for example, the lifestyles of young people, piercing, tattoos, drugs, sex, relationship with friends and teachers. So sometimes teens can't tell them about their private life. Some parents don't want to understand modern views, ideals and system of values.

Elderly people usually compare their childhood and youth with the present, and regard old times as better, always talking about "the good old days". The young people, on the other hand, tend to think their times as the best. Teens look at the world with fresh eyes. Everything is new, interesting to them. Sometimes they cannot solve their everyday problems. But they want to cope with them by themselves. So adults shouldn't prevent them from making their own mistakes.

People are said to become wiser with age. Sometimes it is true and sometimes it is not. I think that you can meet a wise man among the old as often as among the young. It is false that when old age wisdom has come, useless illusions have disappeared. Sometimes when we talk to adults, a monologue is a preferred form of expressing your ideas in such talks. That's why some teens don't like to talk to adults.

I think that it's in people's nature to give advice. It seems to people that giving advice they can help somebody or put somebody on the right track. But if a person takes their advice and fails, he can blame an adult all of his life.

Our parents have their own ideas and views that their children don't share and understand. They think that their children won't find their place in life. They often say that now teens are very difficult to socialize with and dumpy. But children should settle all problems peacefully because they are their parents. They brought them up with loving care. And if children come to their parents for advice and help, they will do their best and help children to cope with problems and difficulties.

Vocabulary

lifestyle — стиль жизни

piercing — пирсинг

tattoo — татуировка

relationship — отношение

view — взгляд

childhood — детство

to regard — рассматривать

to tend — иметь тенденцию

to prevent — предотвращать

wise — мудрый

false — ложный, фальшивый

wisdom — мудрость

useless illusion — бесполезная
иллюзия

to disappear — исчезать

preferred form — предпочтитель-
ная форма

to express — выражать

advice — совет

right track — истинный, пра-
вильный путь

to fail — терпеть неудачу

to blame — обвинять

adult — взрослый

to socialize with — общаться-
ся с

dumpy — унылый

to settle — разрешать, урегули-
ровать

peacefully — мирно

with loving care — с любовью

to do one's best — делать все
возможное

to cope with — справляться с

Questions

1. What is a generation gap? 2. Why do teens tend to think their times as the best? 3. Do you share this opinion? Why? 4. Do you always follow your parents' advice? Why? 5. Do you agree that people become wiser with age? Why? 6. Do you agree that it's in people's nature to give advice? Why? 7. Is it necessary for children to share their parents' ideas? Why? 8. Is it necessary for children to understand their parents' ideas? Why? 9. What about you? 10. Do your parents do their best and help you to cope with problems and difficulties?

It's Great to Be a Teenager

I think that the teenage years are the most wonderful years in our life. At this age we start a new adult life. We get more and more freedom. We can go to parties, discos, cafes, etc. We can have a lot of fun with our friends. At this age we start dating. It's really cool. To my mind, romantic relations play an important role in our lives. Teenagers fall in love for the first time. It's a real event! Sometimes they suffer when it's unrequited love, but other times the affectionate feeling is shared by both. What a great experience! It might seem naive at first, but I feel sorry for people who have never fallen in love, no matter how long it lasted.

We can start travelling around the world if our parents can afford it and give us some money for the trip. Then it's possible to have an unforgettable experience visiting different places and meeting new people. Some students from our school have visited England, Malta and other countries where they have taken courses of the English language. It was great.

Of course, now teenagers have a lot more to worry about than their parents did. Violence, alcohol, drugs and AIDS cases are increasing. Still I think that the teenage years are the best time of your life and you will never experience anything like that when you are a middle-aged person.

According to the survey carried out in our class, twelve people think that it's exciting to be a teenager. Four people think it's fun, three people — it's great, two people — it's a chore, one person — it's romantic, one person — it's not easy, one person — it's dangerous, one person — it's fearful. To sum it up, we can say that most teenagers in our class are not pessimistic about their teenage years. They find it exciting to live in our neighbourhood and study in our school.

Some other students have problems with their studies and parents, but they don't think that it spoils their lives completely. Those students who believe it's dangerous and fearful to be a teenager are very much concerned about the problems of our society. They feel unprotected and uncertain about their future, I think we should take into consideration their concerns. We should help our classmates who have problems. So, in my opinion, if teenagers have a sober mind, they won't get into trouble.

As for me, I am sure that our teenage years are the best years of our lives. When you are a teenager, you have enough freedom to do something that you will never do when you are adult. We can share our ideas with one another and discuss different problems. It's a time when we can make real friends and keep these friendships for the rest of our lives. Some teenagers can even form a subculture. It's great when joining together in a group involves such activities as listening to music, dancing, doing sports, reading books, taking part in competitions, etc. Maybe later on we won't have any possibilities to do this.

Being a teenager is great; we must take life easy.

Vocabulary

adult life — взрослая жизнь
freedom — свобода
to date — назначать свидания
to fall in love — влюбляться
to afford — иметь возможность
to suffer — страдать
unrequited love — неразделенная любовь
affectionate feeling shared by both
— взаимная любовь
unforgettable — незабываемый
violence — насилие
drug — наркотик
AIDS — СПИД (ВИЧ-инфекция)
to increase — увеличиваться
middle-aged person — человек среднего возраста

survey — исследование, опрос
chore — обязанность
fearful — ужасный, страшный
neighbourhood — район
to spoil — портить
completely — полностью
to concern — беспокоиться, огорчаться
uncertain — неопределенный
unprotected — незащищенный
to take into consideration — принимать во внимание
sober mind — трезвый ум
to share one's ideas — разделять мнение
subculture — субкультура
possibility — возможность

Questions

1. Why are the teenage years the most wonderful in your life?
2. Do you often date?
3. Do you often go to parties, discos, cafes, etc.?
4. Why are teens more worried nowadays than their parents did?
5. Are you pessimistic or optimistic about your teenage years?
6. Do you have any problems with your parents?
7. Do you have any problems with your studies?
8. Why do you think all these problems can't spoil your teenage years?

Youth Takes More Risks

It is said that the most beautiful period of our life is when we are teenagers.

It seems that teens have no problems, as they don't work, take care of their families or have any other responsibilities. But this is not true. They have many problems in fact, because the teens take more risks. You can see that our young people are more similar to people abroad in many aspects of life.

A turning point is an event which changes your life and attitude. There are several such turning points in the life of an average person that are worthy of mention.

Smoking is one of the most common addictions that for years have been socially acceptable. There are passive and active smokers. People who don't smoke but are forced to be in the company of smokers are passive smokers and are even in a worse situation. The smoke from other people's cigarettes influences their health more negatively than that of active smokers. But some teens think that they look more mature when holding a cigarette.

Drug addiction is another problem of the twenty-first century. They try once or twice a cigarette with a narcotic inside, then they change to injection, and day by day they become totally dependent on this deadly habit. The young people look for some supernatural experiences; they hope to find a sense of life and pleasure and happiness in taking drugs, and they don't even notice how quickly they fall into addiction.

But youth embodies the future of society, and our generation tries its best to improve life on our planet. So we should have our own opinion in such situations and not to be smoke and drug addicts.

Vocabulary

risk — риск

similar — одинаковый

abroad — за граница

a turning point — поворотный
рубеж, решающий фактор

average — средний

worthy of mention — стоящий
упоминания

smoking — курение

acceptable — приемлемый

addiction — склонность, пагуб-
ная привычка

to influence — влиять

mature — зрелый

drug — наркотик

injection — укол, инъекция

day by day — постепенно, день за днем
totally dependent — полностью зависимый
to look for — искать

deadly habit — ужасная, смертельная привычка
sense — чувство
to embody — воплощать
to improve — улучшать

Questions

1. What problems do you have? 2. Who helps you to cope with your problems? 3. Why is taking drugs a very serious problem? 4. What is one of the common addictions of the century? 5. Why are all these problems very serious?

Russian and American Teens

It is widely known fact that America and Russia are different countries with different cultures, and therefore can be compared.

The first thing to be discussed is the family. The number of children in a family is discussed. There are certain advantages and disadvantages of being an only child. The advantages are: an only child has his or her own room, doesn't have to share things, he or she is always the centre of attention. The disadvantage is that an only child is spoilt and lonely.

In America the idea of responsibility is very popular. Children have to do chores around the house, such as washing up, shopping, mowing the lawn, taking out the garbage. But some Russian parents find it cruel to have their children work.

Another strong American value is independence.

There are certain differences in school life in America and in Russia. In America you can choose your own classes. But in America students don't have as much homework as in Russia. So, American schools differ from Russian schools in student choices and amount of homework.

American students like hanging out with their friends. They do sports in their free time. Most American students combine doing homework and relaxing.

Another distinctive feature of Americans is that most American high school students have a job, usually a part-time job.

Thus they gain experience and make some money. More American students work. Some jobs of American students are: delivering newspapers, baby-sitting, working as a camp counsellor, or in a cafe, etc. Maybe this is what makes them so independent from their parents at such a young age. It isn't always easy to keep a job and still do well in school. But American children learn early that you have to work hard to win. Winning is a part of the American way of life.

Extracurricular activities are basketball, football, baseball, track and field, sometimes chess, drama, riding, music, etc.

Then in American schools there are classes on religion. About 40% of Americans go to church every week.

Most American children are full of energy and confidence, ready to go out and make their own way in the world.

A serious problem is taking drugs, but the truth is that fewer and fewer young Americans are trying them.

Typical American teenagers are in fact very ordinary. They think their teachers make them work too hard, they love their parents but sure they don't understand anything. They think that their friendships are the most important things in their lives. "America," wrote Emerson, the nineteenth-century writer, "is a country of young men." That's not quite true anymore. The population is growing older. Fewer and fewer babies are being born, and baby-food factories are closing down. America does not belong to young people anymore in the way it did only twenty years ago. Young people today have to fight harder to get the kinds of jobs and homes they want. Maybe that is why young Americans are more serious now than they used to.

Vocabulary

therefore — поэтому
advantage — преимущество
disadvantage — недостаток
to share — делиться
spoil — испорченный
lonely — одинокий
responsibility — ответственность
chores — дела по дому
to mow the lawn — косить газон

to take out the garbage — выносить мусор
cruel — жестокий
independence — независимость
choice — выбор
amount — количество
to hang out — болтаться
distinctive feature — отличительная черта

to combine — сочетать
Americans — *Обратите внимание: названия национальностей могут употребляться как с определенным артиклем, так и без артикля*
part-time job — работа не на полный день
to gain — приобретать
to deliver newspapers — разносить газеты

baby-sitter — приходящая няня
camp counsellor — воспитатель, вожатый в лагере
to win — выигрывать
extracurricular activity — внеклассные занятия
track and field — легкая атлетика
religion — религия
ordinary — обычный
to spend — тратить
to earn — зарабатывать

Questions

1. What is different in the cultures of the USA and Russia?
2. What are advantages and disadvantages of having one child?
3. Do you have brothers or sisters?
4. What do American teens usually do at home?
5. What are your chores?
6. What is different in school life in America and in Russia?
7. What do you usually do in your free time?
8. Do you combine school with a part-time job? Why?
9. What are extracurricular activities in American schools?
10. What are your extracurricular activities?

Success in Life

In my opinion materialism is not a bad point of our society. I try not to be too materialistic, but I think everyone is a little bit. We live in a competitive world where success is important, so people become more materialistic. I think the way you look is really important especially for teenagers who want to be a part of a group. So it's natural that people think of money and possessions.

On the other hand, materialistic people think that money is everything in the world and being rich is the only way of being successful. It's important for them to have designer labels and fashionable things. Some people can even kill others to have more money or possessions. In this case we can say that money is the root of the evil. However, there are very important things in our life that can't be bought, such as love and friendship.

Of course, you know that there are a lot of people who have little money. Lack of money can cause real problems, such as bad health, stress or even crime. But many people are poor. They never waste money and they spend it on the essentials. More than that, they learn to find unusual in usual things, and this makes their life interesting. I don't think that money is the only way of being successful in life.

But it cannot be denied that money is an essential part of our life. There are a lot of rich people, but not all of them are materialistic, for example, Bill Gates. You wouldn't look twice at him if he passed you in the street because he looks like an ordinary person. He likes fast food and casual clothes. He is always on the company campus. But Bill Gates is not snobbish or ambitious. More than that, he is a noted philanthropist who donated a lot of money to non-profit educational organizations. Yet he is one of the most successful men in the world.

To get success in life you should be creative, intelligent, hard-working. You'll never get success if you wait for someone to bring it to you. You have to get up and get it yourself.

The only thing I want to say is that you needn't be rich to be happy. A clever person can always find beauty in ordinary things. And I think that only such things can make you happy.

Vocabulary

materialism — материализм
point — черта, сторона
a little bit — немного
possession — собственность
on the other hand — с другой стороны
designer label — этикетка дизайнера
root of the evil — корень зла
lack — недостаток
to cause — вызывать
crime — преступление
waste — потеря
to spend — тратить
essential — предмет первой необходимости
to deny — отрицать

ordinary — обычный
casual clothes — повседневная одежда
campus — территория
snobbish — сноб
ambitious — амбициозный
noted — известный
philanthropist — филантроп
to donate — дарить, жертвовать
non-profit educational organization — некоммерческая образовательная организация
creative — созидательный, творческий
intelligent — умный
hard-working — трудолюбивый

Questions

1. Why is materialism not a bad point of our society? 2. Why is it natural that people think of money and possessions? 3. Can we say that money is the root of the evil? 4. Are poor people materialistic? Why? 5. Are all rich people materialistic? 6. What traits should you have if you want to get success in life? 7. Do you have all necessary traits? 8. Are you a successful person?

Teenagers and Money

Thirteen-year-olds do not spend as much money as their parents suspect — at least not according to the findings of a recent survey, *Money and Change*. The survey included three hundred teenagers, 13–17 years old.

By the time they reach their teens, most children see their weekly allowance rise dramatically to an amazing national average of \$8. Two thirds think they get enough money, but most expect to have to do something to get it.

Although they have more cash, worry about debt is increasing among teenagers. Therefore, the majority of children make an effort to save for the future.

Greater access to cash among teenagers does not, however, mean that they are more irresponsible for a result. The economic recession seems to have encouraged cautious attitudes to money, even in case of children at these ages. Instead of wasting the pocket money they have on sweets or magazines, the 13-year-olds who took part in the survey seem to respond to the situation by saving more than half of their cash.

Cash card schemes are available for anyone over the age of 13. So if your youngster's moved on from pocket money to a monthly allowance or if he now earns a wage, then he should think about opening his own account.

So our children are also far more eager to control their own affairs, according to a recent survey by the Britannia Building Society. In fact most teenagers would rather have a monthly allowance than the traditional weekly sum of pocket money. They want money in an account that they can control and budget with as they please.

But children are only allowed a cheque book when they reach the age of 16. Until then cash cards, which in general are available on savings accounts for those over 13, seem to be a sensible option and are now being offered by most banks and buildings societies.

Opening a card cash account gives teenagers many advantages. They learn to control their own finances and not spend more than they have, which means they have to budget carefully. They'll also have easy access to their money in a case of an emergency. In some cases they can buy cigarettes or even drugs.

To many teens smoking is not just a kind of pleasure, it is an addiction. They need it, depend on it, can't stop it. If they haven't smoked for some hours, they feel a craving for a cigarette. They often chain smoke, which means they light another cigarette immediately they have put out the other one before. Smoking is often considered antisocial, since many people don't like the smell of cigarettes or the sight of the smoker's stained fingers or ashtrays full of cigarette ends. Above all, smoking is harmful to health and in many countries a warning is printed on every packet of cigarettes. Scientists have proved that there is a link between smoking and a disease, which can be fatal, causing cancer and different diseases of future teenagers' babies.

Vocabulary

to suspect — подозревать
at least — по меньшей мере
survey — исследование
allowance — содержание,
карманные деньги
to rise — повышаться
average — в среднем, средняя
величина
two thirds — две трети
cash — наличные деньги
debt — долг
to save — экономить
access — доступ
irresponsible — безответственный
recession — спад, снижение цен
to encourage — поощрять,
поддерживать
to waste — тратить

cautious attitude — серьезное,
внимательное отношение
pocket money — карманные
деньги
to respond — отвечать
saving — накопление
wage — заработная плата
account — счет
emergency — необходимость,
срочность
addiction — склонность, пагуб-
ная привычка
craving — страстное желание
stained finger — испачканный,
в пятнах палец
ashtray — пепельница
warning — предупреждение
link — связь

Questions

1. What did the survey show? 2. What do teens do with their money? 3. Do your parents give you pocket money? 4. How much money do your parents give you weekly? 5. What do you do with it? 6. Do you spend much money or try to save it? 7. Do you have your own account? 8. Do you think that it's necessary for teens to have pocket money? Why?

Childhood and Adolescence

Children live in their own world, from which adults are largely excluded. The adult world is strange and exciting to them. They have daydreams of success, adventure, romance and fame. They idolize their big brothers and sisters, pop singers or film stars. Hobbies such as stamp collecting, music or dancing are important to them. Children, especially when they are in their teens, go through a physical and emotional development, which can be frightening. Their characters also begin to develop. Some adolescents are introverts and keep themselves to themselves, while others are extroverts and like to share their thoughts and form relationships with other people. It's a wonderful, terrible time.

It is often said that we live in a permissive age, one in which people are allowed to do almost everything they want, and adolescence is a very formative stage of their development since their final adult characters are beginning to take shape. Some parents think it is good for children to be allowed to do anything they want, without control or supervision. They say that this enables children's personalities to develop naturally and that they will learn to be responsible by the mistakes they make. However, this might lead to juvenile delinquency, with the children ending up in the courts, or it might simply make children selfish, without any consideration for others. Other parents believe in being strict, but taken to extremes this can produce a too authoritarian atmosphere at home, with the children being dominated and ruled by their parents. Parents can also be very possessive and try to keep their children dependent on them. These can encourage

rebelliousness (against parents, school, authority) in a child, or conversely, suppress a child's natural sense of adventure and curiosity. A strict upbringing by over-caring parents can make a child so timid and inhibited that he or she is unable to express freely his or her emotions and form mature relationships. To bring up children to be normal, well-adjusted human beings, requires great wisdom and perhaps a bit of luck.

Vocabulary

childhood — детство	extreme — чрезмерный
adolescence — юность	authoritarian atmosphere — авторитарная атмосфера
to exclude — не допускать	to dominate — преобладать
fame — слава	to rule — править
daydreams — грезы, мечты	to encourage — поощрять, поддерживать
to idolize — идеализировать	rebelliousness — мятеж, бунт
to be in one's teens — находиться в подростковом возрасте	authority — власть
frightening — пугающий	to suppress — подавлять
introvert — интроверт (<i>человек, сосредоточенный на своем внутреннем мире</i>)	natural sense — природное чувство
extrovert — экстраверт (<i>открытый, общительный человек</i>)	curiosity — любопытство
to share — делить, разделять	upbringing — воспитание
relationship — отношения, связь	over-caring parents — сверхзаботливые родители
permissive — позволяющий, терпимый	timid — робкий, застенчивый
formative stage — стадия становления	inhibited — подавляющий в себе желание
to take shape — принимать форму	to be unable — быть не в состоянии
supervision — наблюдение, руководство	to express freely — выражать свободно
to enable — давать возможность	mature relationship — зрелые отношения
to lead — приводить, вести	well-adjusted human being — легко приспосабливающийся человек
juvenile delinquency — преступность несовершеннолетних	to require — требовать
selfish — эгоистичный	wisdom — мудрость
consideration — внимание, уважение	luck — удача
strict — строгий	

Questions

1. Why do children live in their own world, from which adults are largely excluded? 2. Do you exclude your parents from your own world? Why? 3. What is important for you in life? 4. Are you an introvert or an extrovert? What does it mean? 5. Do your parents allow you to do everything you want? Why? 6. What is the atmosphere at your home? 7. Do you learn to be responsible by the mistakes you make? 8. Are you a rebellious person?

In Work and out of Work

Life used to be fun for teenagers. They used to have money to spend, and free time to spend it in. They used to wear teenage clothes, and meet in coffee bars and discos. Some of them still do. But for many young people, life is harder now. Jobs are difficult to find. There's not so much money around. Teachers say that students work harder than they used to. They are less interested in politics, and more interested in passing exams. They know that good exams may get them better jobs.

Most young people worry more about money than their parents did twenty years ago. They try to spend less and save more. They want to be able to get homes of their own one day.

Three quarters of young people do more or less what their parents did. They did their best at school, find some kind of work in the end, and get married in their early twenties. They get on well with their parents and enjoy family life. They eat the same food, watch football on TV, go to the cafe and like reading. After all, if they didn't, they wouldn't be teenagers, would they?

As children move towards independence, it is important to make sure that they understand what decent values are. To prevent children from becoming spoilt and greedy parents should not indulge them too much. To make sure that they grow up well-mannered they should be taught to be polite from an early age. Children should be scolded for bad behaviour, which will be an effective way of helping them to distinguish right from wrong. Parents need to reward their children when they do things well to give them a sense of pride, but at the same time parents must be

careful not to overdo it or they may become conceited. Parents should try to make their children tolerant and respectful of other people's beliefs. Parents should try to place great importance on setting a good example to their children, because children's behaviour is often an imitation of that of their parents.

Vocabulary

to worry — беспокоиться, волноваться

three quarters — три четверти

more or less — более или менее

to get married — выходить замуж, жениться

to move towards independence — двигаться к независимости

decent values — настоящие ценности

to prevent — предотвращать

spoil — испорченный

greedy — жадный

to indulge — давать себе волю, позволять себе

well-mannered — с хорошими манерами, правильно воспитанный

polite — вежливый

to scold — ругать

bad behaviour — плохое поведение

to distinguish — отличать, различать

to reward — награждать

pride — гордость

to overdo — переусердствовать

conceited — самонадеянный, тщеславный

tolerant — терпимый

respectful — уважительный

belief — вера, доверие

to place great importance — придавать большое значение

setting — показ

imitation — повторение, копирование

Questions

1. Do you do more or less what your parents did? Why? 2. How will you bring up your children? 3. Do your parents understand you? 4. Will you understand your children? 5. What will you do to make sure that your children understand what decent values are? 6. Is it necessary to scold children for bad behaviour? Why?

Understanding Boys and Girls

The education of children starts as soon as they are born. Girls wear pink and boys wear blue, boys play with guns and girls play with dolls. Boys are allowed to make more noise and cause more

trouble, while girls are supposed to be more interested in talking to and understanding people. Such education prepares boys for power in the world but for little else. But all boys are different. Some boys are good at cooking and poetry whereas others are good at football or maths. Boys aren't just conformists and rebels, "machos" and "wimps". If we can assure them that all these types are OK, it may help to reduce the bullying of the children. The boys and girls can change as soon as there are other children around. They're OK when their mates aren't there. You can chat to them like normal human beings — but then their mates turn up and everything changes. They like to pretend that they're tougher than they really are. They don't treat you as an equal any more. It's almost as if they feel there has to be a war between boys and girls.

Sometimes boys can't take anything seriously. It really is one of the most irritating things about them. People say it's because girls are more mature than boys. And another thing, boys are much noisier than girls. They are always shouting. If you get something wrong in class, they go on about it for ages and they tease out. Girls are much more supportive than boys.

But boys take criticism much more easily than girls can. Boys are more confident than girls. Boys are more competitive than girls, that is why they are better at sports than girls. They are better leaders too.

So teachers and parents should understand sex differences and the psychology of boys and girls. It will help teens understand what decent values are.

Vocabulary

education — образование
to allow — позволять, разрешать
to cause — вызывать
trouble — неприятность
whereas — тогда как
conformist — конформист
rebel — бунтовщик, мятежник
macho — мужественный,
 настоящий мужчина
wimp — скучный, зануда
to assure — убеждать
to reduce — уменьшать
to bully — дразнить

mate — товарищ, приятель
to chat — болтать
to turn up — появляться
to pretend — прикидываться,
 делать вид
tough — грубый, жесткий
to treat — обращаться
equal — равный
irritating — раздражающий
mature — зрелый
to shout — кричать
to go on about for ages — очень
 долго говорить

to tease out — дразнить, приставать
supportive — оказывающий
поддержку
confident — уверенный
sex differences — различия полов

competitive — соперничающий,
конкурентоспособный
psychology — психология
decent values — настоящие
ценности

Questions

1. When does the education of children start? 2. Why is it necessary to understand sex differences and the psychology of boys and girls? 3. Do your teachers understand it? 4. What are the typical traits of boys? 5. What are the typical traits of girls? 6. What is the difference between boys and girls?

Teenagers in Great Britain

After the war Britain's birth rate was the highest it had been since 1880. By 1959 there were over four million single persons between the ages of 13 to 25, because of this baby boom. Gradually these young people started to enjoy special status. The post-war economic recovery meant that people had more money to spend on luxuries and there were lots of jobs for young people. The young and single usually lived at home and could spend their wages on enjoyment. The working week was shorter than ever before, so there was more leisure time for all.

Young British teens in the 50s looked to America for taste in fashion, hairstyles and music. Record shops, coffee bars and melody bars appeared in towns. Dance halls full of young people in the latest American-style fashions provided exciting new places for the young to meet. These adolescents started to dress differently from their parents and even invented their own slang expressions to use amongst friends.

By the late 50s the fashion and music industries had responded to the new teenage demand for records, transistor radios, fashionable clothes, posters of their idols and magazines about young people. Teenagers were important consumers with money to spend. One of the London designers, Mary Quant, is famous for inventing the mini-skirt, which caused a scandal at the time.

In 1962 the record “Love Me Do” by an unknown group called “The Beatles” entered the American-dominated British record charts. It was the start of an important era for British music, and many groups followed the success of “The Beatles”.

The new heroes of the teenagers in Britain in the 60s were often ordinary working-class youngsters who rose to fame as pop stars, fashion designers, photographers, writers or models. This phenomenon contributed to the confidence of British youth, and gradually teenagers began to develop their belief in the right to choose their own clothes, lifestyle and attitudes towards politics, religion and sex. In 1939 the concept of the teenager did not exist in Britain culture, but by 1959 teenagers had become an important part of the society. It comes as no surprise that the late 50s and the early 60s are remembered in Britain as important years for older generation, to look back on with nostalgia.

Vocabulary

birth rate — рождаемость
baby boom — взлет рождаемости
recovery — восстановление
luxuries — роскошь
wage — зарплата
leisure time — свободное время
taste — вкус
hairstyle — прическа
to appear — появляться
latest — самый последний
to provide — снабжать, обеспечивать
adolescent — подросток
amongst — среди
to respond — отвечать

demand — требование
magazine — журнал
consumer — потребитель
to cause — вызывать
to enter — входить
to rise — подниматься
fame — слава
phenomenon — явление
to contribute — способствовать
confidence — уверенность
gradually — постепенно
belief — вера
lifestyle — стиль жизни
to look back on with nostalgia — оглянуться на прошлые годы с ностальгией

Questions

1. What happened in Britain after the war?
2. Where did young British teens look to for taste in fashion, hairstyles and music?
3. Why were teenagers important consumers in the late 1950s?
4. What group started an important era for British music?
5. What

do you know about “The Beatles”? 6. What other popular groups in Britain do you know? 7. What do you know about modern teens in Britain? 8. What countries do Russian teens look to for taste in fashion, hairstyle and music?

Teenage Groups and Movements

A lot of teenagers join different groups and movements nowadays. Why? Perhaps it is the lack of any other way to express what attracts young people to different subcultures. Maybe they protest against their parents or rebel against the older generation. In my opinion, the main reason of joining the group is the ability to show your solidarity with like-minded friends. There are a lot of different subcultures, so young people can find a group or a movement that will suit their interests.

A subculture is any group with a distinct style and identity. Different subcultures have their own beliefs, values, fashion and favourite music. For example, hippies of the 1970s wore unusual clothes and had long hair. Hippies believed in peace, and one of their favourite sayings was “Make love, not war”. Today hippies are more socially active. They set up environmental groups and join charity projects.

Yet, not all groups are peaceful. Some of them are rather rebellious. Sadly, some of them are prepared to physically hurt people in an attempt to get their message across. For example, punks are opposed to the values, norms and materialism in the society. They express this in loud and violent music, strange clothing and hair of unusual colours.

The ideal subculture for me is Goths. They see the world as a dark place and like it that way. I completely agree with them because our life is very difficult. Goths make a statement with their fashion as well as with their philosophy. With startling white make-up, black or purple hair, black lipstick and fingernails, these people certainly stand out in the crowd. I also like black colours, so I think it is an ideal subculture for me.

I would like to join some group of Goths because I approve their lifestyle. Of course, when I join the group, I will have to obey certain rules, but on the other hand, belonging to a group will help me to express my individuality.

Some people think that all subcultures are awful. We must admit that many of teenage subcultures are associated with drugs and violence. But subcultures are not as bad as they are thought to be. Teens want to show off. But at the same time a lot of teens think about changing the world to the best. A subculture is a way of life; it is a real life for us.

Vocabulary

lack — нехватка, недостаток
subculture — субкультура
to rebel — восставать
generation — поколение
solidarity — солидарность
like-minded friends — единомышленники
to suit — подходить, годиться
distinct — особый, индивидуальный
identity — личность, индивидуальность
belief — вера
value — ценность
hippy — хиппи
to set up environmental groups — организовывать группы по охране окружающей среды
charity — благотворительность
to hurt — ранить, причинять боль
message — идеи

opposed — противоположный
violent — яростный, неистовый
to make a statement — заявлять
startling — поразительный, потрясающий
make-up — макияж
lipstick — помада
finger nails — ногти
to approve — одобрять
to obey — выполнять
to express — выражать
individuality — индивидуальность
rule — правило
awful — ужасный
to admit — допускать, соглашаться
to associate — ассоциировать
to show off — рисоваться, выставлять себя в выгодном свете

Questions

1. What teenage group and movements do you know? 2. Why did different subcultures appear? 3. What is a subculture? 4. Why do people join different groups and movements? 5. Does belonging to a group help to express one's individuality or not? 6. What is easier: to join a group or to leave it? 7. Do you become different or stay the same when you join a group? 8. Are all groups peaceful? 9. Would you like to belong to a teenage group? Why? 10. What is your ideal subculture? Why?

International Youth Contacts

Nowadays international youth contacts become very important. From Europe to Australia, Asia and Africa teenagers pack their bags and go to the country they have probably only read about or seen on TV. There are special exchange programmes between schools and universities, which give students the possibility to visit different countries, to study there and to learn the culture of the countries.

The main goals of the exchange programmes for secondary school students are the following:

- to break the stereotypes;
- to improve understanding between the countries and the students;
- to represent the country;
- to learn more about the countries;
- to practise foreign languages;
- to study in another country;
- to apply knowledge when students return back in order to build a better future in their own country, and, of course, many other goals.

Not every student can participate in the programme. The student needs to demonstrate good knowledge of a foreign language, ability to adapt to a very different way of life and new people, ability to make friends and communicate, to represent their country and to be flexible and outgoing.

Today many Russian and American students participate in such programmes because they want to know more about other countries. The programmes are very successful. The desire to learn more about the country attracts more and more students to participate in them.

When students arrive in different countries, everything is different for them: the way people eat, sleep, work, and all the various leisure activities. So there are special programmes for adaptation especially with those students living with host families.

During the Soviet period a very limited number of students could come to Russia and vice versa. That's why during that period foreign people knew very little about the life in Russia. Now the situation is different. Students can travel to different countries, they can learn and work there, they can participate in different exchange

programmes between countries. It is an incredible experience and something that the students will remember forever.

Vocabulary

exchange programme — программа обмена

goal — цель

to improve — улучшать

to participate — принимать участие

ability — способность

to represent — представлять

flexible — гибкий

outgoing — общительный, дружелюбный

desire — желание

leisure — досуг, свободное время

adaptation — адаптация

host family — семья, в которой живет студент

limited number — ограниченное число

incredible — невероятный, потрясающий

experience — опыт

Questions

1. What are the main goals of the exchange programmes for secondary school students? 2. What does a student need to participate in this programme? 3. What problems do exchange students have? 4. Do the students know much about different countries before the programme? 5. How does the programme influence the students' lives? 6. Why are the programmes successful? 7. Why do such programmes build a bridge between countries?

Dialogues

1.

— What's wrong with today's teenagers?

— That's easy — everything. They want to be treated like adults, but they won't take adult responsibilities. They just sit around, listening to loud music. And do you have any problems with your teenage children?

— My daughter's fine, she works hard at school, but I have problems with my son Sam. He and his friends use the house as a hotel, and he wears these terrible clothes. I think he does it to upset

us. And he often tells us that we are boring and we want him to accept our way of life.

— Yes, my son often says that the young generation knows better and that the young are not what we were.

— And they say that parents think they are all delinquents and criminals, just because their parents don't like the way they look and behave.

— My son often says that he likes us, but we treat him like a child. He even says that we are jealous because he has a much better time we did when we were young. He intends to grow a beard when he leaves school, chiefly because I don't want him to. It is his way of rebelling, the first step towards breaking ties with a home for which he feels little sympathy.

— By the way, I agree that the young are better educated, they have a lot more money to spend and enjoy more freedom. They grow up more quickly and are not so dependant on their parents. They think more for themselves and do not blindly accept the ideals of their parents and grandparents. And I agree that every new generation is different from the one that preceded it. And this difference is called a generation gap.

— Yes, but I think that we, parents, are people who our children can trust. It's our duty to tell them about it. And we must help our children to solve their problems but not to be at odds with them.

2.

— Would you like to go to the cinema?

— Of course, I do. But now I don't have enough pocket money. When I was younger, I used to spend most of my pocket money on crisps and sweets, and then a couple of years ago I got a bike. So now I spend a lot on accessories and spare parts. The last ones were rather expensive, that's why I don't have money now.

— And my Dad and Mum set up a bank account for me and they deposit some money into it every week. I get extra on my birthday and at Christmas. Basically, I want to save as much money as I can for later. I'd like to study foreign languages at university and will probably be spending time abroad as part of the course, so I think I'm going to need the money later.

— And as for me, I get extra money for lunch and bus fares. Now I'm saving up to get a new bike because the one I've got is already a bit small for me.

— So, it's a pity. We are both saving our pocket money and can't go to the cinema. I'll call you next week. Bye-bye.

— OK. See you later.

3.

— How do you usually spend your pocket money, Andrew?

— I spend a bit of time in fast-food restaurants. I also like music and a lot of money goes on CDs. I go to the cinema quite often but that doesn't cost much. And you?

— I don't get much pocket money, but I have a part-time job. I work in a supermarket, stacking boxes and crates. I do it on Saturdays. So I can afford to pay for guitar lessons myself. And I feel independent because I can decide for myself what to spend it on.

— Do you buy clothes yourself?

— I find going shopping pretty boring. So my Mum gets most of my clothes for me.

— And I buy a lot of clothes myself. And Mum says I waste a lot of money because I get sick of wearing them. Fashion changes all the time, doesn't it?

— Sure. That's why I am not keen on fashion. I love collecting things. Now I've got a collection of stamps, but sometimes I spend money buying old ones from friends. But they have to be in good condition to be really worth anything.

— Oh, it's very interesting. I'd like to see your collection.

— OK. Come to see me at 6 pm tomorrow. Bye.

— Bye-bye.

4.

— Professor, you must have to deal with a wide range of problems faced by teens.

— That's right. My research has focused on the learning difficulties of young children.

— And what makes some pupils succeed and others fail?

— Well, research suggests that if you get on well with people, it helps you make the most of your abilities.

- So, why do you think a personality is important?
- Because it's important to feel good about yourself.
- But what should a student do if he doesn't get on well with his mates?
- First of all it's very important not to be negative all the time. If someone gets the teacher's question wrong, you shouldn't start sniggering or giggling. But a lot of kids do it. So the main task is not to look only on the gloomy side.
- Gloomy sides?
- Yes, nobody likes to hear every day that things are bad. Most people know they are bad. If a child doesn't like maths, he doesn't have to keep going on about it.
- And what should we do if we're feeling depressed?
- If you're feeling depressed, one strategy is to try and listen to what other people are saying. Listen to the problems of others, and it may take your mind off your own problems.
- Thank you, professor. It was very interesting.
- My pleasure. Goodbye.
- Goodbye.

Writing

1.

4 April 2005

Dear Mary,

I got your letter yesterday and I am writing to ask for more information. I am not a member of your organization, but I would be interested in finding out how to join your organization and become a member of the exchange programme.

You know that I am a good language learner. I am interested in the culture of English speaking countries. At school we have done some projects about customs and traditions in Canada and Australia. And my project was at the top of the class.

I would be grateful if you could let me know how I can become a member and what kind of exams are involved.

Hope to hear from you soon,

Helen

2.

15 May 2005

Dear Maria,

The reason I'm writing now is because I've got some amazing news. I'm coming back home for a holiday in summer. I'll be there for a month, so I hope we've got plenty of free time.

I hope you'll recognize me. After all these years, I think I've really become English. The only language I've spoken since I came here is English. I've got a North London accent.

Anyway, that's enough about me. There is so much I want to know. How are you and how have you changed? What's happened to our old friends from school?

Do write soon to let me know what your plans are for the summer.

Lots of love,

Alice

3.

10 April 2005

Dear Sir or Madam,

I saw your advertisement for the International Youth Conference Debate on global warming in *Youth* magazine and I am writing for more information. I am a member of the Debating Club and we are all keen to take part in the event but require further details.

First of all, is there any age limit? We would also like to know the exact dates of the Convention. We are going to be taking exams till the end of June and so we will only be free from July onwards.

We would like to bring a total of seven people; will this be acceptable? Do we have to be accompanied by a teacher? Also, there were no details about accommodation in your advertisement and it would be useful for us to know what the options are and whether bookings are made by you or by the participants themselves.

Finally, could you please send us an information pack, including application forms and any other useful information about the Conference.

I look forward to receiving your answer.

Yours faithfully,

Sophie Wyss

UNIT 3

LEISURE ACTIVITIES

Leisure Activities of British and Russian Teenagers

Britain has in recent years been described as a “leisure society”. This is because there is a great variety of leisure pursuits. Young people generally go out on Friday or Saturday nights to a disco, to a concert or to a pub. In recent years going out for a meal or bringing a takeaway meal have become popular too.

During the last years there is a great increase in keeping fit and staying healthy. A lot of teens started running, jogging and going to different fitness clubs in their spare time. Aerobics classes and fitness clubs opened in every town, and the number of recreation centres greatly increased. Indoor pools, with their wave-making machines, water slides and tropical vegetation, have become very popular. And the same is in Russia.

A lot of teens go in for different kinds of sports. Sport helps them to feel as fit as a fiddle. In both countries there are special programmes for problem teenagers such as a high-risk activity, for example they are taught to jump out of aeroplanes. But despite the increase in the number of teens participating in sports, the majority of young people still prefer to be spectators. They prefer to be couch potatoes. Watching sports on TV is a popular leisure activity, as is going to football matches on Saturday. Cinemas have been redesigned with four or more screens, each showing a different film at the same time, and a lot of teens like going to the cinemas too.

A young generation is fond of communication. There are many available methods of communication nowadays, and the most popular one is a computer. A lot of teenagers spend plenty of time working on the computers. The Internet seems really a good fun. You may send e-mail to friends from different countries and get

their answers at once. You even may talk to them. It is easy and quick. A lot of teenagers have mobile telephones so they can always be contacted if they keep their telephone switched on at any time of the day or night.

A lot of teenagers in both countries are crazy about animals. They race them, train them and breed them. They like to hear stories about them on television programmes and they like reading books about them. Many teens have a pet animal. It could be a dog, a cat, a goldfish, a bird or a small animal like a hamster. Looking after and being kind to their pets is very important for teens. Why are the teens so interested in animals? Perhaps it's because they are rather shy in their heart of hearts. One of my friends says: "I like my dog, because she never thinks I'm silly."

There are plenty of other kinds of activities such as travelling, visiting historic places, baby-sitting, delivering newspapers, putting together jigsaw puzzles, reading, going to different museums, skateboarding, going fishing, hitchhiking, doing the shopping, helping people in need, joining a computer club and others. We can say, "So many teens, so many kinds of activities."

Well, some words about me. I am fifteen and I am a computer addict. I am fond of communication with other teens. That's why I have a lot of friends in my country and other ones. We send messages from one computer to another one using e-mail, we have online conversations. I am a member of a computer club and I spend a lot of time there. Of course, it's rather expensive but my parents understand me and give me enough money to pay for my computer club. And I think that my hobby will be useful in my future profession. Besides I spend my free time in a sports club. I go in for kung fu. Recently films about kung fu have become very popular in Russia. This fighting itself is a great art, the result of many years of hard work and self-discipline. The man who made kung fu films famous was Bruce Lee. He used fists, elbows, feet (never weapons) and moved as fast as lightning. I am rather good at kung fu now, but I never use my skills to hurt anybody, unless it is absolutely necessary. Now people know what kung fu is, and I think it may become a sport of the future because it brings up your personality, will and nobility.

Vocabulary

leisure — досуг, свободное время
variety — разнообразие
pursuit — занятие
to keep fit — быть в хорошей форме
to increase — увеличивать
to jog — бегать трусцой
recreation centre — оздоровительный центр
indoor pool — крытый бассейн
wave-making machine — приспособление для создания искусственных волн
water slides — водные горки
tropical vegetation — тропическая растительность
to be as fit as a fiddle — быть здоровым
problem teenager — сложный подросток
high-risk activity — деятельность, связанная с высокой степенью опасности
spectator — болельщик
couch potato — телеман
to redesign — реконструировать

generation — поколение
to switch on — включать
to race — состязаться
to breed — разводить (*животных*)
hamster — хомяк
shy — застенчивый
in the heart of hearts — в глубине души
silly — глупый
to deliver — разносить
hitchhiking — путешествие автостопом
addict — имеющий пристрастие к чему-л.
message — сообщение
online conversation — разговор по компьютеру
self-discipline — самодисциплина
elbow — локоть
fist — кулак
weapon — оружие
lightning — молния
to bring up — воспитывать
personality — личность
nobility — благородство
will — сила воли

Questions

1. Why is there a great increase in fitness clubs? 2. Why do teens go in for sports? 3. What special programmes for problem teenagers do you know? 4. Are you a couch potato? Why? 5. Why is a young generation fond of communication? 6. What methods of communication do you know? 7. What method of communication do you prefer? Why? 8. Why can people say, "So many teens, so many kinds of activities"? 9. What kind of activity do you prefer? Why? 10. What do you know about kung fu?

How the British Relax

Like everybody else, British people like doing things outside work. And children usually join their parents' activities.

Gardening is a well-known favourite. As the weather in Britain is relatively mild, British people manage to do gardening almost all the year round. Sometimes this can be just doing a bit of weeding and sometimes vegetable and fruit growing. Mowing grass is also very important. Every Sunday morning (except for winters) they come out to mow their lawns. To a British person it is an important social duty. The British see an unmown lawn not only as a sign of laziness but also as disrespect to others (and you can get fined for it as well).

Walking is also very popular. All the members of the family have a pair of walking boots of their own. Walking is a leisure activity has a long tradition in England. Organized walking is also popular and is a good way to discover local sights of interest with a group of like-minded friends and a good guide.

Cycling is another popular activity. Unfortunately, many British today are very busy and don't have cycling paths. So young people find quiet country roads and spend their whole holidays exploring their homeland on their bikes. More extreme sports like rock climbing also attract people. And, of course, the famous British eccentricity is the cause of unusual sports like extreme ironing, for example. Mountains, rives, tall buildings, busy streets — all these places are suitable for this kind of sport. Of course, not all British teens keep fit by engaging in extreme sports. Many go to the gym, swimming pools or fitness classes. However, it has to be said that the British are not the sportiest nation in the world. Watching TV often gets in the way. Increasingly British teens spend their free time watching TV. It is sad but true. They become couch potatoes. The only comforting thing is that they are not on their own — most of the world seems to be doing the same.

As far as actually going away on holiday, many British young people choose to spend their holidays abroad, preferably where it is warm and dry.

Vocabulary

to relax — отдыхать
to join — присоединяться

to manage — справляться (*с чем-л.*)
to do weeding — полоть

to mow — косить
lawn — газон
laziness — лень
disrespect — неуважение
to get fined — быть оштрафованным
like-minded friend — единомышленник
local sight of interest — местная достопримечательность
cycling — велоспорт

path — дорожка, тропинка
quiet — тихий, спокойный
extreme sport — экстремальный вид спорта
eccentricity — эксцентричность
cause — причина
extreme ironing — глажение в экстремальных условиях
to engage — вовлекать, привлекать
sad — грустный, печальный
couch potato — телеман

Questions

1. Why do children usually join their parents' activities? 2. Do you usually join your parents' activities? Why? 3. What kinds of sports are popular in Britain? 4. What extreme sports do you know? 5. Do you go in for extreme sports? Why? 6. Why is gardening so popular in Britain? 7. Is gardening popular in Russia? Why? 8. Are you a couch potato? Why?

Club Culture in Britain

Going to nightclubs, or “clubbing” as it called, is very popular in Britain. From the age of about fifteen young people like to go clubbing at the weekend. Usually friends meet in the evening and go to a pub or a cafe, or just sit at home and chat. Then, late in the evening, after 10 pm, they travel to the centre of the town and wait in a queue outside the nightclub. The clubs are usually special buildings with a big space inside for dancing. Some clubs only play one kind of music, but most have different music on different nights. There is a chill-out room in the club. It is for people who are tired of dancing. They can relax there.

When you go clubbing, you need a special outfit. And it's very hot there so you should wear light clothes that are easy to dance in. It's a good idea to come to the club in a taxi and also order a taxi to take you home. It's very expensive, but teens usually share the fare.

There is usually a bar there. If you want beer or cocktail, the barman must check your identification. You have to prove you are

old enough to drink. If you are under eighteen, you can't drink. The legal age is eighteen.

There are often "under-eighteens" nights. Normally you must be eighteen to get into a club. At the door one can usually see a bouncer. On a normal night he checks the identification of all the clubbers as they enter the club. You need to show a card with a photograph, like a driver's license. The bouncer also collects the cover charge from the clubbers. A teen usually spends about forty pounds on a night out, including the taxi home.

Vocabulary

nightclub — ночной клуб

to chat — болтать

queue — очередь

space — пространство, место

chill-out room — комната для
отдыха

outfit — одежда

to share the fare — делить оплату
между собой

to prove — доказывать

to check one's identification —

проверять метрику, удостове-
рение личности

under eighteen — моложе 18 лет

bouncer — вышибала

driver's license — водительские
права

cover charge — плата за вход

to spend — тратить

to include — включать

Questions

1. Why is clubbing very popular in Britain? 2. Can you describe a British club? 3. Why do teens need a special outfit when go clubbing? 4. What is the legal age of going clubbing? 5. What are "under-eighteens" nights? 6. What does a bouncer do? 7. How much do teens usually spend on a night out? 8. Would you like to go clubbing? Why?

Great Dating Ideas

Let's say you have found a person you would really like to go out with, and you are ready to ask that person out on a date. It's helpful to have something in mind when you call. Here are some ideas.

A movie. One good way to make it a little interesting is to let your date choose the film. Once the movie starts, you won't have to say anything. That can be a relief if you are both shy.

A cafe. It's another classic. But you'll have to think of something to talk about for an hour or two. Sometimes that can be hard, especially on the first date. Besides, it can be a little expensive.

A museum. There are a lot of museums: art museums, history museums, nature museums, etc. If you and your partner like this sort of things, a museum can be a great place to go on date.

Parties. One way to break the ice with people is to have a small party with a theme at your house. You should invite your date as one of the people at the party. As a teenager you can invite your parents if that is comfortable for you. It can be fun for your parents too. Most of these ideas work well for parties with 6 to 10 people.

Pot luck dinner. The idea of such a party is that everyone brings something. As a host of a small party you would want to make the "main dish" and then ask people to bring other things like salads, side dishes, desserts, etc. You should tell everyone exactly what to bring.

Progressive dinner. If you and your friends live close together, then a progressive dinner can be fun. The idea is to go from house to house for each phase of the dinner. At one house you have appetizers, at another the salad, at another the main dish, and so on. You might stop at four to six houses for the full meal.

A dance. You can go to a disco or have your own dance. Get a group of friends together, pick the music and dance.

Special events. Look up special events in the paper. The Saturday and Sunday paper in your area will have a list of special events for the weekend. You can find some really interesting things there.

Vocabulary

to date — назначать свидание, встречаться

date — свидание; тот, кому назначают свидание

movie — (амер.) кино, кинофильм

relief — помощь

to break ice — растопить лёд

theme — тема

host — хозяин

pot luck dinner — ужин в складчину

main dish — основное блюдо

side dish — гарнир

phase — фаза

appetizer — закуска

and so on — и так далее

to pick — подбирать, выбирать

area — местность

event — событие

Questions

1. Have you ever had a date? 2. Where do you usually go out on a date? Why? 3. What are other places where one can go out on a date? 4. Do you like the idea of pot luck dinners? Why? 5. Do you like the idea of progressive dinners? Why?

Hobbies

A hobby is something you like doing in your free time, such as reading, listening to music, making something, growing, collecting different things, etc. Different people like doing different things, so we can say that people have different hobbies. "Tastes differ," says the proverb.

My friends are fond of collecting different things: dolls, postcards, coins and stamps. My friend Ann started collecting dolls when her aunt gave her a china doll. It's the oldest one she has in her collection. It was made in France a hundred years ago. Her other dolls are modern. She has twenty-one in her collection. They are different: they are made of plastic, wood and cloth. The smallest one is 1 cm tall. The most beautiful are from Germany and Britain, and they are dressed in regional costumes. She also has a lovely wooden one from Russia. My friend is proud of her collection. She likes to show all her dolls to her friends and to tell interesting things about them.

My other friend has hundreds of postcards and they are all fascinating. At first he started collecting all sorts, from all over the world. That was too complicated, so now he collects local ones. They describe the history of our city during the last hundred years.

One of my classmates collects coins because he likes the history they record. He has a special catalogue where he writes everything he knows about his coins. It's a very interesting hobby.

My brother is fond of collecting stamps. And I think they're the best things to collect. Collectors usually have a theme: stamps from one country, stamps about space, animals, ships, etc. My brother's theme is famous people. He has a special notebook where he writes down everything he knows about famous people from his collection. Of course, collecting can cost you a lot of money if you buy an old thing. But my friends swap with one another.

As for me, I am fond of collecting books. So my hobby is reading. My theme is historical books. And History is my favourite subject at school. I have two hundred books in my collection. It's a family hobby and all in all there are two thousand books in our family collection. I'm very proud of my collection and my family.

Vocabulary

Tastes differ. — О вкусах не спорят.

china doll — фарфоровая кукла

cloth — материя

regional costume — национальная одежда

wooden — деревянный

postcard — почтовая открытка

complicated — сложный

local — местный

coin — монета

to record — увековечивать

to cost — стоить

to swap — обмениваться

all in all — всего

to be proud of — гордиться

Questions

1. What hobbies do you know? 2. What is a hobby? 3. What is your hobby? Why? 4. What is your friend's hobby? 5. What are your parents' hobbies? Why? 6. Do all people have their hobbies? 7. Why is it necessary to have a hobby? 8. What exotic hobbies do you know?

How Teenagers Spend Their Holidays

Holidays are a great time for teenagers. They can do almost what they want. They can visit different countries. They can go to their friends. They can go to the countryside. They can enjoy their hobbies. They can read a lot, watch TV and listen to music. And then they can sleep a lot.

As for me, in summer I usually go to escape from stresses and strain of everyday routine. In June and July I spend time in our country house. It's not far from Moscow. It usually takes us 30 minutes to get there by car. I stay with my grandparents there. I have a lot of friends there. We swim, play, ride a bike, and what not! I really have a great time there. Of course, our school

teachers give us a lot of home assignment for summer. But I don't have enough time to do it because I spend all time with my friends.

In August my parents have 14 days off. So we usually have a seaside holiday together.

I've been wondering — what is the point of going on holiday? Especially a family holiday. Holidays are supposed to do you good — they relax you, take your mind off the stress and strains of work, brighten the everyday tedium of routine with a spot of sunshine and, all in all, recharge your batteries ready for the long, cold winter.

That's the theory. Now let's look at some facts. I'm 16 now, and of course, I prefer to go somewhere where there are no parents. Holidays with parents when you are 16 years old are just one big yawn. And visiting museums with Mum and Dad (they always find museums everywhere) is the biggest yawn of all.

Moreover I hate queues at the airports. They are as long as the Great Wall of China.

When I see it, my great dream is to return home or to the countryside and to relax without parents. But it's just a dream. And in life we go to the airport, stand in a queue and go by plane. And I spend 14 days with my parents. We swim, visit the museums, go on excursions, and what not! And when I return home, I understand that my batteries have recharged and I am ready to start my work at school! Oh, home sweet home.

Vocabulary

to escape — исчезать

stress — стресс

strain — напряжение

everyday routine — каждодневный режим, заведенный порядок

point — смысл, цель

to relax — отдыхать

to take one's mind off the stress — снимать стресс

to brighten — скрашивать, оживлять

tedium of routine — утомительный распорядок

all in all — в целом

to recharge — перезаряжать

battery — батарея

yawn — скучища, нечто нудное

queue — очередь

the Great Wall of China —

Великая Китайская стена

dream — мечта

to go on excursions — ходить на экскурсии

Questions

1. Where do teens like to spend their holidays? 2. How do teens like to spend their holidays? 3. How do you usually spend your holidays? 4. What do you do in summer? 5. Do you like to relax with your parents in summer? Why? 6. How did you spend last summer? 7. How do you usually spend winter holidays? 8. What are your favourite holidays?

Dialogues

1.

- How do you do?
- How do you do?
- Nice to meet you. I'm Peter. I'm from Moscow.
- Nice to meet you too. I'm Betty. How old are you?
- I'm 16. And I'm in the tenth grade. And you?
- I go to college. I'll be a designer. I live here with my parents.

They are doctors.

— Doctors? So are my parents. They work in a hospital, and they like their work. And my ambition is to be a doctor too.

— And what is your hobby?

— I collect badges. I travel a lot and the theme of my collection is different countries. I have about 100 badges in my collection. It is a long-lasting hobby and who knows, in many years this collection may have become very appreciated and can be enjoyed by my own children too.

— Have you got a pet?

— Oh yes, it's a dog. I take a dog for walks every day and train my pet in spite of weather.

— I also have a pet. It's a hamster. It lives in a cage and I take care of it. When it's warm, I even walk with my pet.

— You see, I'm keen on history and I know that your city is ancient. Will you show me all interesting places in your city?

— Sure. Now I have holidays and a lot of free time. So I'll be your guide.

— Thank you a lot.

— My pleasure.

2.

— What holidays do you specialize in?

— We're specialize in adventure holidays. We specialize in travelling to Australia and we organize adventure holidays for people who want something a little bit different from usual holidays.

— And what adventure holidays did you organize for your holiday-makers last month?

— We organized a tour to Australia when they celebrate a balloon holiday.

— Oh, it was great, I think.

— Sure. Tourists were taken by bus to the Tablelands where the balloon was launched.

— And who did the launching and who were pilots of the balloon?

— There was a crew of at least two qualified pilots. And our tourists got into the basket. It was unforgettable. They saw wonderful sights of Australia and the Pacific Ocean from the balloon.

— And how much does it cost?

— Well, the balloon trip itself costs \$98 for an hour and about \$150 for a trip lasting two hours.

— Thank you very much. I hope next year I'll buy this tour in your travel agency.

3.

— What is the role of TV and its impact on children, Mr Levis?

— I personally am very much in favour of my children watching TV. People do talk a lot of nonsense about the terrible influence it has. I think it provides children with information about the real world.

— I share your opinion, Mr Levis. I think children need guidance. I think that parents should control what their children watch on TV.

— Of course. Sometimes the impact on children of many TV programmes is negative. There is a lot of violence on TV.

— Sure. If we continue to allow such programmes, such rubbish to enter our living rooms for so much of the day, then I dread the consequences on this generation and the next.

— Yes. Standards must be kept up. And I think that it's time to introduce censorship again on TV.

— And some films don't reflect the real needs of our children. I think we should encourage our children to read more than to watch TV.

— Our children should watch less bad TV and more good TV and not be couch potatoes.

4.

— Hello!

— Hello! Can I help you?

— Yes, I'd like to make a booking for the show on Sunday evening.

— You mean the musical "Cats"? But the tickets are sold out.

— Sold out? How about next Sunday evening? Do you have tickets?

— How many tickets would you like?

— I'd like to book two tickets in the stalls. And how much are they?

— \$14 in the front row. Is it OK?

— That's right. Can I pay by credit card?

— Sure. So when will you pick your tickets up?

— If I may, I'll pick them up before the show.

5.

— I know you love animals, don't you?

— Yes. Most of all I like dogs. That's why I keep a pet. It's a dog. And you?

— My favourite animals are cats. I have a pet cat at home.

— I never regret having a dog though it has involved certain drawbacks, mostly of space. We live in a small flat and my dog needs exercise. But it is great fun. It can do all kinds of tricks.

— Having a cat doesn't make too many demands on you. It's not noisy like a dog. I know that cats help keep you calm and doctors have said that stroking a cat is actually good for your health.

— Dogs make more demands on you. You have to take them out regularly not less than twice a day. So if one doesn't have free time, he shouldn't keep a dog.

— And I think, it's interesting to see our pets. Will you come to my place tomorrow?

— OK. See you tomorrow then. Bye.

— Bye-bye.

Writing

1.

5 Queens Gardens
Bayswater
London W2 3BA

21 June 2005

Dear Susan,

It's been ages since I heard from you. How are the things? I'm just writing to say I might be coming to London in July. And I wonder whether you're having a party again on your birthday like you did last year.

By the way, I got great marks in my exams.

Write soon, because I have to make plans.

Kiss,

John

2.

56 Green Street
California 43 A 66
USA

8 September 2005

Dear Mary and John,

We are writing to tell you about our one-week package holiday to Britain. Everything was OK, but we didn't like our hotel. It was too noisy and the food was awful. We even had a stomachache and consulted a doctor.

But all the excursions were very interesting. We saw the British Museum, Buckingham Palace and other sights of London. But we paid extra for the visits to Warwick and Stratford. But in spite of some drawbacks we enjoyed our holiday.

What are your plans for the summer? Will you come to visit us?

Hope to hear from you soon.

All the best,

Lucy and Sam

3.

34 Fitzroy Square
London SE19 2NT

23 February 2004

Dear John,

Thanks for your letter. I'm really glad to hear that you're enjoying your new job, and it's great news to hear you're going to be in town on Friday.

I'll come to get you from the airport, but I need your flight details. Could you send me them in the next few days, please? I'll have the children with me at the weekend — I hope you don't mind too much. They are very quiet, and they will be with their friends.

I think we can go to a concert on Saturday night. I am going to buy the tickets this morning.

Bye for now,

Alex

UNIT 4

FASHION

Fashion and Clothes

Most people like to think they are individualists and simply wear whatever they like. Few people will admit to being slaves to fashion. However, we are not just talking of the expensive haute couture of the Paris and Milan fashion houses, which not many people can afford anyway. We are talking of fashions and trends in everyday clothes. We say that we wear jeans and sweaters, because they are cheap and practical, but isn't it true that our jeans and sweaters tend to be the same as everyone else wears? Doesn't that mean that we like to be trendy? Of course, the big chain stores, to some extent, dictate what we wear, but they always offer a choice, which extends beyond clothes to make-up, personal ornaments (men wear earrings too nowadays) and hair styles. It is easy to declare that we do not slavishly follow the dictates of fashion, but aren't we all conformists in the heart?

Every fashion goes through three stages. At first it is different; it may be new and exciting, shocking or surprising. Then it becomes popular, and the original idea is imitated. Finally it becomes boring and out of date as a new fashion starts.

Being fashionable says something about you. It means that you are up to date in other ways.

Some changes in clothes have been practical and reflect the different way that we live. But fashion is about having fun and being up to date. Today fashion is a big industry.

When fashion shocks, it is usually more than clothes that are changing. In the 1920s people were shocked when women cut their hair short and wore short skirts. People were shocked when women started to wear trousers to work in the early 1970s.

At the beginning of the twentieth century very young girls and boys all wore dresses and had long, sometimes curly, hair. The big change started in the late 1950s when teenagers adopted blue jeans and T-shirts. A whole range of clothes was made for young people

in the 1960s and after. Fashion became colourful and exciting, changed fast and was designed for teenagers. Later in the 1970s many young people shocked and frightened the older generation. Their jeans were torn, they wore several earrings, put chains on their jackets and had spiky, coloured hair. They were seen rude and aggressive, so for many people such clothes meant “here is an ugly, rude person”. They were punks.

Men’s clothes have changed a lot. In the sixteenth century gentlemen’s clothes were brightly coloured, and the cloth was patterned and embroidered. In the seventeenth century a wealthy man had silver buckles on his shoes and lace at the end of his sleeves. He could be fashionable because he was rich. However, not every fashion started with the wealthy. Trousers were worn by working men in the eighteenth century, but by the beginning of the nineteenth century they were also worn by fashionable men.

Before the twentieth century European women wore long skirts or dresses. Looking at these dresses, we notice that there is a lot of beautiful embroidery, lace and decorative work including gold thread and pearls.

After the First World War women’s fashion changed much more than men’s. In the 1920s in Europe many young women began to wear shorter skirts and very short hair. After the Second World War women’s fashion has continued to change rapidly.

For most British people fashion is not very important. The British don’t think about it very much. Even the richest and most important people often wear casual clothes. Only a very few can afford the clothes by Jean Muir or the Emanuels. Most people go down to the nearest shopping street and buy something from a chain store. The most popular of these stores, with a shop in every town in the country, is Marks & Spencer. Twenty per cent of all the clothes the British buy come from M & S.

Vocabulary

haute couture — от кутюр
to afford — позволять себе
trends — тенденции
trendy — сверхмодный
latest fashion — последняя мода
make-up — макияж

personal ornaments — украшения
out of date — несовременный
to be up to date — быть современным
to shock — шокировать
curly — кудрявый

generation — поколение
torn — поношенный
earrings — серьги
spiky — торчащие в разные стороны
embroidery — вышивка

lace — кружево
thread — нить
pearl — жемчуг
casual — повседневный
chain store — однотипные магазины одной фирмы

Questions

1. What stages does every fashion go through? 2. What does being fashionable mean? 3. Why can fashion shock? 4. What was women's fashion in the 1920s? 5. What did young boys and girls wear at the beginning of the twentieth century? 6. What was fashion in the 1960s? 7. What do you know about men's clothes? 8. What happened to women's fashion after the First World War? 9. Does fashion mean much for most British people? 10. What does fashion mean for you?

Modern Styles

Fashion, or clothing style, is always changing. Fashion is never permanent. Long skirts, short skirts, pants for women, make-up for men — these are some of the fashions that come in and out of style. A style that is popular one year is out of style the next.

In the middle of the eighteenth century some of the most fashionable rich young men in Britain copied the latest Italian fashions. They wore extravagant clothes, lots of make-up to look pale and high wigs that were powdered and tied with ribbons.

In Europe at the end of the eighteenth century women's dresses began to get wider and their hair began to get longer. The widest dresses measured nearly two metres, making it difficult to move around and sit down. To make themselves prettier, some women had enormous hairstyles. These were often decorated with flowers, feathers and even fruit!

After the First World War the clothes of the swinging 1920s shocked many people. Fashions for women became more relaxed and freer than before. Their hair became much shorter and dresses were not as long and wide as before. Their clothes became brighter

and less formal, to match the new music and dances like the Charleston.

Punk fashions were as aggressive as punk music, which arrived in the 1970s. Punks chose the less conventional hairstyles possible. They cut their hair in strange ways and often dyed it brightly. They usually wore large boots, torn jeans and painted leather jackets.

In many countries today people wear modern fashions most of the time. They sometimes wear their traditional clothing on special days such as holidays. For example, in Japan people often wear kimonos, or long silk dresses on New Year's Day. Yet fashion is more than clothing. If you look at fashion magazines, you see many tall, slim models. These models show that height and weight are an important part of fashion. Many people admire fashion models and wish that they could look more like them. As long as people have the desire to be beautiful, there will be fashion. There will always be people who follow the latest styles because they want to look their best and be more attractive. These people think that their appearance is very important. They will spend much of their time and money trying to look like the ideal man or woman.

Many people, especially young people, take no notice of the clothes the designers produce. They wear things which express their ideas and feelings about life. If a boy has very short, almost shaven hair, people expect him to have right wing politics. But boys with very long hair are thought to have left wing politics. A boy who wears a leather jacket covered in bits of metal will probably ride a motorbike. A girl who wears Laura Ashley dresses will probably have middle-class ideas.

Some young people, of course, have fun with all the latest "street styles". They cut their hair into strange shapes, wear lots of cheap jewellery or paint their lips blue. These "street styles" come and go. But a lot of young people try to look as clean and tidy as possible. Clothes with a sporty look are popular. They make people look healthy and energetic.

Street styles are not created by the fashion designers. In fact, the fashion designers often use ideas from street fashions when their own designs are made. But some leaders of British fashion have enough ideas of their own. One of them is Jean Muir, whose designs let her be one of the best designers.

Vocabulary

pants — брюки
permanent — постоянный
make-up — макияж
pale — бледный
wig — парик
to be powdered — быть напудренным
ribbon — лента
enormous hairstyles — огромные прически
feather — перо
to match — подходить
silk — шелковый

height and weight — рост и вес
appearance — внешность
shaven hair — выбритые волосы
left wing — левое крыло
leather jacket — кожаная куртка
middle-class ideas — идеи среднего класса
strange shape — странная форма
cheap jewellery — дешевые украшения
sporty look — спортивный вид
to come and go — приходить и уходить
fashion designer — модельер

Questions

1. Why is fashion never permanent? 2. What happened to women's dresses at the end of the eighteenth century in Europe? 3. Why did women have enormous hairstyles at the end of the eighteenth century? 4. What do you know about fashion after the First World War? 5. What do you know about punk fashion? 6. Why are fashion magazines published? 7. What do you know about teen fashion? 8. What sort of clothes do you like to wear and why? 9. What do you know about "street styles"? 10. Are there any victims of "fashion victimization" among your friends?

Teenage Clothes and Fashion

Why is it that when you look around the streets, all the young people seem to be wearing the same clothes? Why does every single one of them appear to have had their hair cut — or not cut — at the same hairdresser's? Just watch a few music videos and you will begin to understand how it all works. Popular music seems to have become the most important means of self-definition for young people. Whether they prefer heavy metal, grunge or pop, the musicians they see on TV soon become their role models. They not only want to hear the sound, they want to copy the musician's style. The result

is long, straggly hair, which is shaved at the sides, multiple earrings, baggy shirts and trousers and trainers as big as shoe boxes. Comfort is not essential either. Big shoes may be easier to slip out of than to actually walk in, but if you want to keep up with the trends, you wear them anyway. Peer pressure is another influence. To most young people dressing to look like their friends seems to be the surest way to be accepted. Unfortunately, the first victim of “fashion victimization” is individuality. While style should ideally be a way of showing people who you really are, following the trends means that you end up being — or seeming to be — exactly like everyone else.

Teenagers would rather not go out at all than go out wearing the “wrong” clothes or footwear. Even in cold weather they prefer to go out without wearing a jacket if it means avoiding wearing something which does not make them look cool. The problem is the clothes that teenagers think are cool, tend to be more expensive than those which are not. Also, the “uncool” clothes are often much warmer than the trendy ones, but unfortunately kids can’t stand wearing them. Certain brand names are not as popular, for some reasons, as others.

Take boots, for example. Many teenagers like wearing Nike’s shoes. Nike is an American manufacturer of sports clothes and shoes. He has become very fashionable with young people. Nike is pronounced “nickey” and is the goddess in Greek mythology. Nike, who sat at the side of Zeus, was usually represented as a winged figure. And nowadays the Nike “swoosh” logo appears on every pair of Nike shoes.

Vocabulary

hairdresser — парикмахер
self-definition — самовыражение, самоопределение
straggly — растрепанный
to shave — бриться
multiple earrings — многочисленные серьги
baggy — мешковатый
trainers — кроссовки
essential — значительный, достаточный

to slip out — соскакивать
to keep up with the trends — идти в ногу с тенденциями моды
peer — ровня, равный
pressure — давление
influence — влияние
surest way — самый надежный способ
to accept — принимать
victim — жертва
individuality — индивидуальность

to follow the trends — следовать тенденциям моды
footwear — обувь
trendy — сверхмодный
can't stand wearing — не перестают носить
brand name — торговая марка
logo — логотип

manufacture — производство, изготовление
goddess — богиня
mythology — мифология
to represent — представлять
winged figure — крылатая фигура
swoosh — звук пронсящегося на большой скорости предмета

Questions

1. What clothes do you like to wear? 2. Do you keep up with the trends? Why? 3. Is it cheap or expensive to keep up with the trends? 4. Do all teenagers follow the trends? Why? 5. Do your parents approve your taste in clothes? 6. Do you like to look cool? Why? 7. Do you prefer individuality in fashion? Why? 8. Do you like to wear clothes with brand names? Why?

Tattoos and Body Piercing

Nowadays if you walk down the street in any big city, you'll see persons with a tattoo, or a ring in their ear or nose — or even in their eyebrow. Decorating your body with exotic designs seems to be more and more popular.

A tattoo is any indelible mark under the skin, which is made deliberately. The most common method is to prick the skin with a sharp instrument, like a needle. But it used to be done and can still be done with a bone or a shell. Originally tattooing was part of religious ceremonies in some cultures, but it goes back at least to the ancient Egyptians. The Japanese have been tattooing for centuries. And the American Indians used tattooing as a way of identifying themselves with certain tribes. For warriors in Africa it was a way of showing how brave you were. If you wanted to frighten your enemy, you'd have to get yourself tattooed first. Today in some societies if young girls are not decorated with beautiful tattooing, they won't be allowed to get married. Maoris in New Zealand still tattoo their faces.

The fashion for tattoos and body piercing became more popular in recent years with teens.

In the modern world body piercing began in the 1970s in California. It became popular with punk rock in the 1980s as teenagers chose to express their rejection of conservative behaviour by piercing their noses, ears or eyebrows. It was a way of saying: "I am not like you: I am myself." It's a way to express person's individuality. But body piercing is not only a teenage trend, it goes deeper. Even middle-aged people are keen on body piercing. Some middle-aged persons used to be rebels when they were young. And body piercing reminds them that they were once young and revolutionary.

So a tattoo is certainly fashionable. A little red rose on your shoulder can seem like a good idea at the time. But be careful. There is a very real danger of getting a serious disease if you go to an unqualified tattoo artist.

Vocabulary

piercing — пирсинг

eyebrow — бровь

exotic design — экзотический
знак

indelible mark — несмываемый
знак

deliberately — сознательно

to prick — прокалывать

skin — кожа

sharp — острый

needle — игла

bone — кость

shell — ракушка

religious ceremony — религиоз-
ная церемония

to go back — относиться

to identify — определять,
идентифицировать

tribe — племя

warrior — воин

to frighten — пугать

rejection — отказ, неприятие

conservative — консервативный

teenage trend — подростковая
тенденция в моде

middle-aged people — люди
среднего возраста

to be keen on — увлекаться

rebel — бунтовщик

to remind — напоминать

disease — заболевание

unqualified — неквалифициро-
ванный

Questions

1. What do you think about tattoos and body piercing? 2. Do you think body piercing is a good idea to express a teen's individuality? Why? 3. Why are grown-ups sometimes keen on body piercing? 4. To what times does tattooing go back? 5. What was tattooing originally in some cultures?

A Short History of Hair

Over thousands of years some very odd things have been done to hair. Here are some of them.

It's strange to think of tough soldiers having their hair curled, but that's what the Persians did over 2000 years ago. The curls were made by twisting the hair round hot rods. Their thick beards and moustaches were curled too.

In about 1150, during the Norman period, women grew hair as long as they could. They spent hours having their hair done in plaits. They wrapped their hair in ribbons and stuffed the ends into metal cases.

In the seventeenth century men and women wore wigs. Wigs could be made from animal hair, someone else's hair or even one's own hair. By 1780, women's wigs had become enormous. They were padded out with pillows, decorated with feathers, ribbons and jewels. It took so long to have the wigs styled that they were worn for a month, and women had a scratching stick to use when they itched beneath the wig.

In the 1940s a blond film star called Veronica Lake started a craze for wearing long hair hanging over one eye. This caused trouble in factories where thousands of women were working for the first time. Women would catch their hair in the machines.

Nowadays people prefer to have different hairstyles. They usually choose if this or that hairstyle suits them. Men and women both have long and short hair.

There are some young people who have incredible hairstyles. They are punks. Today they are part of London's tourist scene.

In American English the word punk is often used to describe someone who is immoral and worthless. In Britain the word was borrowed to describe a new group of people who first appeared in the early 1970s. They were mixture of art students, hippies and followers of fashion who rejected conventional styles of dress. They were fans of loud, fast and violent tuneless music, which tried to shock with violent lyrics, and their hair and clothing did the same.

In the days before hair gel they used everything to make their hair stiff. Sugar, toothpaste, washing-up liquid, butter, oil, glue were all used. The clothes were also "DIY" and punks spent hours tearing

their jeans and jackets and creating the punk look with safety pins, studs, paper clips and everything they could find.

By 1977 punk music was at the top of the hit parade and the punk “look” was high fashion. Fashion designer Zandra Rhodes produced a collection of clothing based on the punk look, and you could have your hair done in punk styles in hairdressers all over Britain.

Today’s haircuts are far more exaggerated and colourful than anything that existed during the early punk era. These haircuts have been created for American cameras, and punk rockers are one of the few youth movements to have sold themselves in this way. The original violent movement, which changed the way many people looked and felt, is a thing of the past.

Vocabulary

tough — грубый
to curl — завивать
Persians — персы
to twist — накручивать
rod — прут, стержень
beard — борода
moustaches — усы
plait — коса
to wrap — заворачивать
ribbon — лента
to stuff — засовывать
metal case — металлическая коробка
wig — парик
enormous — огромный
to pad out — прокладывать, подбивать
pillow — подушечка
feather — перо
jewels — драгоценности
scratching stick — палочка для почесывания
to itch — чесаться
beneath — ниже
craze — повальное увлечение, мода

to cause trouble — причинять вред
incredible — невероятный, потрясающий
to catch — ловить, вытаскивать
to describe — описывать
immoral — аморальный
worthless — бесполезный
to borrow — заимствовать
mixture — смесь
to reject — отвергать, отказываться
conventional — общепринятый
fan — болельщик, фанат
tuneless — без мелодии
violent — неистовый, яростный
to style — вводить в моду, конструировать по модели
gel — гель
glue — клей
liquid — жидкость
DIY (Do it yourself) — сделай сам
to tear — рвать
safety pin — безопасная булавка
stud — запонка, кнопка
clip — скрепка, зажим

exaggerated — преувеличенный
to exist — существовать
era — эра, время

rocker — рокер
to sell — продавать
original — первоначальный

Questions

1. What hairstyle did soldiers in Persia have? 2. What do you know about women's hairstyle in 1150? 3. What did men and women wear in the seventeenth century? 4. What were the wigs made from? 5. What is the hairstyle nowadays? 6. What hairstyle do you prefer? Why? 7. What do you know about punks? 8. What does the word punk mean? 9. How did punks appear? 10. Why are punks part of London's tourist scene?

Fashion and Colour

Today fashion dictates not only the clothes we wear, but the colours too. It's interesting to know that colours have had important meanings since ancient times. If you go to the fashion departments today, you'll be dazzled by the variety of colours, patterns and textures available. But there is nothing new in this. The truth is that ancient people already recognized the magical power of colour. For the ancient Egyptians, the Celts in Britain, the Aztecs in South America colour was an important part of fashion.

In many ancient civilizations people painted coloured circles and lines around their eyes and mouths. They did it to scare away evil spirits. But soon they realized that colour could be used to make their bodies and faces beautiful — and cosmetics were born. Ancient people used cosmetics to distinguish different tribes and also males and females. Women used colour and pattern to emphasize their body shape. Ancient Celtic women painted their bodies blue. Men used designs that emphasized their strength and skills. So body painting is one of the most ancient arts and today it is coming back into fashion, for example, in tattoos.

Eventually, the colours of our clothes became very important. Clothes are a symbol of power. The power in the clothes affects both the person who wears them and the people around that person. So it's important to choose the colours you wear carefully.

For example, recent researches show that wearing a red sweater or jacket can increase your energy levels. The colour green, on the other hand, is known to calm the nerves and soothe emotions.

The Aztecs and Maya civilizations didn't know wool, linen or silk. But they dyed their textiles with great artistry. For them every colour had a meaning, either positive or negative. For example, yellow was the symbol of the sun and ripe corn, and blue meant that the wearer had royal ancestors. Red stood for blood. Black symbolized war and death. In ancient Egypt gold was the colour of the Sun god and the symbol of the power. In Asian cultures white is the colour of sorrow. The blue of the sky, the red of the sun and the paleness of the moon were associated with religious rituals, legends and poetry.

Nowadays fashion has become international. Today the same fabrics, colours and designs are available all over the world. Fashion dictates not only the clothes we wear, but the colours too. All colours are available now. And the best thing is to choose the colour that suits you best, that doesn't make you look too pale, one that doesn't clash with your hair colour, and one that reflects your personality. Remember that colours can influence the way you feel. So wear colours that make you feel confident and relaxed. Today, just as in ancient times, the right clothes give you power, make you look good and help to identify you as part of your social group. So your colour choices match your personality.

Vocabulary

power — власть

pattern — рисунок, узор

textile — ткань

to be available — быть доступным, иметься в распоряжении

evil spirits — злые силы

to distinguish — отличать, различать

tribe — племя

to emphasize — подчеркивать, выделять

shape — форма

male — мужчина

female — женщина

to affect — влиять, воздействовать

impatient — нетерпеливый, раздражительный

on the other hand — с другой стороны

to calm — успокаивать

wool — шерсть

linen — лен

silk — шелк

to dye — красить

artistry — мастерство

ripe corn — созревшее зерно
wearer — владелец
ancestor — предок
sorrow — печаль, грусть
pale — бледность

fabric — волокно
to suit — подходить, годиться
pale — бледный
to clash — дисгармонировать

Questions

1. Why were colours so important for ancient people? 2. What did ancient people use colours for? 3. How did the cosmetics appear? 4. What did some colours mean in ancient civilizations? 5. What do some colours mean today? 6. How should people choose the colours for their clothes? 7. In what way do colour choices show your personality? 8. What are your favourite colours? 9. Do they match your personality? 10. Do you share the idea that colours can match one's personality?

Dialogues

1.

- Can I help you?
- No, thanks. I'm just looking around.
- OK. If you find anything you like, just let me know.
- I do want a blouse.
- All right. What size do you take?
- Well, I'm not sure.
- Let's measure you. I think size 14 might fit. Would you like to try this one on?
- Yes. Where are your changing rooms?
- Over there. In the back of the shop ... Well, how did it fit?
- It's really tight in the shoulders.
- Yes, you need a bigger size ... How does this one fit?
- This pink one fits well, but it's not my style. What a pity!
- What about this one? This one suits you.
- Yes, this is a nice blouse. I think I'll take it. How much is it?
- \$85, madam.
- Thank you very much.
- You're welcome.

2.

— I like your hat, Jane.

— That isn't my hat, it's my hair.

— Your hair? You can't have hair like that, Jane, it's brilliant green!

— Old women can dye their hair blue. There are plenty who paint their nails red.

— That's not the same at all. They only stress what nature meant. Green is ... green is ... I cannot find the words.

— Unnatural — is that what you mean? An appendix operation is too. And as for transplanting a heart ... ! And I love all my emerald hair!

— What does Chris think?

— Oh, didn't you know? Why, his hair is purple and red!

3.

— Can I help you?

— Thank you. I'm looking for a jacket, this jacket. How much is it?

— It's a hundred and fifty pounds.

— That's too expensive.

— Well, we have lots of other jackets. How about this one?

— I don't like the colour. It's not dark enough. You see, I want something darker that goes with my trousers. And I don't like the pockets. They are too big.

— Well, what about this one?

— That's much better.

— It really suits you.

— Does it? How much is it?

— It's \$50, madam.

— All right. I'll have it.

4.

— Can I help you?

— I'm looking for a skirt.

— What size are you?

— I don't know. Can you measure me?

— OK. You're size 12. These ones are here.

- I like this blue one.
- Would you like to try it on?
- Where are the changing rooms?
- They are over there.
- It's too long.
- That's no problem. We can alter it for you.
- OK then. I'll have it.

5.

— I hate having to wear a school uniform. I think you should be allowed to show your individuality, and clothes are something very personal.

— I don't think so. I think that a person should show his or her individuality at the party or at the theatres, but not at school. In our school we have a dressing code, which is necessary for all students.

— But not all schools in Britain have their dressing code. I wish there weren't a school uniform at our school.

— Why? You can show your individuality at Ann's party tomorrow. I think you've got an invitation.

— Sure. We're good friends with Ann. And you?

— I also have an invitation.

— So see you tomorrow in your new dress. Bye-bye.

— Bye-bye. I hope you'll wear your new dress too.

Writing

1.

10 March 2005

Dear Cathy,

Thank you for your postcard. It was very pleasant to receive it. I was really happy.

I remember you telling me that you bought your black hat not far from your place. Two days ago I won some money and now I'd like to buy the same hat as you have. I admire it very much. And it goes with my new jacket.

Would you write me the address of that shop? Or may be you'll go with me there?

Hope to hear from you soon,

Mary

2.

15 December 2005

Dear Mum and Dad,

I was awfully glad to get your letter. I'd like to tell you what I bought yesterday.

We went shopping with Ted and bought all necessary clothes for our wedding ceremony. We liked them very much. And they suit us well, especially my hat and dress. They are luxurious.

So we are waiting for you on Sunday morning.

Lots of love,

Caroline

UNIT 5

FOOD AND SHOPPING

Eating Habits in Britain

The traditional British breakfast is a cooked meal of bacon, eggs and sausages, preceded by cereal or fruit and followed by toast. Nowadays this large meal is served mainly in hotels and is very popular with foreign visitors. Britons may eat this big breakfast at weekends or on special occasions but they prefer a smaller, healthier meal to start a normal day.

Lunch is a light meal and is eaten at school or work at about 1 pm. Lunch takes 30–40 minutes. Some offices have installed a microwave oven for employees to use. Popular lunches are: a salad or a sandwich; a baked potato; beans on toast.

Snacks are very popular in Britain, and many people frequently eat snacks between meals. Schools may also sell snacks, such as crisps, chocolate, sweets and biscuits. Instant snacks are the fastest-growing sector of the food market.

Dinner is usually the main meal of the day and consists of two courses — meat or fish and vegetables followed by a dessert or pudding. Convenience and frozen foods are especially popular. Convenience meals are already cooked — all you have to do is to heat them up in a microwave. Most supermarkets sell a range of pre-packed meals to be heated in a microwave.

Takeaways became extremely popular in the 1980s. The traditional British takeaway is fish and chips eaten with salt and vinegar. Some fish and chips shops still wrap your meal in newspaper, others use special bags to keep it warm. Some give you a plastic fork. Most towns and cities now offer a wide range of takeaway meals, from American-style hamburgers to Turkish kebabs. Many families prefer to eat takeaway food for dinner instead of cooking.

The British are famous for their love of sweet things, and afternoon tea with sandwiches, scones, jam and several different kinds of cake was once a traditional custom. Like the English

cooked breakfast, it is now more often found in teashops and hotels than in private homes, and you can buy special guidebooks to tell you where the best afternoon teas are served. Most working people do not have teas as an afternoon “meal”, but they do have a short break in the middle of the afternoon for a cup of tea. Tea is often drunk with lunch and dinner.

Since the 1970s eating habits in Britain have undergone a change. People started to eat less fat and more fibre. Fat is believed to be one of the major causes of obesity and heart disease. Forty per cent of adults in Britain are overweight. High-fibre foods and low-fat foods can now be found in all shops and supermarkets.

The British have also started to count calories. They try to take in fewer calories and to follow a calorie-controlled diet. One of the fastest-growing sectors of the food market in Britain is slimming foods.

Vocabulary

meal — прием пищи, еда	takeaway — готовое блюдо, отпускаемое на дом, с собой
to precede — предшествовать	extremely — чрезвычайно
cereal — овсяная каша, овсяные хлопья	fish and chips — рыба с картофелем во фритюре
to serve — подавать, обслуживать	vinegar — уксус
occasion — случай, событие	scone — булочка
to install — устанавливать	guidebook — путеводитель
employee — служащий	break — перерыв
baked potato — печеный картофель	in the middle — в середине
snack — легкая закуска	to undergo — подвергаться, претерпевать (<i>изменения</i>)
frequently — часто	fibre — клетчатка
instant snacks — готовые закуски	cause — причина
course — блюдо	obesity — тучность, ожирение
convenience foods — пищевые полуфабрикаты быстрого приготовления	heart disease — заболевание сердца
frozen foods — быстрозамороженные продукты	adult — взрослый
range — ассортимент	overweight — избыточный вес
pre-packed meal — расфасованная еда	to count — считать
to heat — нагревать	to slim — стараться похудеть, сидеть на диете
	slimming foods — продукты для похудения

Questions

1. What do British people usually eat for breakfast? 2. When do British people generally have lunch? 3. What do the British usually eat for lunch? 4. Are snacks popular in Britain? Name popular British snacks. 5. What is the main meal of the day? What does it consist of? 6. What traditional British dishes do you know? 7. What is the traditional British takeaway? 8. What is afternoon tea? 9. Can you say that eating habits in Britain are changing? Why? 10. What is called a calorie-controlled diet?

American Food

When we speak about American food, we always imagine hamburgers and hot dogs, fried chicken and giant steaks. But in fact Americans eat every kind of food imaginable, even spaghetti and pizza. The expression “as American as apple pie” means something that is typically American, but even apple pie came from somewhere else. The only true American foods are those that the Native Americans gave the first settlers, including corn, squash, pumpkin and turkey. Roast turkey, sweet potatoes and pumpkin pie are still eaten at Thanksgiving.

The typical day starts with breakfast. During the week this might be something quick: cereal with milk, a muffin or toast with coffee, tea, milk or juice. On the weekends when people have more time, breakfast might be pancakes, waffles, an omelet, or bacon and eggs.

Lunch at work or school is usually between 12 and 1 pm. Some people prefer to bring their lunch from home. Tuna fish, sliced meat called cold cuts or peanut butter and jelly sandwiches are kids' favorites. Most schools and some businesses have cafeterias that serve lunch.

Dinner, the biggest meal of the day, is generally at 6 or 7 pm. A typical dinner includes a hot vegetable, a salad, meat, and a potato or pasta dish. Stew (meat cooked with vegetables) and soup are also favorite dinner foods.

Americans love desserts. The standard dessert is pie. You can have fruit pies made from apple, peach, apricot or cherry, or berry

pies with blackberry, raspberry or blueberry. A piece of pie is often served with ice cream.

But the truth is that Americans don't have much time for old-fashioned cooking at home. Quick snacks all through the day have taken its place. Takeout meals from restaurants and pizza parlors have become a regular part of everyday life. Ready-to-eat and instant processed foods that are quick to prepare are also very popular. TV dinners are complete dinners on a tray that you take from the freezer and heat up in the oven or micro-wave.

An enormous fast-food industry gives hungry Americans the snacks they want when they want them. Ice cream, popcorn and hot dogs are on sale everywhere. Best known, perhaps, is the McDonalds hamburger business.

But fast food makes you fat, that's why Americans are the fattest people in the world. More and more Americans worry about it and take greater interest in their health. The fashion for health food is growing all the time. Among middle-class people salads, beans and fruit have taken the place of steak and ice cream. Drinking is going down too. Smart businesspeople order mineral water, not wine, at their business. So now Americans pay more attention to their eating habits.

Vocabulary

steak — бифштекс

Americans — *Обратите внимание: названия национальностей могут употребляться как с определенным артиклем, так и без артикля*

imaginable — который можно вообразить

expression — выражение

as American as apple pie — типично американский

apple pie — яблочный пирог

true — настоящий, истинный

settler — поселенец

squash — кабачок

pumpkin — тыква

turkey — индейка

roast — жареный

Thanksgiving — День благодарения (*официальный праздник в память первых колонистов Массачусетса, отмечается в последний четверг ноября*)

cereal — блюдо из хлебных злаков

muffin — сдобная булка

waffles — вафли

tuna fish — тунец

sliced meat — мясная нарезка

peanut butter — паста из тертого арахиса

to include — включать

pasta — макаронные изделия

stew — рагу, тушеное мясо

peach — персик

cherry — вишня

blackberry — ежевика
raspberry — малина
blueberry — черника
piece — кусок
old-fashioned — несовременный, старомодный, старинный
snack — легкая закуска
pizza parlor — пиццерия
instant processed foods — продукты быстрого приготовления
to prepare — готовить
complete — полный, полностью укомплектованный

tray — поднос
freezer — морозильная камера
to heat up — разогревать
oven — духовка
fat — тучный, толстый
to worry — беспокоиться
fashion — мода
beans — фасоль, бобы
to order — заказывать
to pay attention — уделять внимание
health — здоровье

Questions

1. What traditional American dishes do you know? 2. What kind of American food have you tasted? 3. What do Americans usually eat for breakfast? 4. When do Americans generally have lunch? 5. What do they usually eat for lunch? 6. Do Americans love desserts? What is the standard dessert? 7. Do Americans like fast food, or do they prefer to eat something that takes longer to cook? And what about you? 8. What are the traditional American takeout meals? 9. Can you say that eating habits in the USA are changing? Why? 10. What kind of food do you eat?

Shops in Britain

In all big cities of Great Britain there are a lot of department stores. They are big shops where you can find almost everything you want and which offer a wide choice of things. The most famous British department store, Harrods, started as a small grocery shop in 1849. The present store has more than 300 departments and a staff of over 4,000 people. The display in the food hall is amazing. For example, there is a choice of over 500 types of cheese.

Street markets are both fun and cheap. Most markets sell fruit and vegetables, clothes, things for the house, records and jewellery. In London there are about 40 or 50 markets. Some specialize in flowers, pets or second-hand books.

In the centre of most towns and villages there is a main street with lots of different shops. This street is usually called the High Street. The high streets of Britain are beginning to look more and more the same. This is because they are full of branches of big chain stores.

One of the best-known chain stores is Marks & Spencer, which sells clothes and food. The company has over 700 stores worldwide and has a reputation for good quality. If you buy something that you decide you don't like, you can take it back and get your money back.

Some towns are called market towns: a market is held there, usually once a week. People come from the surrounding villages to do shopping there.

Eighty-seven per cent of British people live less than a mile from their local corner shop. A corner shop is a small shop on, or near, a street corner. Only in corner shops do shopkeepers know their customers personally. Only in them is the interaction across the counter often social as well as transactional. Many corner shops are run by Indian or Pakistan families. Most corner shops sell food and newspapers. They are open until late in the evening, as well as on Sundays.

However, many small high-street and corner shops are closing because people prefer to drive to a shopping complex outside town. There they can park their cars without any problems and do all the shopping in one place.

In a British shopping complex you usually find a supermarket, a branch of most of the chain stores, some smaller shops, a few cafes and sometimes a multi-screen cinema. Most of the new shopping complexes are built near big roads, outside town. Here you also find "superstores". These enormous shops sell their products more cheaply than in the high-street shops. Many of the superstores are branches of chain stores from countries outside Britain, such as IKEA or Aldi. However, this trend has not gone as far as it has in some other European countries.

The normal time for shops to open is nine in the morning. Most small shops take a break for lunch, usually between one and two, and then close at half past five or a bit later. Large out-of-town supermarkets stay open all day until about eight o'clock.

Vocabulary

department — отдел

store — магазин

department store — универсам

choice — выбор

grocery shop — бакалейно-гастрономический магазин

staff — персонал

display — витрина, демонстрация (*товаров*)

amazing — потрясающий, поразительный

market — рынок

cheap — дешевый

jewellery — ювелирные изделия

the same — одинаковый, похожий

branch — филиал, отделение

chain stores — однотипные

розничные магазины одной фирмы, сетевые магазины

quality — качество

surrounding — близлежащий, соседний

village — деревня

corner — угол

customer — покупатель, клиент

interaction — взаимодействие, общение

counter — прилавок

transactional — деловой, связанный со сделкой

screen — экран

enormous — огромный

trend — тенденция, направление

Questions

1. What kinds of shops are there in Great Britain? 2. Are there the same kinds of shops in Russia? 3. What is the best-known shop in Great Britain? What does it sell? 4. Describe the best-known shop in your city. What does it sell? 5. What are the pros and cons of corner shops? 6. Why do British people prefer shopping complexes outside town? 7. Are there any branches of chain stores from other countries in Russia? What are they? 8. What kind of shops do you prefer? 9. What is your favourite shop? 10. Would you like to do the shopping at Harrods?

British Shopping Habits

The British are not very adventurous shoppers. They like reliability and buy brand-name goods wherever possible, preferably with the price clearly marked. They are not very keen on haggling over prices. It is therefore not surprising that a very high proportion of the country's shops are branches of chain stores.

Visitors from northern European countries are sometimes surprised by the shabbiness of shop-window displays, even in prosperous areas. But the British do not demand art in their shop windows. In general, they have been rather slow to take on the idea that shopping might actually be fun.

On the other hand, visitors are also sometimes struck by the variety of types of shops. Most shops are chain stores, but among those that are not, there is a lot of individuality. Independent shopowners feel no need to follow conventional ideas about what a particular shop does and doesn't sell.

The British have their own systems of measurement. Although on tins and packets of food in British shops the weight of an item is written in the kilos and grams familiar to people from the continent, most British people have little idea of what these terms mean. Everybody in Britain still shops in pounds and ounces. Therefore, many of their packets and tins also record their weight in pounds (written as "lbs") and ounces (written as "oz"). Moreover, nobody ever asks for a kilo of apples or 200 grams of cheese. If those are amounts you want, you should ask for "two pounds or so" of apples and "half a pound or less" of cheese.

Shoe and clothing sizes are also measured on different scales in Britain. The people who work in shops which sell these things usually know about continental and American sizes too, but most British people don't.

Authorities are now trying to attract more people to shops. In fact, in recent years shop opening hours have become more varied. It is now much easier than it used to be to find shops open after six. In some areas the local authorities are encouraging high-street shops to stay open very late on some evenings as a way of putting new life into their "dead" town centres.

But the most significant change in recent years has been with regard to Sundays. Large shops and supermarkets can now stay open on Sundays for six hours, and small shops are allowed to open on Sundays for as long as they like. So shopping is now something that the whole family can do together.

Vocabulary

adventurous — безрассудный,
рискованный

reliability — надежность
preferably — желательно

brand-name goods — фирменные товары, имеющие хорошую репутацию
to haggle — торговаться
price — цена
therefore — поэтому
shabbiness — потрепанность, ветхость
prosperous — богатый, зажиточный
to demand — требовать, нуждаться
to be struck — поражаться
variety — разнообразие
conventional — традиционный
particular — индивидуальный, частный, отдельный

measurement — измерение, система мер
tin — консервная банка
weight — вес
familiar — привычный, удобный
pound — фунт
ounce — унция
size — размер
scale — шкала, система мер
authorities — власти
to encourage — поощрять, рекомендовать
significant — значительный
with regard to — в отношении, относительно
to allow — разрешать

Questions

1. What sort of shoppers are the British? Why? 2. What kind of things do they usually buy? 3. What sort of shoppers are Russian people? 4. Do Russian people like to haggle over prices? And what about you? 5. Why do people usually haggle over prices? 6. Why do the British still shop in pounds and ounces? 7. What are the recent changes in shop opening hours? 8. What are shop opening hours in Russia? 9. Is it convenient to do the shopping in Russia?

American Shopping Habits

Shopping is the favorite pastime of many Americans. They usually go to big shopping centers called malls that have a variety of boutiques, department stores and restaurants. Chain stores like J.C. Penney or The Gap are also found in malls.

Everything is indoors, so you can walk from store to store without worrying about traffic or bad weather. Malls are air-conditioned in the summer and heated in the winter, and they have large parking lots where you can park easily.

Some malls provide free entertainment. There might be a band playing rock music or a puppet show for children. Child-care

facilities are sometimes available, so children can play safely while their parents shop.

People who live or work in large cities still shop at local stores in downtown where most department stores are located. Many cities have pedestrianized shopping areas with specialty stores and restaurants that are like outdoor malls.

Many Americans are bargain hunters who shop at outlets that sell merchandise at a discount, so it is usually cheaper than at regular stores. Merchandise is also discounted in regular stores. An item on sale can cost as little as half the normal price. Sales are advertised in newspapers, on the radio, on TV or by mail.

Stores compete with each other by reducing their prices and staying open in the evening. Many are open seven days a week and sometimes until 9.00 at night.

Shoppers can use their credit cards to charge almost everything they buy. Buying something with a credit card can be more convenient than paying for it right away with cash. There are many different kinds of credit cards. Many people end up in debt to credit-card companies because they have trouble paying off their credit-card bills.

Mail-order shopping has become very popular because it saves time. Shoppers use credit cards to pay for something over the phone after they've seen it advertised in a mail-order catalog, on TV or in a newspaper or magazine. A number of mail-order companies accept phone orders twenty-four hours a day and most have toll-free numbers.

Vocabulary

boutique — небольшой магазин женской одежды, модная лавка

chain stores — однотипные розничные магазины одной фирмы, сетевые магазины

indoors — в помещении

to worry — беспокоиться

to provide — предоставлять, обеспечивать

entertainment — развлечения

puppet show — кукольное представление

child-care facilities — детские игровые комнаты

available — имеющийся в наличии, доступный

downtown — деловая часть города, центр

pedestrianized — пешеходный

specialty shop — фирменный магазин

outdoor — на улице, на открытом воздухе
bargain hunter — завсегдаятай распродаж, ищущий дешевых покупок
outlet — торговая точка, специализированный магазин
merchandize — товары
discount — скидка
regular — обычный
item — изделие, отдельное наименование товара

sale — распродажа по сниженным ценам
to advertize — рекламировать
to compete — соревноваться, конкурировать
to reduce — снижать, уменьшать
to charge — записывать на счет, оплачивать
convenient — удобный
cash — наличные деньги
debt — долг
bill — счет
to accept — принимать
toll-free — бесплатный

Questions

1. Do Americans enjoy shopping? 2. What is a mall? Can you describe it? 3. What sort of shoppers are Americans? 4. Do they like to buy brand-name goods? 5. How can Americans learn about sales? 6. How can Americans pay for the goods? 7. Which way is more convenient for them? 8. What kind of shopping has recently become very popular?

Shopping

Some people like shopping, others don't but they all have to go shopping at least once a week. Our family usually does the shopping on Saturdays or Sundays. We have a lot of supermarkets near our block of flats, but we prefer to go to the nearest "hypermarket" which sells a rich variety of items. There you can buy food, clothes, shoes, kitchen utensils, electrical goods, TV sets, computers, books, cassettes, CDs and many other things which are cheaper than in smaller shops. Besides, it has a lot of free parking space so we can park our car without any problems.

If we are tired of shopping, we can go upstairs and have a rest at McDonalds or go to the cinema which is situated in the same building. So in my opinion it's very comfortable and amusing to do the shopping in the "hypermarket". It's my favourite shop.

Some of my friends hate shopping. They find it boring to spend time in shops choosing the right thing. I see it differently. I enjoy shopping and I like to choose things. Most of all I like trying clothes on. We usually buy clothes in the clothes market. There is a wide choice of trendy clothes and they are cheaper than in shops.

I think I'm practical and I can spend money wisely. My Mum always gives me a free hand in choosing my clothes. She may advise and I often follow her advice. But she never says "No!". If I need some expensive clothes or shoes, we go shopping together, but I can buy such things as CDs, books, T-shirts and jewellery by myself. I also buy some food like bread or dairy products which don't cost much.

What I find most difficult is buying a present. When I choose a thing for myself, I'm sure I'll like it. But tastes differ. And I'm always nervous about a present I've bought. I like to buy books or CDs as presents because all my friends enjoy reading and listening to music.

Vocabulary

variety — ассортимент, разнообразие

item — изделие, отдельное наименование товара

kitchen utensils — кухонная посуда

cheap — дешевый

upstairs — вверх, на второй этаж

boring — скучный

to try clothes on — примерять одежду

trendy — модный, стильный

wisely — с умом

to follow the advice — следовать совету

expensive — дорогой

jewellery — ювелирные изделия

by myself — самостоятельно

dairy products — молочные продукты

to cost — стоить

Questions

1. How often do you go shopping? 2. Do you like to go shopping? Why or why not? 3. What do you like to shop for? 4. Which things do you hate to shop for? 5. What kinds of shops do you like most of all? Why? 6. If you had a lot of money, how would you spend it? 7. If you had to buy fewer things, what would you stop buying? 8. What is your favourite shop? Describe it. What does it sell?

Dialogues

AT A FOOD SHOP

1.

- It's a nice day today, isn't it?
- Hello. Yes, it's really fine today. How can I help you?
- I'd like two pounds of sausages, please, and best pork.
- Here you are. And I have a very nice piece of pork here.

Have a look, please.

- That looks very good. How much is it?
- Well, four and a half pounds. That comes to 36 pounds. Is that all right?
- Yes, thank you.
- Anything else? Maybe some beef?
- Not today. Thank you.
- You are welcome.

2.

- Good afternoon. Can I help you?
- I'd like to buy half a pound of butter and a pint of milk.
- Here you are. What else?
- A loaf of bread and a jar of honey. Oh, and a tube of mustard, please.
- Anything else?
- No, that's all. How much will that cost?
- That's £10.50 altogether.
- Here you are. Thanks a lot.
- You are welcome.

AT A TAX-FREE SHOP

3.

- Good afternoon. Have you got a price list, please?
- Yes, sir. Here you are.
- Mm, yes. I'd like a small bottle of sherry, please.
- Yes, any cigarettes?
- No, thanks, I don't smoke. But I'd like a bottle of that French perfume for my mother. No, not that one. The one beside it on the left. Yes, that's right.

- Anything else?
- No, that's all.
- Will you pay in dollars or in euro?
- In dollars, please. How much is it in all?
- \$37, please.
- Here you are.
- Thank you.

AT A DEPARTMENT STORE

4.

- Hello, can I help you?
- I'd like a pair of trainers, please.
- What size?
- Size 42, please.
- Try this pair on. They are the cheapest and the lightest.
- They are rather small. Besides, I don't want the cheapest. I would like the best.
- Try these ones then. They are bigger and more comfortable. But they are more expensive.
- How much are they?
- \$20.
- I think they are great. I'll take them.
- Here you are. You are welcome.

5.

Ivan: Hello, could you show me one of those T-shirts?

Shop Assistant: Here's a nice one. What size?

Ivan: Size 44, I think.

Shop Assistant: Yes, here's one.

Ivan: How much is it?

Shop Assistant: £4.50.

Ivan: Here's £5.00.

Shop Assistant: That's 50 pence change. You are welcome.

Mike (later): Can I see your new T-shirt? Oh, it's very smart, but it's not your size. Let's go and change it?

Ivan: Could you change this T-shirt, please?

Shop Assistant: Why? What's wrong with it?

Ivan: It's too big for me. Have you got them in a smaller size?

Shop Assistant: How about this one?

Ivan: Can I try it on?

Shop Assistant: Certainly. Here is the changing room.

Ivan: I think that's better. Russian and British sizes aren't the same. Thanks a lot.

Shop Assistant: Not at all. You are welcome.

6.

— Hello. I'm looking for a pair of shoes.

— We've got a lot. What kind of shoes would you like?

— Some of those, please. On the top shelf.

— OK. Would you like the black shoes or the brown ones?

— The black ones, I think.

— What about this pair?

— Oh, no, they are too boring. May I try on those on the left shelf?

— Certainly. Here you are.

— Super! They are just what I wanted. How much are they?

— Six pounds.

— All right. I'll take them.

— Here you are. You are welcome.

7.

— Hello, I'm looking for a present for my sister. Can you help me, please?

— Certainly. What kind of present would you like?

— Well, I haven't decided yet.

— Don't you think that a nice doll would be just the thing for her?

— I'm not quite sure. She's a schoolgirl, very serious and she doesn't play with dolls.

— What about a good book then?

— A book? What a good idea! She enjoys reading.

— What sort of books does she prefer?

— Adventures, I think.

— I think you should buy “The Adventures of Tom Soyer” by Mark Twain.

— No, it’s too childish, I’m afraid.

— What about “Ivanhoe” by Walter Scott. It’s about love and adventures.

— Oh, yes. It’s great. How much?

— It costs 5 pounds.

— It’s not too expensive. I’ll take it. Thank you.

— Here you are. You are welcome.

8.

— Can you tell me about traditional British food?

— Well, British eating habits don’t differ much from those on the continent, but of course we have some traditional dishes.

— Which traditional dishes would you recommend us to try?

— First of all, you should try fish and chips. It can be found in all cities and towns. If you visit Scotland, try Haggis, a national Scottish dish.

— Haggis? What is it?

— Well, it is made mainly from sheep’s heart, lungs and liver, but it is very tasty.

— And what do you usually eat for breakfast?

— If you stay in a hotel, you will be offered a traditional British breakfast: bacon and eggs, sausages, preceded by cereal or fruit salad and followed by tea or coffee with toast.

— And when do you usually have dinner?

— As a rule, we have dinner between 6 and 8 o’clock in the evening, and in the afternoon British people usually have lunch. Most pubs serve snacks at lunchtime.

— Thank you very much. I’m sure this information will help me in my journey.

9.

— This meat is really lovely.

— Oh, thank you. I’m glad you like it. I thought we would have something special for your first meal with us.

— Thank you. That was very nice of you.

- Now, are there any things you don't like?
- Well, I'm not very keen on liver.
- Oh, that's all right. We don't like it either. I was thinking of having fish or chicken tomorrow. Which would you prefer?
- I think I'd rather have chicken, please.
- And later in the week I was thinking of making a curry. Do you like hot food?
- Well, to be honest, curry doesn't agree with me.
- Oh, that's a pity.
- Please don't mind me. You carry on and have curry and I'll just have something light.

10.

- I'm going to London next week. What would you advise me to see there?
- Of course, you should try to see as much as possible. First of all, you should visit the main places of interest and make a guided tour of the city.
- Yes, the Tower of London, St. Paul's Cathedral, Westminster Abbey, the British Museum are included into our itinerary. But where can I go in the evening?
- If you want to experience the real atmosphere of the British life, you should by all means visit a pub.
- A pub? What is it?
- A pub is a traditional British institution. Most countries have cafes, and in some countries people have even tried to imitate the pub. But the British pubs are unique and very special.
- What is so special about the pub?
- First of all, every pub is different. It is someone's house that is open to the public and the true English pub acquires more of the character of the people that live and work there.
- What can we buy in a pub?
- It's a place where you can buy a drink and enjoy the company of friends. Besides, most pubs serve snacks, and some pubs serve excellent hot meals.
- Thank you for your advice. I'm sure I'll spend an excellent time in a pub.

Writing

1.

Tony Michael
Mereside Way
Olton
West Midlands

25 August 2003

Freepost
PO Box 52
London

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to complain about the CD collection I ordered after seeing your advertisement in *the Daily News* on 4 August 2003.

First of all, I ordered the collection three weeks ago, and only received it yesterday, although it clearly says in your advertisement that it should arrive within seven days. Furthermore, I ordered *90s Goldies* and you sent me *Hits of the Nineties*, which has very different songs on it. Also, the collection ordered is a double CD, and the one you sent me is a single CD. Finally, the plastic box which contained the CD was broken.

In your advertisement you say I can claim a refund if I am not satisfied. I would be grateful if you would replace the CD you sent by mistake or send me a refund of £14.99, which was the cost of the original double CD.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Tony Michael

2.

45 Milton Street,
Cambridge

25 October 2005

Fitness Products Ltd,
St Helier,
Jersey JE6 9NJ

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to you about a Tour de France exercise bike (serial number 45637) which I bought from Mogul Megastones on 15th September for \$500. I enclose copies of the guarantee and receipt.

To begin with, this bike is extremely badly made. The speedometer stopped working after a week. Besides, the machine that measures heartbeats must also have broken since its readings were not correct. Finally, the pedals broke just as I was cycling at full speed. As well as falling off the bike and nearly breaking my arm, I pulled a muscle in my thigh and had to take three days off work.

When I took the exercise bike back to Mogul Megastones, not only did the manager refuse to refund my money, but said that he would not repair the bike either.

I would like you to refund my money as soon as possible and I suggest that you pay compensation for the injuries that I have received. Unless I get full satisfaction within the next three weeks, I will have to take legal action.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

A. N. Johnson (Mr)

UNIT 6

EDUCATION AND CAREER

Were You Happy at School?

Some students like school, others don't, but they all study at school for eleven years. For students who do well in most subjects school is an attractive place. But for those who are not successful, school is boring and uninteresting. I can say that I was happy at school. The standard of education in our school is very high. We studied various subjects and our lessons were usually interesting and exciting.

A teacher plays an important role in our education. I think that I was lucky because all my teachers were very experienced and knowledgeable. Most of my teachers understood the difficulties of learning process very well. They helped us to learn and advised us on all aspects of our life. They shared their knowledge and experience with us and we responded with love. They supported us and took care of us. That's why I was happy at school and so were my classmates.

I was rather a good student. I didn't have many problems at school, but I think that sometimes we had too much homework. If we had had less homework, we would have had more time to spend with our friends or to take up hobbies.

School is not only a place of education. It is a place where we develop our relationship. At school we can enjoy different cultural activities and show our individual talents. Everyone has an opportunity to join a school club or to take part in sport contests. I can say that social life is of great importance for pupils, and in our school it is organized very well. Pupils always have a lot of parties, competitions and excursions.

Extracurricular activities helped us in our education and relationship with our classmates. I usually got on well with the teachers and I was quite successful in class. So I went to school with pleasure, because I liked my school and my class. I am sure that school years will be the happiest time in my life.

Vocabulary

to do well at school — хорошо

учиться в школе

subject — предмет

attractive — привлекательный

successful — успешный

boring — скучный

education — образование

various — различный, разнообразный

exciting — увлекательный, захватывающий

lucky — счастливый, удачливый

experience — опыт

experienced — опытный

knowledge — знания

knowledgeable — знающий, обладающий большими знаниями

difficulty — трудность

to advise — советовать

to share — делить (*что-л. с кем-л.*)

to respond — отвечать (*на что-л.*)

to support — поддерживать

to take care of — заботиться о

classmate — одноклассник

rather — довольно

to develop — развивать

relationship — отношения

opportunity — возможность

contest — соревнование,

конкурс, состязание

importance — важность

competition — соревнование

excursion — экскурсия

extracurricular activity — внеклассные занятия

to get on well with somebody —

быть в хороших отношениях, ладить с кем-л.

Questions

1. Why were school years happy for you? 2. Why were school years boring and uninteresting for some students? 3. What is the main purpose of school? 4. Do you like studying? Why? 5. What were your favourite subjects? 6. What kind of a teacher do you appreciate? 7. Did you have such teachers in your school? 8. What other kinds of activities helped you in education and relationship with your classmates? 9. Why do students want to have harmony in their class? 10. Did you have true friends in your class? 11. Was your school life interesting? Why?

My Ideal School

At the moment I go to a large comprehensive school in the centre of the city. It's quite a good school, but obviously it could be better. Now I'm going to tell you about my ideal school.

My ideal school won't be situated in the centre of the city, where air pollution is very high and it is very noisy. It would be in the countryside near a big park so that students could walk there after lunch to relax. There would be a large coffee bar where we could have a cup of tea or coffee during the breaks. My school would also have computers in all classrooms. Another thing would be a music studio where we could play and record music.

Nowadays we have to study a lot of subjects at school. But I think the most important subjects are those which are useful, that is, those which help you to enter a university or to find a job. In my opinion these subjects should be compulsory at school and the others should be optional.

Of course, English will be a compulsory subject at my school because we might find it useful for writing letters and applications. We might also need English to express ourselves in interviews for a job. Information technology is another important subject. It should be taught because everyone will need to use computers in the future, otherwise they won't be able to get a job.

However, there would be some new elective subjects, for example, driving lessons, cookery, or self-defence. In addition, all students would have some free lessons in order to do private study or homework.

As well as the subjects on the timetable, there would be many after-school clubs, such as chess, drama, photography and sports. There would be regular trips to places like museums and art galleries too.

To sum up, I think my school would have a good variety of activities — something for everyone. It's certainly a place I would like to go to!

Vocabulary

comprehensive school — общеобразовательная школа

obviously — очевидно

pollution — загрязнение

compulsory — обязательный

optional — необязательный

otherwise — иначе

application — заявление о приеме

elective subject — предмет по выбору

self-defence — самооборона

timetable — расписание

variety — разнообразие

Questions

1. What kind of school do you go to? Describe it, please.
2. What is an ideal school for you?
3. Will it be a single-sex school or a mixed one?
4. Where will it be situated?
5. What kind of teachers will you have?
6. What subjects would you like to study at your ideal school?
7. Would you like to use computers in your education?
8. Will you have homework in this school? How much?
9. What extracurricular activities would you like to have in this school?
10. What is the most important thing for you in your school life?

Where to Go After School?

At the age of 17 students in Russia have to make some important decisions. Will they find a job and start working? Or will they enter a technical college or a university? The choice depends on their likes and dislikes.

When choosing the place of future study it's a good idea to consider a number of factors. First of all, we should take into account our own preferences and find out what our talents are. We can do this through aptitude tests, interviews with specialists, and consulting reference books on the subjects that interest us.

It's not easy to make the right choice. There are a number of things we could do. For some of the most interesting professions, like medicine, you have to be very good at chemistry and I am not much of a chemist. Although my parents are doctors, I don't seem to be very interested in caring for others and helping them with their problems. I don't think it's a right decision to follow in the footsteps of a parent or a relative if you are not interested in this profession.

I have always wanted to be something like a computer programmer because I like computers and I am interested in knowing how computer programmes work. Besides, I have an aptitude for working with figures and solving mathematical problems. Maths is my favourite subject, and I am really good at it. So I think I can work in a scientific or computational field. As far as my personal qualities are concerned, I can say that I'm creative and hard-working; I have good logical reasoning and problem-

solving skills. Besides, I'm rather communicative and like to work in a team. So I feel I can become a good specialist in programming.

In my opinion, the profession of a programmer has a lot of advantages. It is a highly paid job, and it can give many opportunities. I will be able to work on the full range of development activities such as analysis, design, coding, testing and implementation. Computers are the most rapidly changing sphere of modern technology. The next generation of computers will be able to talk and even to think. We are living in the age of information. And I think that the future will be just filled with computers. Today in the USA people work, go shopping or even go on dates, sitting at their computers.

But to make a good specialist in computing, you should know a lot of programming languages and application programmes. So after finishing school it is necessary for me to enter a university or a college and to study computer science. I'll have to take three entrance examinations: in Maths, Physics and Literary composition. It goes without saying that I'll need some extra knowledge to pass my entrance exams to the university or college. That is why I'll have to take preparatory courses in Maths and Physics. If I am lucky, I'll have the chance to study interesting sciences and to listen to the lectures of famous professors. Anyway, I have to get down to some hard work now if I want to achieve my aims.

Vocabulary

decision — решение

to enter — поступать (*в институт или колледж*)

job — работа

choice — выбор

to choose — выбирать

to depend on — зависеть от

to consider — учитывать, рассматривать, принимать во внимание

to take into account — учитывать, принимать во внимание

preference — предпочтение, вкус

aptitude — способность, склонность

reference book — справочник

right — правильный

chemistry — химия

to care for — ухаживать за, заботиться о

to follow in the footsteps — следовать примеру, идти по стопам

relative — родственник

figure — цифра

to solve — решать

scientific — научный

computational — вычислительный

as far as my personal qualities are concerned — что касается моих личных качеств
creative — творческий
hard-working — трудолюбивый
logical reasoning — логическое мышление
problem-solving skills — навыки решения проблем
communicative — общительный
team — команда, коллектив
advantage — преимущество
range — диапазон, сфера, область
development — разработка, создание
coding — программирование, запись программы на каком-л. языке программирования

implementation — выполнение, реализация
rapidly — быстро
generation — поколение
to go on dates — ходить на свидания, встречаться
application programme — прикладная программа
necessary — необходимый
science — наука
to pass exams — сдать экзамены
it goes without saying — само собой разумеется
preparatory courses — подготовительные курсы
lucky — удачливый
anyway — во всяком случае, как бы то ни было
to achieve — достигать
aim — цель

Questions

1. What options do students in Russia have after finishing school? 2. What kind of education does your school give? Are you satisfied with the level of education? 3. What types of school are there in Russia? 4. What kind of school do you go to? 5. Will you get a job after finishing school or continue your education? Why? 6. How did your favourite subjects and interests influence your choice? 7. Is it difficult to choose your future career? Why? 8. Would you choose your parents' professions? 9. What are the advantages and disadvantages of your future profession? 10. Will you need English for your future career?

My Further Education

I'm lucky to be a student of the Lyceum of Information Technologies, because it offers a lot of opportunities to continue our education.

First of all, our lyceum is affiliated to Moscow State Institute of Electronics and Mathematics. It has 4 faculties and provides good education in the fields of electronics, mathematics and information technologies. To enter this institute we must have good grades in our school-leaving certificates and pass successfully entrance exams in Maths, Physics and Russian language. It's not very difficult to enter this institute for the students of our lyceum, because we get profound knowledge in these subjects. Besides, we have special courses in our lyceum, which prepare us for the entrance examinations. But, of course, this institute is not as prestigious and world-famous as Moscow State University or Moscow State Technical University named after Bauman.

I think one of the best technical universities in Moscow is the University named after Bauman. It is the oldest and the largest educational establishment in our country, which is well-known abroad. Very many outstanding scientists studied and worked at the university; among them are Zhukovsky, Tupolev, Korolev and many others. The university has 14 faculties, where you can get fantastic knowledge in almost all kinds of science.

On the one hand, I'd like to study at Bauman University, because its graduates are considered to be highly-qualified specialists, but on the other hand, it's very difficult to study there. In my opinion, Technical University named after Bauman offers too academic education, whereas Moscow State Institute of Electronics and Mathematics provides more practical knowledge.

Some pupils want to study abroad in such world-famous universities as Oxford or Cambridge. These are international centres of teaching and research in a vast range of subjects. I think that studying in an English-speaking country is an incredible experience, but it requires the ability to speak fluent English. Besides, you need to be flexible, outgoing and to be able to make friends easily. What is more, you'll have to adapt to a very different way of life. Everything is so different: the way people eat, sleep, work and all the various leisure activities are so different.

Another disadvantage of studying in Great Britain is that tuition is not free there. For UK students there is the system of grants, whereas for overseas students the tuition fee is rather high and varies according to the subject. That's why I think that it's better to study in your native city.

Moscow State University is much closer to our home than Oxford or Cambridge universities. And it is also one of the oldest and the most prestigious universities in the world. There are a lot of various faculties. But, of course, you have to work hard to enter it.

To sum up, it's very difficult to make the right decision. I think that the best place to study for the students of our lyceum is Moscow State Institute of Electronics and Mathematics or Technical University named after Bauman. But the final choice, of course, depends on our knowledge of Maths and Physics.

Vocabulary

to offer — предлагать
to affiliate — прикреплять
to provide — обеспечивать, предоставлять
grade — оценка, отметка
school-leaving certificate — аттестат о среднем образовании
profound — глубокий
entrance — вступительный
educational establishment — учебное заведение
abroad — за границей, за границу
outstanding — выдающийся
graduate — выпускник
to consider — считать
research — исследования

vast — обширный
range — диапазон
incredible — невероятный, поразительный
to require — требовать
ability — способность
fluent — свободный
flexible — гибкий
outgoing — отзывчивый, общительный, дружелюбный
leisure — отдых, досуг
tuition — обучение
grant — дотация, стипендия
overseas — зарубежный
fee — плата
to vary — изменяться
to depend on — зависеть от

Questions

1. Would you like to continue your education after finishing school? 2. Which university or college would you prefer to enter and why? 3. What is necessary to enter this university or college? 4. How many faculties does it have? 5. Which faculty would you like to study at? Why? 6. What are the advantages of studying in foreign universities? 7. Are there any disadvantages of studying abroad? What are they? 8. Would you like to study abroad? Why? 9. What is important for you in education?

Choosing a Career

In my childhood I wanted to become a very important person such as a famous musician or a president. But now I understand that it's impossible for me because these professions require certain qualities and abilities that I don't possess. But I also understand that there are a lot of other prestigious jobs. And among them are the jobs in economic, tourist or computer fields.

A lot of people work in these areas and get a lot of money. Take the profession of a manager, for example. In my opinion, it's a very interesting job because it involves working with people. But to work as a manager you need to be creative, flexible and possess initiative. If you cope with all the challenges of this job, you can be promoted to the position of a director. This job is very responsible. You must be a leader and have administrative skills.

Of course, you can become something like a computer programmer or a web designer because computers are an essential part of our everyday life today. They are in any company, bank or school. So we can say that our society needs people who can work with computers and write computer programmes. That's why this profession is so popular today.

On the other hand, it's a very challenging job, because a good programmer or a web designer must be hard-working, have sharp mind and good logical reasoning and also the ability to work to tight deadlines. Besides, working on computer for a long time can cause health problems.

As for me, I would like to become a tourist agent or a holiday representative, because a lot of people travel nowadays. Today tourism is one of the world's largest industries. You will have to deal with the problems and needs of holidaymakers, but you'll also have to know the area you are working in and plan trips and tours that will please everyone.

I think it's a very interesting job. Besides, this profession is highlypaid and I want to be able to buy everything I want with my salary. What's more, the perks of this job include free travel and living abroad. But this job requires you to be tactful and to stay calm under pressure.

I can say that I'm very communicative and I like working with people. Besides, I'm very organized and hard-working. What's more, I like travelling and I'm ready to go where the company will send me. So I think I can become a good tourist agent or a tourist manager.

I understand that to make a good specialist in this field, I should have good education, extensive knowledge of the world and experience of travel. And, of course, I must know several foreign languages. So after finishing school I will try to enter a university or a college and to continue my education.

Vocabulary

require — требовать

quality — качество

ability — способность

to possess — обладать

to involve — предполагать,
включать

creative — творческий

flexible — гибкий, уступчивый

to cope with — справляться с

challenge — трудность

to promote — повышать в
должности

responsible — ответственный

skills — навыки

web — сеть

essential — неотъемлемый,
обязательный

sharp mind — острый ум

logical reasoning — логическое
мышление

tight deadlines — сжатые сроки

to cause — вызывать, быть
причиной

representative — представитель

to deal with — иметь дело с,
работать с

salary — заработная плата

perks — дополнительные льготы

calm — спокойный

pressure — давление

hard-working — трудолюбивый

Questions

1. Which are the most prestigious professions today? 2. What professional field can you work in? 3. What are you good at? 4. Which of your personal qualities will help you in your future profession? 5. Would you choose your parents' professions? 6. What do you know about your future profession? 7. What are the pros and cons of your future profession? 8. Why do you think your future profession is important today? 9. Would you like to become a president? Why? 10. Would you like to work as a cleaner? Why?

My Future Profession

What do you want to be when you grow up? We have heard this question many times during our school years. Perhaps, it was difficult for us to give a definite answer earlier. But now we understand that the time to choose our future profession has come. Finishing school is the beginning of an independent life for millions of school-leavers. Many roads are open before us: technical schools, colleges and universities.

Centuries ago there were only a few jobs: people were farmers, bakers, butchers or carpenters. Today there are thousands of different kinds of jobs, and new ones are constantly appearing. No wonder that it is not an easy thing to make the right choice.

When choosing a future career, we should consider different factors. In my opinion, money is one of the most important factors when you make a choice. There are highlypaid jobs and low-paid jobs. For example, a businessman, a president or a film star are highlypaid jobs. A worker, a doctor or an engineer are low-paid jobs. I think everybody wants to earn as much as possible. Further training, promotion prospects and job conditions should be also taken into account.

On the other hand, it's good when you get satisfaction from your job. It is very important to choose a profession that suits your interests. In my opinion, a job should be interesting and socially important. Some jobs are considered to be more suitable for men and others for women. For example, the professions of a secretary or a nurse are more suitable for women. A lifeguard or a pilot is more likely the job for men. You should also decide whether you want to work indoors or outdoors.

To make the right choice, you should take into account your traits of character. It goes without saying that to become a good doctor you must be patient, caring and kind. The teacher's work requires love for children, profound knowledge of subjects and the ability to explain. A secretary has to be efficient and careful in order to do her work quickly and accurately. Salespeople need to be friendly and persuasive to get people buy their products.

There are so many people who influence us in choosing our occupation. Parents and friends play a very important role in our choice.

My father works for an international company as a managing director. It is a highly paid job and it offers a lot of opportunities. You can travel abroad and meet different people. My father is a friendly person and he is easy to talk to. He thinks that I must choose my future profession according to my taste and preferences. I respect him and I want to become a businessman too.

I have always been interested in economics, and I am good at Maths. I have an aptitude for working with people and I think I'm rather communicative and have good social skills. I have good analytical abilities and problem-solving skills. Besides, I am good at English. English has become the standard language for all kinds of international business communication. To know English today is absolutely necessary for every businessman.

To become a successful businessman you should know a lot. So after finishing school I want to enter the university and to study marketing or management. Management deals mainly with people. A manager is a person who directly supervises people in an organization. Managers spend a great deal of time communicating, coordinating and making decisions affecting the daily operation of their organization. Almost everything a manager does involves decisions, and in decision-making there is always uncertainty and risk. So managing is a very interesting but difficult job.

Marketing deals with market research and commercial activity in general. It involves analysing business situations, evaluating market opportunities, developing market strategies and controlling their implementation. It is important for a specialist in marketing to be flexible and prepared to make adjustments where necessary, as it is unlikely that any marketing plan will succeed exactly as planned.

I haven't decided yet what to study. But I still have time to think and to choose.

Vocabulary

to grow up — вырастать, становиться взрослым

perhaps — возможно, может быть

definite — определенный

earlier — раньше

to choose — выбирать

independent — независимый

technical school — техникум

baker — пекарь

butcher — мясник

carpenter — плотник

constantly — постоянно

to appear — появляться

no wonder — неудивительно
right — правильный
choice — выбор
to consider — учитывать, принимать во внимание, считать
to earn — зарабатывать
further training — дальнейшая профессиональная подготовка
promotion prospects — перспективы повышения в должности
job conditions — условия работы
satisfaction — удовлетворение
to suit — соответствовать, удовлетворять
suitable — подходящий, соответствующий, пригодный
nurse — медсестра; няня
lifeguard — спасатель, опытный пловец
more likely — скорее
to take into account — учитывать, принимать во внимание
traits of character — черты характера
it goes without saying — само собой разумеется
patient — терпеливый
caring — заботливый
to require — требовать
profound knowledge — глубокие, основательные знания
ability — способность
to explain — объяснять
efficient — энергичный, исполнительный
careful — внимательный, старательный
in order to — для того чтобы
salespeople — продавцы
persuasive — убедительный
(*обладающий даром убеждения*)
to influence — влиять

occupation — профессия
abroad — за границей, за границу
according to — согласно, в соответствии с
taste — вкус
preference — предпочтение
to respect — уважать
aptitude — склонность, способность
communicative — общительный
skill — умение, способность, навык
to solve — решать (*проблему*)
successful — успешный
to deal with — иметь дело с, заниматься чем-л.
mainly — главным образом, в основном
directly — непосредственно
to supervise — руководить
decision — решение
to affect — влиять
to involve — включать, предполагать
uncertainty — неопределенность, неизвестность
market research — анализ состояния рынка
in general — вообще, в целом
to evaluate — оценивать
opportunity — возможность
to develop — развивать
implementation — выполнение, реализация
flexible — гибкий
prepared — готовый
adjustment — изменение, корректировка
unlikely — маловероятный
to succeed — достигать цели, увенчаться успехом
exactly — точно, в точности

Questions

1. What did you want to become when you were a child?
2. How did you change your mind when you grew older?
3. What's important while choosing a profession?
4. Which are the most prestigious professions today?
5. What professional field can you work in? What are you good at?
6. Which of your personal qualities will help you in your future profession?
7. Would you choose your parents' professions?
8. Have you already decided what you want to be?
9. What do you know about your future profession?
10. Why do you think your future profession is important today?
11. Do you think you will need English for your future career?

Dialogues

1.

— Hello, Betsy!

— Hi, Joan! In spring I'm leaving our school and entering the university, so I think it's time to speak about our school.

— Yes, I agree with you. As for me, I like my school years. I think everything would be OK if we didn't have tests all the time and if there were less pressure. Besides, in my opinion, homework is a waste of time.

— I am with you there. It's always the teacher who decides what we're going to do. In my opinion we need more democracy.

— I agree. A great teacher is a great artist and you know how few artists there are in the world. Teaching might even be the greatest of arts. This job demands great generosity of spirit, love for children and devotion to the cause. If you like children, you will like teaching.

— You are right. But not all our teachers are devoted to their work and not all of them like children. That's why many lessons are boring and I have to doodle on my desk or write letters. Otherwise, I'd fall asleep.

— I'm at the top of my class in Maths. I'm going to be a Maths teacher. And what makes me mad is teachers who think that boys are cleverer in Maths and science subjects. And I think that we need more discipline, because without a bit of discipline no one would ever learn anything.

— Yes, school is not a place for fun like discos. But we can't do without school.

2.

— Have you already decided what to do after finishing school?

— It's very difficult to make the right choice now, but we have to. As for me, I want to continue my education and to prepare for entering a university or a college. And what about you?

— Oh, I haven't made up my mind yet. There is so much we can do. But it's a pity that we must leave our school.

— Why do you think so?

— Actually, I like my school. I have a lot of friends and I always feel at home there. There are a lot of extracurricular activities. After classes I can take part in the work of different school clubs. Besides, we have a lot of parties and discos. I think it's great. Social life is very important for me.

— Well, I can't but agree with you. It's good when you have plenty of friends at school. But I am interested in Economics and Maths and I want to continue my education. Besides, I'm not satisfied with the level of teaching English at my school.

— Do you think you will need English for your future career?

— I'm sure of it. English is a must for every educated person, for every good specialist. That's why I'd like to take up special courses in English.

— Have you already decided which college to enter?

— Yes, I'll try to enter Moscow Highest School of Economy.

— Is it far from your home?

— Yes, it's relatively far, but in my opinion, the location doesn't matter much if you want to get good education.

— I can't agree with you, I'm afraid. In my view, it's very hard to commute long distances to college every day. My school was just near my house, so I could get there on foot. As for me, I would like to enter a college which is situated not far from my place. But will you have to take preparatory courses to pass entrance examinations?

— Of course, my education at school will form a basis for my future occupation. But it goes without saying that we'll need some extra knowledge to pass entrance exams.

3.

— Hello! Haven't seen you for ages!

— Hi! I haven't got any free time because I'm preparing for my entrance examinations to STANKIN institute.

— Well, I've heard that STANKIN is not an extremely good institute.

— Nothing of the kind. It has a faculty of Information Technologies, which is very prestigious.

— I see, but there is the same faculty at Bauman University. I think it provides a better education. It's a fantastic university with long-standing traditions.

— I know, but I'm afraid I won't pass the exams in Bauman University. Besides, it's very difficult to study there.

— I think that if you have good grades in your school-leaving certificate, you'll pass your entrance exams successfully.

— And where are you going to study?

— As for me, I would like to study in Moscow State University (MSU). I'm keen on Physics and I'm going to become a scientist.

— Great! Nowadays most pupils dream of becoming lawyers or programmers and very few pupils think of becoming a scientist. Why have you chosen this profession?

— I've decided to become a scientist because I enjoy learning new things, and I want a career which always presents new opportunities for intellectual growth and development. The thrill of discovery is unique.

— Are you sure you'll enter MSU?

— I'm not quite sure, because the competition is very high, but I'll try to do my best.

— And would you like to study abroad? For example, in Cambridge University?

— It must be very interesting. But you have to speak fluent English. Besides, you must be flexible and confident. What is more, the tuition fee is too high for Russian students.

— But foreign education is brilliant and you can become a highly-qualified specialist there.

— Well, I'm sure I can become a good specialist in Russia too. Don't forget that Russian scientists are highly valued all over the world.

— Perhaps, you are right. I wish you good luck!

4.

— Choosing a future career isn't easy, is it?

— No, it isn't, yet it is one of the most important decisions you will make in your life. Find the right career and you'll be happy and successful.

— There are a lot of different professions to choose. What can help us to make the right choice?

— I think it's important to consider all factors. For many people money is the most important factor when they choose a job. In this case you should choose your future occupation among the best-paid jobs.

— And what are they?

— In my opinion, the best-paid jobs in Russia are a bank manager, an accountant, a lawyer, a film star or a dentist.

— I'm sure that everybody wants to earn as much as possible, but for me choosing a career is not only a matter of future prestige and wealth. To my mind, a job should be interesting and socially important.

— You are quite right! It's very important to choose a profession that suits your interests. Then start with yourself! Explore your interests, talents and abilities. Besides, you should take into account your traits of character.

— I am really interested in History and Geography. They are my favourite subjects. I enjoy working with people and have good social skills. Besides, I have always wanted to travel and to be physically active.

— Then I can advise you to choose the profession of a tourist guide or a travel manager. It is a very interesting job suitable both for men and women. You can visit different countries and see a lot of interesting places. What is more, this job deals mainly with people. And of course, it is a well-paid job.

— But it also has disadvantages, doesn't it?

— Of course, each job has its pros and cons. You won't be able to stay much with your family. Moreover, nowadays travelling may be dangerous. There are a lot of air crashes and other accidents with transport.

— I'll think it over and discuss my choice with my parents. And what is necessary to become a travel manager?

— It goes without saying that you should continue your education and enter the Academy of Tourism. Besides, you should be good at English if you want to travel abroad.

5.

— Good morning, take a seat, please.

— Good morning, thank you.

— Briefly, tell me about yourself, please.

— I am 16 years old, I've passed my GCSE exam with good grades and I'm planning to continue my education at a Sixth Form College.

— Why do you want to work with us at Camp Elizabeth?

— I enjoy working with children and I'd like to get some work experience.

— What experience do you have?

— I help with the youth club at school. I've organized sports and trips to various places.

— Can you give me the name of someone we can contact for a reference?

— Yes, sure. This is the name, address and telephone number of my Maths teacher, who has known me for 5 years and has already agreed to write or speak to you.

— What qualities do you think are important for the job?

— You certainly must have patience. And another important thing is enthusiasm. And, well, you also have to be careful.

— Are there any questions you would like to ask me?

— Yes, just one thing. When shall I start working?

— I'll be getting in touch with people next week and will tell you about our decision.

— Thank you very much.

Writing

1.

87 Orchard Rise,
Bishops Castle,
Oxfordshire

September 15, 2004

Mr Michael Cartwright
World Aid,
Palmers House,
Ludford

Dear Mr Cartwright,

I am writing to apply for the job of volunteer worker which I saw advertised in *the Guardian* last week. I would be interested in teaching Maths to primary children in your camp in Chittagong in Bangladesh. I enclose a copy of my CV.

I am 18 years old and I have just finished secondary school in Newcastle. I would like to work for you because I am very interested in teaching. I would also like to learn about a different culture as I feel that intercultural understanding is extremely important.

I am a hard-working and committed person. I have participated for the last three years in a voluntary programme, Community Links, visiting elderly people in my local area. I also feel that I can get on well with people from other cultural backgrounds, since I have also taught immigrant children English at our church school.

I think I would be a good primary teacher of Maths due to my teaching experience. Also, I have recently passed my Maths A-level (grade B), so I have a good understanding of the subject. In addition, I hold a certificate in first aid, which might be useful.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Ms Maureen Taylor

2.

Flat 11
35 Leninsky Prospect
Moscow 115645

15 May 2005

The Manager
Happy Pizza Restaurant
5 Leninsky Prospect
Moscow 115645

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to apply for the job of part-time salesperson that was advertised in last Sunday's edition of *Moscow News*.

At the moment I am a second-year student at the College of Trade and Management. In the future I want to run my own restaurant, but first of all I would like to gain the first-hand experience of working in an organization that has western roots. I have been a customer in your restaurants several times and always been impressed by the service provided by your staff. So it would be a wonderful experience to work in your new outlet and give this sort of service to other customers.

I have already had some experience of working for McDonalds Restaurant so I know how to work in a team. I enclose my CV and would be very grateful for the opportunity of an interview.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Vladimir Egorov

3.

20 Circa Street
Venice
Italy 56201

5 May 2005

Max Vogels,
23 Chepstow Crescent
London W11
UK

Dear Mr Vogels,

I am writing to apply for the job of group leader at the Sunny Days Summer Camp in San Remo this summer. I would like to give you some details about myself.

First of all, I speak English well and I read and write it fluently. I passed the Cambridge First Certificate exam with a grade B and I am now preparing for Proficiency exam. I am keen on sports: I am a member of the local swimming club, and also play basketball regularly. I don't have any health problems.

In terms of experience, although I have never been a group leader before, I have attended several summer camps, and therefore understand the kind of work they do. I believe I am a good leader, since I am President of my class at school and last year I was captain of the basketball team.

Finally, I think I would make a good group leader because I am friendly and get on with people, especially children. I am available to work during the period 15–30 July.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Blanca Crechinni

UNIT 7

EDUCATIONAL SYSTEMS

British Educational System

The basic features of the British educational system are the following:

- Education is compulsory from 5 to 16.
- The academic year usually begins in September and runs to early July; it has 3 terms, divided by the Christmas and Easter holidays. In addition, all schools have a “half-term holiday”, lasting a few days or a week, in the middle of each term.
- Compulsory education is free of charge, but parents may spend money on educating their children if they want to.
- There are three stages of education. Children move from the first stage (primary) to the second stage (secondary) at around the age of 11 or 12. The third stage is “further” education at university or college.

In 1988, for the first time in British history, a National Curriculum was introduced. The National Curriculum tells pupils which subjects they have to study, what they must learn and when they have to take assessment tests.

At the age of 5 children go to infant school which is the first stage of primary education. From 7 to 11 they attend junior schools, the second stage of primary education. In primary school children are taught the so-called 3R's: reading, writing and arithmetic.

At the age of 11 children enter the secondary school. There are three types of state secondary schools in Britain. They are: grammar schools (for the most intelligent children), modern schools (for the less intelligent children) and comprehensive schools (for children of all abilities). Grammar schools lead towards higher education, and the others give general or vocational education to prepare students for employment or for further technical education. The regular secondary schools offer 7 years of schooling, with students from 11 to 18 years of age. The last two years (16–18) may be spent

in a separate sixth-form college, which concentrates on career training.

Between the ages of 14 and 16 pupils study for their GCSE (General Certificate of Secondary Education) exams. Pupils must take English Language, Maths and Science for GCSE, as well as half GCSE in a foreign language and Technology. In addition, they must also be taught Physical Education, Religious Education and Sex Education, although they do not take exams in these subjects.

Those who get good GCSE grades can stay at their school for another two years if it has a sixth form and teaches the desired subjects, and then take A-level (Advanced Level) exams. Otherwise they have to leave their school and go to a sixth-form college or college of further education. Further education colleges have strong ties with commerce and industry and offer courses in engineering, cooking or hairdressing.

The GCE A-level is normally taken after a further two years of study. Good A-level results in at least 2 subjects are necessary to get a place at a university. Universities choose their students after interviews. There are about 100 universities in Britain. The most famous of them are Oxford and Cambridge Universities.

About seven per cent of students go to private schools, where parents have to pay for their children. The most expensive private schools are called public schools. Most of these are single-sex boarding schools and students can live there during term time.

Vocabulary

feature — черта

educational system — система образования

compulsory — обязательный

term — триместр

in addition — к тому же, в дополнение

to last — длиться

free of charge — бесплатный

primary — начальный

secondary — средний

further education — дальнейшее образование

national curriculum — национальный, государственный учебный план

assessment test — тест проверки знаний

infant school — школа для малышей (*младшая начальная школа для детей от 5 до 7 лет*)

junior school — начальная школа (*для детей от 7 до 11 лет*)

to attend — посещать

state — государственный

intelligent — умный, способный

grammar school — классическая школа (*имеет академическую направленность*)

modern school — современная школа (*имеет практическую направленность*)

comprehensive school — единая средняя (*общеобразовательная*) школа

ability — способность

to lead — вести

higher education — высшее образование

vocational — профессиональный

to prepare — готовить

employment — работа

separate — отдельный

career training — профессиональное обучение

although — хотя

grade — отметка, балл

desired subjects — требуемые, необходимые предметы

advanced level — продвинутый, повышенный уровень

otherwise — иначе, в противном случае

ties — связи

engineering — техника

cooking — кулинария

hairdressing — парикмахерское дело

at least — по крайней мере, по меньшей мере

private school — частная школа

expensive — дорогой

single-sex — предназначенный для одного пола

boarding school — школа-интернат

term time — триместр, учебный период

Questions

1. At what age do children start school in Britain? 2. Is secondary education compulsory for all children? 3. What types of school are there in Britain? 4. What types of schools does primary school include? 5. How long does a pupil learn at primary school? 6. What kind of school is a comprehensive school? 7. How long does a pupil learn at secondary school? 8. When do pupils graduate from school? 9. What can they do after leaving secondary school? Can they continue their education? 10. What type of education is there after school? 11. What schools are called “public schools”?

Schools in Britain

In Great Britain education is compulsory for all children from 5 to 16 years of age. Parents can choose to send their children to a

nursery school or a pre-school play group to prepare them for the start of compulsory education.

All state schools in Britain are free, and schools provide their pupils with books and equipment for their studies. Ninety per cent of schools in England, Scotland and Wales are co-educational. That means that boys and girls are taught together in the same class.

At the age of 5 children go to infant school, which is the first stage of primary education. There is no written timetable and classes are informal. From 7 to 11 pupils attend junior school, which is the second stage of primary education. In primary school children are taught the so-called 3R's: reading, writing and arithmetic. They also have music, physical training and art classes.

At the age of 11 most pupils go to secondary schools called comprehensive schools. These schools accept children of all abilities without entrance exams. About six per cent of students go to grammar schools, which take students who pass the eleven-plus examination. Grammar schools lead towards higher education, whereas comprehensives give general or vocational education.

At 16 pupils take national exam called GCSE (General Certificate of Secondary Education) and then they can leave school if they wish. This is the end of compulsory education. Some 16-year-olds continue their studies in the sixth form at school or at a sixth-form college. The sixth form prepares pupils for the national exam called A-level (Advanced Level) at 18. You need A-levels to enter a university.

Other 16-year-olds choose to go to a college of further education to study for more practical (vocational) diplomas relating to the world of work, such as hairdressing or mechanics.

Along with the state schools, there are about 500 private schools in Britain. Most of them charge fees. Some private schools are boarding schools, where the children actually live in the school. Many schools admit day pupils as well as boarders. Private schools usually offer only the most academic line and select those students who are most likely to succeed. The most expensive private schools are called "public schools" and they have a long history and tradition. Among the most famous public schools are Winchester, Eton, Westminster, Rugby and Harrow.

Vocabulary

education — образование	entrance exam — вступительный экзамен
compulsory — обязательный	eleven-plus examination — отборочный экзамен для школьников в возрасте 11 лет
nursery school — детский сад (для детей от 2 до 5 лет)	to lead — вести
pre-school — дошкольный	higher education — высшее образование
to prepare — готовить	whereas — тогда как
state school — государственная школа	vocational — профессиональный
free — бесплатный	advanced level — продвинутый, повышенный уровень
to provide — обеспечивать	to enter a university — поступать в университет
equipment — оборудование	college of further education — колледж дальнейшего образования
co-educational school — школа совместного обучения	hairdressing — парикмахерское дело
to mean — означать	private school — частная школа
primary — начальный	to charge fees — взимать плату
infant school — школа для малышей (младшая начальная школа для детей от 5 до 7 лет)	boarding school — школа-интернат
junior school — начальная школа (для детей от 7 до 11 лет)	to admit — принимать
timetable — расписание	to select — отбирать
to attend — посещать	most likely — скорее всего
secondary — средний	to succeed — добиваться успеха
comprehensive school — единая средняя (общеобразовательная) школа	expensive — дорогой
to accept — принимать	
ability — способность	

Questions

1. At what age do children start school in Britain? 2. Is secondary education compulsory for all children? 3. Do boys and girls go to the same schools? 4. What types of schools are there in Britain? 5. What types of schools does primary school include? 6. What subjects does a pupil learn at primary school? 7. What kind of school is a comprehensive school? 8. What can they do after leaving secondary school? Can they continue their education? 9. What schools are called “public schools”? 10. What are the most famous public schools? 11. Would you like to study in a British school? Why?

Higher Education in Britain

Only 25 per cent of the student population goes on to higher education. Competition to get into one of Britain's universities is fierce and not everyone who gets A-levels can go. Students usually need three A-levels to go to university and grades at A-level go from A, the highest grade, to E.

Students apply to universities months before they take their A-levels. The students are given a personal interview and the universities then decide which students they want. They offer them a place which depends on A-level results. The more popular university, the higher the grades it will ask for.

Most big towns in Britain have both a university and a college of higher education. A British university usually consists of colleges. The departments of the colleges are organized into faculties. There are 91 universities and 47 colleges of higher education in Britain. The most famous and prestigious universities are those in Oxford and Cambridge.

Universities offer three- and four-year degree courses. A degree is the qualification you get from university when you pass your final exams. You are then awarded a BA (Bachelor of Arts), BSc (Bachelor of Science) or BEd (Bachelor of Education).

Students who are studying for degrees are called undergraduates. They go to large formal lectures, but most of the work takes place in tutorials: lessons in groups of ten or more when students discuss their work with the lecturer.

Most British students choose to go to university a long way from their home town. University is seen as a time to be independent, to live away from home and develop new interests. British students do not have to pay to go to university, but do need money to live away from home while they are studying. Some students whose parents do not earn a lot of money are given a grant from the local education authority. If students do not get a grant, parents are expected to pay for their children. In fact, the grant is not a lot of money. Students used to work during holidays to earn more money, but it is now difficult to find such jobs. The result is that more students are dropping out, failing to finish their courses.

Not all students study full time at university or college. Many people combine their studies with work. Large companies often have their own in-house training schemes. The British government is very enthusiastic about such training schemes, because so few people go to university.

Vocabulary

competition — конкурс
fierce — большой, высокий, жестокий
grade — оценка, отметка
degree — (ученая) степень
to award — присуждать
bachelor — бакалавр
undergraduate — студент университета
tutorial — консультация, практическое занятие с руководителем
independent — независимый
to develop — развивать
to earn — зарабатывать
grant — стипендия, грант

local education authority — местные органы народного образования
to expect — ожидать, предполагать
to drop out — бросать (*учебу*)
to fail — терпеть неудачу, не суметь
to study full time — учиться очно
to combine — совмещать, сочетать
scheme — схема
to be enthusiastic about — относиться с энтузиазмом
training — обучение
few — мало

Questions

1. Is it difficult to get a place at a university in Britain? 2. How long does a student have to study to take a UK degree? 3. What kind of degrees can students be awarded? 4. Does University teaching in the UK differ from that in other countries? In what way? 5. What are the advantages and disadvantages of going to university or college in Britain? 6. What can students do if they don't get a grant and their parents refuse to pay for their education? 7. Do many British go on to higher education? 8. Would you like to enter any British university or college? Why? 9. What is necessary for a Russian student to go to university in Britain? 10. Can you compare British and Russian universities?

American System of Education

Americans have always believed in education but in a special American way. The schools' first job was to turn millions of foreign children into Americans. Since they came from dozens of different countries, this was not easy. Schools had to teach the children to speak English, to love their new country and to learn how to live in it. American schools were the "melting pot" in which the differences were forgotten. They were the ladder up which the poor could climb to a better life. Getting started on a successful career was the main aim. Most American parents still care less for book-learning than for a practical education that will help their child to find a job.

The "right to education" has also meant that school system must provide for the needs of exceptional students, for example the blind, the deaf, and the persons with other physical or emotional handicaps. It is not at all unusual for school districts to provide instruction for children who are confined to the wards of hospitals or criminal justice facilities.

But perhaps most important of all is that American education never stops. If an elderly person wants to learn Italian art or chess, he or she can go to the nearest college and take a course in it. And millions of people are doing just that.

However, many Americans are worried about their public schools. They see serious problems of violence and failure. They see too many children who never learn to write properly and too few college graduates who can speak a foreign language. The absence of national curriculum makes it difficult for children to transfer to new classrooms when their family moves from one city to another.

In recent years a Department of Education has been organized in Washington DC, but its function is still sharply limited. Perhaps in the future there will be a greater demand for the construction of a national curricular framework. And if this demand develops, the American system will experience a major transformation.

Nevertheless, we shouldn't forget the great successes of American education. Its best universities are among the best

anywhere. American philosophers and economists are world-famous, and American scientists win more than their share of Nobel prizes.

Vocabulary

Americans — *Обратите внимание: названия национальностей могут употребляться как с определенным артиклем, так и без артикля*

to believe — верить

melting pot — «плавильный тигель», место, где иммигранты переплавляются в единую нацию

ladder — лестница

successful — успешный

aim — цель

to care — беспокоиться, волноваться

to provide for — предусматривать

exceptional — неполноценный, имеющий отклонения от нормы

blind — слепой

deaf — глухой

handicap — недостаток

district — округ, район

to provide — предоставлять, обеспечивать

instruction — обучение

to be confined — быть прикованным

ward — палата

criminal justice facilities — исправительные учреждения

perhaps — возможно

elderly person — пожилой человек

violence — насилие

failure — неудача, неуспех, провал

properly — правильно, как следует

absence — отсутствие

curriculum — учебный план

to transfer — переходить

sharply — резко

demand — потребность

curricular framework — базовый план

to experience — испытывать, подвергаться

nevertheless — тем не менее, однако

share — доля

Questions

1. Prove that the American system of education is democratic.
2. What is the most important feature of American education?
3. Why are many Americans worried about their education?
4. Does the American system have any disadvantages? What are they?
5. Why does the system of education need a single national curriculum?
6. Can you offer any way of improving the American system of education?
7. Can you compare Russian and American systems of education?
8. Which one would you prefer?

School Education in the USA

The federal government pays little attention to school education in the USA. There is neither a uniform school system in the USA, nor a uniform curriculum. Each state has its own system of schools. But there are some common features in the organization of school education in the country.

Compulsory education begins at the age of 6 in most states and continues usually until 16. However, some states require attendance from 6 to 18. The academic year usually begins in September and continues through the first or second week of June. The children attend classes five days a week. The school day is approximately 6 hours long, usually from 8.30 am to 3.30 pm. Most children attend mixed schools though there are a few separate schools for older pupils. A lot of children need to travel quite long distances to school, and the school bus is a long-established institution in the USA.

Elementary and secondary schools consist of 12 grades. The usual plan for dividing schools is: 6 years of elementary school, 3 years of junior high school and 3 years of high school, but this plan may be different in different states.

Though there is no national curriculum in the United States, elementary school pupils usually follow a single curriculum, the chief aim of which is general education. The emphasis is placed on the basic skills — speaking, reading, writing and arithmetic. Other subjects in the elementary school include Art, Music, Physical Education, Computer and Foreign Language courses and such new subjects as drug and sex education.

Elementary and high schools have separate buildings. Elementary schools tend to be small. High schools are generally larger and accommodate pupils from four or five elementary schools. Children move on to high school in the seventh grade, where they continue until the twelfth grade.

The secondary school curriculum is built around specific subjects rather than general skills. Most secondary schools have the same number of required “basic” subjects: English, Mathematics, Science, Social Studies and Physical Education.

Secondary school students have also elective subjects, which are not necessary for everybody. A student chooses the electives which will be necessary for him for his future work or further

education at university or college. The elective courses differ from school to school.

There are no national exams, although some schools and states have their own exams. In order to receive the high-school diploma, students must get a minimum number of credits, which are given for the successful completion of each one- or half-year course. Some colleges and universities require the students to take the SAT (Scholastic Aptitude Test). The SAT can be taken two or three times, so that the student can improve the results.

Extracurricular activity (such as playing for one of the school's sports teams) is also very important in the American school system and is taken into consideration by colleges and universities.

Besides public schools there are private schools, which are very expensive, and religious schools, which are also fee-paying and generally include religious instruction.

About half of the young people today who finish secondary school go on to community colleges, which provide two years of higher education at minimal cost. A growing number of young people go to colleges and universities that provide four years of higher education necessary to receive a bachelor's degree, as well as additional education for a master's degree.

Vocabulary

to pay attention — уделять внимание

uniform — единый

curriculum — учебный план, стандарт

common — общий

feature — черта

compulsory — обязательный

to require — требовать

to attend — посещать

attendance — посещение

approximately — прибли-
зительно

mixed school — школа совмест-
ного обучения

separate — отдельный, отдель-
ный

long-established — давно суще-
ствующий

institution — обычай, порядок

grade — класс

elementary — начальный

secondary — средний

to divide — делить

chief — главный

emphasis — внимание, значение

skills — навыки

to include — включать

to accommodate — вмещать,
размещать

required — обязательный

elective subjects — предметы по
выбору, факультативные
предметы

receive — получать
credit — балл или зачет за прослушанный курс
completion — окончание, завершение
Scholastic Aptitude Test — тест на проверку способностей ученика: экзамен из двух частей, предлагаемый поступающим в университет
to improve — улучшать
extracurricular activity — вне-классные занятия
to take into consideration — учитывать, принимать во внимание
public school — государственная школа

private school — частная школа
fee-paying — платный
instruction — обучение
community college — колледж, в котором учатся студенты, живущие дома, и где учеба дешевле, так как часть расходов берут на себя местные органы власти
to provide — предоставлять, обеспечивать
bachelor's degree — степень бакалавра
additional — дополнительный
master's degree — степень магистра

Questions

1. What is a special feature of American education? 2. What are common features in the organization of school education in the USA? 3. Are all subjects compulsory in American schools? 4. Do American students have national exams? 5. What can Americans do after finishing secondary school? 6. What are the advantages and disadvantages of the American school system? 7. Can you compare Russian and American systems of education? 8. Would you like to study in the USA? Why?

Higher Education in the USA

Many students, upon finishing high school, choose to continue their education. The system of higher education includes 4 categories of institutions.

The community college, which is financed by the local community in different professions. Tuition fees are low in these colleges, that's why about 40 per cent of all American students of higher education study at these colleges. On graduation from such colleges American students get "associate degree" and can start to

work or may transfer to 4-year colleges or universities (usually to the 3rd year).

The technical training institution, at which high school graduates may take courses ranging from six months to three-four years, and learn different technical skills, which may include design business, computer programming, accounting, etc. The best-known of them are: the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and the Technological Institute in California.

The four-year college, which is not a part of a university. The graduates receive the degree of Bachelor of Arts (BA) or Bachelor of Science (BS). There are also small Art Colleges, which grant degrees in specialized fields such as ballet, film-making and even circus performance. There are also Pedagogical Colleges.

The university, which may contain:

- several colleges for students who want to receive a bachelor's degree after four years of study;
- one or more graduate schools for those who want to continue their studies after college for about two years to receive a master's degree and then a doctor's degree. There are 156 universities in the USA

Any of these institutions of higher education may be either public or private. The public institutions are financed by state. Most of the students, about 80 per cent, study at public institutions of higher education, because tuition fees here are much lower. Some of the best-known private universities are Harvard, Yale and Princeton.

It is not easy to enter a college at a leading university in the United States. Successful applicants at colleges of higher education are usually chosen on the basis of:

- their high-school records which include their class rank, the list of all the courses taken and all the grades received in high school, test results;
- recommendation from their high-school teachers;
- the impression they make during interviews at the university, which is in fact a serious examination;
- scores on the Scholastic Aptitude Tests.

The academic year is usually nine months, divided into two terms. Studies usually begin in September and end in July. Each college or university has its own curriculum. During one term a

student must study 4 or 5 different courses. There are courses that every student has to take in order to receive a degree. These courses or subjects are called major subjects or “majors”.

At the same time there are subjects which the student may choose himself for his future life. These courses are called “electives”. A student has to earn a certain number of “credits” (about 120) in order to receive a degree at the end of four years of college. Credits are earned by attending lectures or laboratory classes and completing assignments and examinations.

Students who study at a university or four-year college are known as undergraduates. Those who have received a degree after 4 years of studies are known as graduates. They may take graduate program for another 2 years in order to get a master’s degree. Further studies are postgraduate which result in a doctor’s degree.

Vocabulary

institution — учебное заведение

community college — колледж, в котором учатся студенты, живущие дома, и где учеба дешевле, так как часть расходов берут на себя местные органы власти

tuition fee — плата за обучение

graduation — окончание (*учебно-го заведения*)

associate degree — степень ассоциата, первоначальная ученая степень, присваиваемая после двух лет обучения

to transfer — переходить

graduate — выпускник

to include — включать

accounting — бухгалтерское дело

to receive — получать

to contain — содержать, включать

either ... or — как ... так и, или ... или

public — государственный

private — частный

successful — успешный

applicant — кандидат, претендент

grade — оценка, отметка

impression — впечатление

scores — баллы

Scholastic Aptitude Test — тест на проверку способностей ученика: экзамен из двух частей, предлагаемый поступающим в университет

term — семестр

curriculum — учебный план, программа

major subjects — профилирующие предметы

electives — предметы по выбору, факультативные предметы

credit — балл или зачет за прослушанный курс

to earn — зарабатывать

to attend — посещать

to complete — выполнять

assignment — задание

further — дальнейший

Questions

1. What kind of institutions are there in the American system of higher education? 2. Is it easy to enter university in the USA? 3. What is necessary for a school graduate to get a place at a university? 4. Are all subjects compulsory for university students? 5. What degrees can students get at the university? 6. Can you compare Russian and American universities? 7. What is necessary for a Russian student to go to university in the USA? 8. Would you like to study in one of American universities? Why?

Schools in Russia

All Russian children have the right to education, but it is not only a right, it is a duty too. Education in our country is compulsory and now lasts eleven years. It consists of primary education and secondary education.

Primary education starts at the age of six or seven and continues for four years. The primary-school curriculum includes Russian, Maths, Reading, Drawing, PT and Music. In some schools English, History or Computer Science are taught beyond a “core curriculum”.

After four years of primary-school classes pupils go on to secondary school, where they study a variety of subjects: Russian, Literature, Maths, Physics, Chemistry, English or other foreign languages, History, Geography, Biology and PT. There is no uniform now. Classes last 40 minutes with breaks from 10 to 20 minutes. As a rule, pupils go to school five days a week. The school year begins in September and ends in May. It is divided into 4 terms with holidays up to 10 days between them. The summer holidays last from June to September.

Most of the schools in Russia are comprehensive, which take pupils of all abilities without entrance exams. But there are also some specialized schools, lyceums and gymnasiums, which give profound knowledge in various academic subjects. Besides, they offer different “elective” subjects, which are not necessary for everybody. A student chooses the electives which will be necessary for him for his future work or further education at university or

college. In lyceums and gymnasiums classes last 45 minutes and pupils usually study 6 days a week.

After classes pupils don't usually go home right away. They have some extracurricular activities. Their social and cultural life is well-organized. Schools have different clubs and societies, and pupils can take part in their work according to their preferences.

After finishing the ninth form students must take four examinations. But to enter a university or a college they have to study for two more years and take five examinations on finishing the eleventh form.

Vocabulary

right — право
duty — долг, обязанность
education — образование
compulsory — обязательный
to last — длиться
primary — начальный
secondary — средний
to continue — продолжаться
curriculum — учебный план, программа
to include — включать
PT (Physical Training) — физкультура
beyond — помимо, свыше
core curriculum — базовый учебный план
variety — множество
uniform — форма
break — перемена
as a rule — как правило
to divide — делить
term — четверть
comprehensive school — общеобразовательная школа

ability — способность
entrance exams — вступительные экзамены
lyceum — лицей
gymnasium — гимназия
profound knowledge — глубокие, основательные знания
various — различный, разнообразный
elective subjects — предметы по выбору (*необязательные предметы*)
necessary — необходимый, обязательный
further education — дальнейшее образование
extracurricular activities — внеклассные занятия
society — общество
according to — согласно, в соответствии с
preference — предпочтение, вкус
to enter — поступать (*в институт или колледж*)

Questions

1. What age do children start school in Russia? 2. What types of school are there in Russia? 3. What type of school do you study

at? 4. Can you describe your school? 5. What school subjects do you like most of all? Why? 6. What school subject is the most difficult for you? 7. What extracurricular activities are there in your school? What are the most enjoyable activities? 8. What options do pupils in Russia have after finishing the 9th form? 9. What will you do after the 9th form? 10. What factors are important when you choose a school?

Higher Education in Russia

Higher education plays an important role in the life of any country as it provides the country with highly qualified specialists. It trains people to become teachers, engineers, doctors and other professional workers.

There are many colleges and universities in our country. It's not easy to enter a university or a college as the competition is rather high. Most of the universities and colleges are public and students don't have to pay for their education. Students who do well in all subjects receive state grants.

The academic year usually lasts nine months and is divided into two terms. Students take exams at the end of each term. Twice a year they have vacations — two weeks in winter and two months in summer.

As a rule, the first- and second-year students get thorough instruction in the fundamental sciences. In the third year students begin to study specialized subjects. Specialized courses and practical training help students to become specialists and prepare them for the future work.

After four years of study students can pass examinations and get a bachelor's degree. Then the students can go on with their studies and get the qualification of an engineer at the end of the fifth year or a master's degree at the end of the sixth year. After graduating students can take a postgraduate course and get a still higher degree.

Universities and colleges have their own students' hostels and some of them have large and excellent sports centres. Most higher educational institutions have modern computer centres.

At present a new system of education is being introduced in Russia. It's a distance education system which helps working professionals to continue their education while remaining at their jobs. Education is a way to success.

Vocabulary

to provide — обеспечивать
to train — обучать, готовить
competition — конкурс
to receive — получать
grant — стипендия
to divide — делить
term — семестр
twice a year — два раза в год
vacations — каникулы
thorough — основательный, глубокий, тщательный
instruction — обучение, подготовка
science — наука

degree — степень
bachelor's degree — степень бакалавра
master's degree — степень магистра
to take a postgraduate course — поступать в аспирантуру
hostel — общежитие
excellent — отличный
higher educational institution — высшее учебное заведение
to introduce — вводить
to remain — оставаться
way to success — путь к успеху

Questions

1. Why is higher education important in the life of any country?
2. Do students in Russia pay for their higher education?
3. Do all students get grants?
4. What degree do students get after four years of study?
5. Can they continue their education after four years of study?
6. What degree can students get after two years of further study and research?
7. What new system of education is being introduced in Russia now?
8. Why does higher education play an important part in our life?
9. Would you like to enter any university or college? Why?
10. Can you compare the Russian system of higher education with those in other countries?

Dialogues

1.

— You see Alice, our English teacher told us to write a special paper on different aspects of British educational system. Could you tell me a few words about schools in Great Britain?

— With great pleasure. In Great Britain education is compulsory for the children from 5 to 16.

— So, you went to school at the age of 5, didn't you?

— That's right! At 5 I went to the primary school and at the age of 11 to the secondary school.

— I hear there are different types of secondary schools in Great Britain.

— Sure, there are. There are comprehensive, grammar and independent schools.

— What is the difference between all these schools?

— Comprehensive and grammar schools are state schools. They are run by the government. Education there is free of charge.

— And what is an independent school?

— It is actually a private institution. Parents have to pay for the education of their children.

— What type of secondary school did your parents choose for you, Alice?

— They sent me to a grammar school. I am a student of the Wilts Grammar School in London. It's a school for girls. I like my school very much. There are good sports facilities and well-equipped classrooms. Grammar school helps students to prepare for the university.

— Did you have to take entrance examinations?

— Yes, I did. But if you don't want to take entrance exams, you can go to a comprehensive school, which takes students of all abilities without entrance exams.

— And what is your favourite subject at school?

— My favourite subject is History. It is a very exciting subject. Besides, we often use computers in our history classes.

— Computers? In history classes? How very interesting! Do you have any special programmes?

— Yes, we do. Each student gets an individual task, and by the end of the period we give our accounts to the teacher.

— Thank you very much. Your story was very interesting.

2.

— Dear friends! We are pleased to welcome you in our school. Though our school is an ordinary comprehensive school, it is known for its academic excellence.

— Are all schools in Russia comprehensive?

— Most of the schools in our country are comprehensive, but there are quite a few lyceums and gymnasiums, which are affiliated to universities or colleges.

— In Great Britain we have different types of secondary schools too. Besides, primary and secondary schools are also different schools. They have separate buildings. Primary schools are usually small. Secondary schools are larger and take pupils from several primary schools.

— Russian education is also divided into secondary and primary, but primary and secondary pupils study in the same school. Our secondary school begins from the 5th form.

— British secondary school begins from the 1st form, and after finishing compulsory education students can stay on in the 6th form at school or go to a separate sixth-form college.

— And if they don't want to?

— They can leave school and get a job. Then if they want to continue their education, they can go to a college of further education.

— Are there private schools in Great Britain?

— Yes, there are more than 2,000 private schools and they are growing in number and popularity. And what about Russia?

— Some private schools have appeared recently in Russia, but they are not very popular, because fees are very high. Besides, the standard of education in Russian private schools is much lower than in British private schools.

— Yes, British private schools provide the highest level of education and prepare students for a national exam called A-level. You need A-levels to enter a university.

— And what schools are called “public schools”?

— These are the most famous private schools, which have a long history and tradition. It is often necessary to put your child's name on a waiting list at birth to be sure he or she gets a place. Eton is the best known of these schools.

— Our school is not a private school, but in my opinion, it is very good. Classes are very well equipped, and the teachers are very knowledgeable and kind. I hope you will feel at home here.

3.

— Tell me, Brian, what is it like to be a university student in the US? Your university system is known to be unique, isn't it?

— I think it is, and our secondary education system too, which is quite unlike British one.

— And what is unique about it?

— It provides not only academic but vocational subjects as well so many young people choose work after finishing school.

— To tell the truth, I am at the point of doing that myself. But my parents won't be happy about it. They insist on my staying at school and going to college.

— I know how it is. You feel tired after studying at school and are keen to go into the world and get started. But I'm convinced that it's better to spend our youth studying.

— I'm with you there. But when I start thinking about the long process of applying to university, I can't help feeling distressed. By the way, was it difficult for you to get a place at the university?

— Well, it all began at the end of my third year of high school with the Scholastic Aptitude Test.

— Is it the same kind of thing as the GCSE exams in Britain?

— Not exactly. This is a multiple choice test given on the same day across the nation. It's 3 hours long and has several sections that test maths, verbal and reasoning skills. SAT scores range from 400 to 1,600, with scores over 1,000 considered good. Most colleges require a good score for entry.

— Well, what if college rejects you?

— You can apply to as many colleges at a time as you like. In fact it's much easier to enrol at University than to study there.

— Do you mean that there is no competition for admission at all?

— For some prestigious and private colleges it is intense. But some public universities accept almost all applicants. It is in the course of stuffy that nearly 50 per cent of students drop out.

— Did you have to pass examinations?

— I had to complete the application forms and to write an essay.

— When did you find out whether you had been accepted by the college?

— In April. Admission committees review all the papers and pick the best candidates by February or March. Then they send notification letters to the applicants.

— Did you have many of them?

— I had been accepted to eight, rejected by one, and put on the waiting list for one.

— Good for you. That sounds encouraging.

4.

— If you had a chance to go to an English-speaking country, where would you like to study?

— To tell the truth, I would stay in Russia.

— Stay in Russia? But why? I've heard that British and American universities are famous all over the world.

— That's true but we have excellent universities in Russia too. Moscow State University is also world-famous and its graduates are highly valued all over the world.

— You are right, but while visiting Britain or America, you'll learn a lot about this country and will be able to apply this knowledge when you come back to Russia.

— Of course, studying abroad has a lot of advantages. But there are some problems. Those students who go to study to another country feel like they are on a different planet. Everything is so different: the way people eat, sleep, work and all the various leisure activities are so different.

— Yet you can't but agree that if you study in an English-speaking country, you will have a wonderful chance to practise your English.

— That's true, but to study well you have to speak fluent English and to understand native speakers. Otherwise you won't be able to complete successfully the course of study. Besides, there is one more problem.

— Which one?

— You have to pay for your education, and tuition fees are rather high for overseas students whereas in Russia most of the universities and institutes are free of charge.

— That's a very important argument. However, there are some state exchange programmes where you don't have to pay for your education.

— If I have an opportunity to take part in the Students' Exchange Programme, I will go to Oxford which is famous all over the world for its traditional practices which have stood for hundreds of years.

— You are right. Though student life is quite modern there, there are still things where traditions are kept and the students are proud of them. For example, there are some events where students have to wear a gown.

— I have always dreamt of wearing a gown! It's a pity that we don't have any gowns in Moscow State University. I'm sure that the students will be proud of them.

— So you should apply for the Students' Exchange Programme and get acquainted with British traditions.

Writing

26 August 2005

Dear Mike,

How are you? Thank you for your letter of 10th June. I am sorry for not having written to you earlier, but I have had a lot of things to do.

You know it was a very hard year for me. I spent my time getting ready for my exams and I was doing well in practically all subjects. After passing the exams I was enrolled to the University. The whole course of study is four years. My major subject is mathematics. I am really good at it and do maths whenever I have a chance. I take many courses in this subject. I like to take part in maths competitions organized at our department and at the University. I think that mathematics is “the language of science” and plays an important part in many sciences.

We are lucky to have a brilliant lecturer in mathematics this term. He has a talent to take a difficult subject and make it simple. You leave the lecture hall with a feeling that mathematics is the most interesting subject in the world. Next term I'll be doing research in the field of computer engineering.

And how do you feel about maths? Please, write back. I am especially interested in your life in the university.

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Bye,

Sergei

UNIT 8

LEARNING FOREIGN LANGUAGES

English Today

The English language is now the first language of about 400 million people, the native language of 12 nations and the official or semi-official language of 33 more nations. That means one in every seven people in the world speaks English. Geographically, it is the most widespread language on the Earth. At present no other language is better suited to play the role of a world language.

There are many reasons for its popularity. English is so widespread nowadays because it has become the standard language for all kinds of international communication. It is the language of businesspeople and scientists, politicians and diplomats, sportsmen and singers. The English language has become the world's top tongue and I think that it is going to become a global language, dominating the world's trade, computers and media.

Nowadays English is the most popular language in Russia. If you are interested in science, business or literature, you can always read the latest reports in English and learn the latest information. If you know English, you can enjoy foreign films and foreign music. More than that, it is very useful when you travel abroad. You can communicate better if you know English. Besides, English is easier to learn than any other languages.

There are a lot of useful learning strategies such as reading English books, using a cassette recorder or watching English films. But in my opinion, the best way of learning a language is to practise a lot. Today we have an opportunity to go to an English-speaking country and to talk to native speakers.

As for me, I learn English because I like this language. It is one of my favourite subjects at school. I have been learning English for 5 years and I hope I am rather good at it now. Besides, I want to travel abroad and communicate with different people. I can't imagine my future life without English. I haven't chosen my future

profession yet, but it goes without saying that I won't be able to do without English when I grow up. English is a must for every educated person. I am sure it will help me in my life.

Vocabulary

native — родной

semiofficial — полуофициальный

widespread — широко распространенный

to suit — подходить

reason — причина

scientist — ученый

politician — политик

to dominate — доминировать, господствовать

trade — торговля

media — средства массовой информации

science — наука

report — доклад, отчет

useful — полезный

abroad — за границей, за границу

to communicate — общаться

opportunity — возможность

native speaker — носитель языка

imagine — представлять, воображать

it goes without saying — само собой разумеется

to do without — обходиться без

Questions

1. Why is English so widespread nowadays? 2. What will the role of the English language be in the twenty-first century? 3. Why do people in Russia learn English? 4. What do you think is the best way to learn a foreign language? 5. Why do you learn English? 6. Is it difficult for you to learn English? 7. Are you a good language learner? 8. Do you enjoy learning English? 9. At what age did you begin to learn English? 10. Would you like to learn any other languages? Why?

English as a World Language

The English language has nowadays become the “new Latin” of the century. One billion people speak English. That's 20% of the world population. For the other 600 million it's either a second language or a foreign language.

There are more than 500,000 words in the Oxford English Dictionary. Compare that with the vocabulary of German (about

200,000) and French (about 100,000). At present no other language on the Earth is better suited to play the role of a world language.

There are many reasons for this. First, English is easier to learn than any other languages. Second, it borrows words and phrases from the very countries into which it expands. Eighty per cent of all English vocabulary comes from other languages. For example, such words as *pork*, *mutton*, *beef*, etc. were borrowed from French; *book*, *renew*, *water*, etc. were borrowed from German; *library*, *renovate*, *aquatic*, etc. were borrowed from Latin; *bibliography*, *hydraulic*, *telephone*, *television*, etc. were borrowed from Greek. Many words have entered English as a result of trade and colonial expansion: *alcohol* and *algebra* have come from Arabic; *divan* and *khaki* from Persian; *chocolate* and *tomato* from Native American languages; *tea* and *tycoon* from Chinese.

English is so widespread nowadays because it has become the standard language for all kinds of international communication: 80% of all information in the world's computers is in English; nearly 50% of all the companies in Europe communicate with one another in English; 75% of all international letters and telexes are in English. English is also the international language of businesspeople, pilots, diplomats and politicians, sportsmen and scientists, doctors and students, musicians and singers.

Today in Russia the English language has become the most popular one among foreign languages. Learning English helps in talking to people, reading and writing, in understanding foreign music and foreign films. It opens up much a wider range of sources of information.

Besides, when you travel in different countries, you can manage to communicate a lot better if you understand people and people understand you. When you speak English to people, they're often a lot more friendly and helpful. English is the language of communication between different peoples and countries. If you are interested in science, business, medicine, literature, music and you want to be up-to-date with progress in those fields, you can always read the latest report in English and know the latest information about the question you are interested in. Learning English broadens your mind and way of thinking.

English is a global language. The problems of the twenty-first century, such as the problems of war and peace, ecology,

demographics, democracy and many others cannot be solved if people do not speak the same language. I think that English is going to become even more important as a global language, dominating the world's trade, computers and media while other languages will become localized or just die out.

I think it's very valuable and helpful in learning English if you start learning it from an early age. People can learn the best up to about the age of 20, as they have a lot of time for it, which later isn't possible. Learning English is not like learning maths or science because it involves a different way of thinking. You have to learn to think in English. And, of course, you have to learn the grammar and vocabulary too if you want to know the language quite well.

Vocabulary

either ... or — или ... или

to suit — подходить, годиться

reason — причина

to borrow — заимствовать

to renovate — восстанавливать,
ремонтировать

aquatic — водный, водяной

tycoon — финансовый магнат

widespread — широко распространённый

scientist — ученый

politician — политик

source — источник

to manage — справляться,
обходиться

to be up-to-date — быть современным

to broaden — расширять

to solve a problem — решать
проблему

to dominate — доминировать,
господствовать

trade — торговля

media — средства массовой
информации

valuable — ценный

science — наука

to involve — подразумевать,
предполагать

Questions

1. Why is English a global language nowadays? 2. What will the role of the English language be in the twenty-first century? 3. Which vocabulary is the largest in the world? 4. What percentage of words in English comes from other countries? 5. What borrowed words in English do you know? 6. Why is English a language of communication? 7. Why do people in Russia learn English? 8. What is the best suitable age to begin to learn English? 9. What is the best way to learn English?

Learning Foreign Languages

Learning foreign languages is becoming more and more popular in our country. It's not surprising because Russia is now part of Europe and the whole world. Very little clear and detailed communication can occur among people who don't have a common language. Besides learning foreign languages helps us to gain a better appreciation of our own language.

It goes without saying that English is the most popular foreign language now. There are many reasons for its popularity. It has become the standard language for all kinds of international communication. The English language has become the world's top tongue and I think it is going to become a global language, dominating the world's trade, computers and media.

On the other hand, we should not forget the cultural value of our native language. It's a pity that many young people in order to make a fortune choose a foreign language for communication and leave their identity behind. That results in language extinction and this process takes place nearly everywhere in the world.

According to various linguists, half of the world's languages will die out during the next century. On the one hand, it's not bad as people's communication will become easier, but on the other hand, language extinction is a disaster because it reduces the diversity of our planet which is the key to our survival. I think that larger cultures should have a respect for minority languages, but first of all the younger generation must want to preserve their native language.

Nowadays English is the most popular foreign language in Russia. If you know English, you can get a better job, more money and people will respect you more. As for me, I learn English because it expands my horizons and prepares me for a successful career. Besides, English attracts me because it's the language of business and computers. English is also very useful when you travel abroad. More than that, it's a good exercise for the intellect, though, of course, it's a tricky language to learn because there seems to be more exceptions than rules.

Some students think that being able to communicate is the most important in learning a language and they do not care that they make many mistakes in speaking. In my opinion, the efficient

language learner should be concerned with both communicating and accuracy. In addition, the good language learner is independent, organized and active.

In my opinion, learning foreign languages is extremely beneficial. I would also like to learn Spanish. It will help me to get a job in the tourist industry, as so many people go on holiday to Spain. I would also like to expand my knowledge of Spanish customs and traditions.

To sum up, I believe that knowledge of foreign languages helps to make a person educated and well-rounded. It is not only the language that counts but also the fact that it is a way of getting to know different cultures. You can't broaden your mind if you see the world only from the perspective of your own culture.

Vocabulary

to occur — происходить,
случаться

common — общий

to gain a better appreciation —
лучше оценивать, понимать

value — ценность, значение

native — родной

identity — индивидуальность,
самобытность

extinction — исчезновение
(с лица земли)

according to — согласно мне-
нию, оценкам

various — различный

disaster — катастрофа

to reduce — уменьшать, сокра-
щать

diversity — многообразие,
разнообразие

survival — выживание

respect — уважение

minority languages — второсте-
пенные языки

generation — поколение

to preserve — сохранять

to expand — расширять

to prepare — готовить

successful — успешный

to attract — привлекать

abroad — за границей

though — хотя

tricky — сложный, запутан-
ный, трудный

exception — исключение

rule — правило

to care — волноваться,
беспокоиться

to be concerned about —
беспокоиться о

accuracy — правильность

independent — независимый

extremely — чрезвычайно,
крайне

beneficial — полезный

knowledge — знание, знания

custom — обычай

well-rounded — всесторонне
развитый, образованный

to broaden one's mind —
расширять кругозор

Questions

1. Why is learning languages becoming more and more popular?
2. Why do so many people learn English today?
3. Do you agree that language diversity is “the key to our survival”?
4. What should a larger culture do in order to have respect for minority languages?
5. How many languages do you think are enough for the world?
6. Will English become a global language? Why?
7. Why do you learn English?
8. Do you like learning English or not? Why?
9. Are you a good language learner?
10. Would you like to learn any other foreign language?

British English

Today English is the most important international language. It is spoken as a mother tongue in all the continents of the world. 400 million people speak English as their first language and 600 million people speak it either as a second or as a foreign language. It is nowa-days second only to Chinese in the number of people who speak it.

Millions of people are learning English today. It is the language of summit meetings and international conferences. Foreign political leaders speak to international journalists in English. The latest discoveries are published in English. 80% of all information in the world’s computers is in English.

The English grammar and vocabulary which is used in public speaking, radio and television, books and newspapers is known as “standard British English”. It is taught in colleges and universities and is spoken by educated people. Most working-class people, however, use lots of words and grammatical forms which are regarded as non-standard. The clearest indication of a person’s class is often his accent. The most prestigious accent in Britain is known as “Received Pronunciation (RP)”. It is a combination of standard spoken English with an RP accent that is usually meant when people talk about “BBC English” or “Oxford English” or “the Queen’s English”.

English is the official language in the UK. But some people speak Gaelic in western Scotland, and Welsh — in parts of northern and central Wales. The study of Welsh is now compulsory in many

primary and secondary schools. Television and radio services in Wales give about half of their time to Welsh language programmes. And when you travel, you can see road signs in Welsh all over Wales.

Distinct forms of English which may vary from locality to locality are called dialects. Dialects have no normalized literary form. Regional versions, possessing literary forms are called variants. In Great Britain there are 2 variants, *Scottish* and *Irish* and 5 main groups of dialects.

There are a number of different regional accents in the UK. “Cockney” is the way of speaking English that is typical of native Londoners. This accent is characterized by its special pronunciation and the use of rhyming slang. Like any local accent, it is associated with working-class origins.

English is the most popular language. Millions of people study and use English as a foreign language. English today is absolutely necessary for every educated person.

Vocabulary

mother tongue — родной язык

widespread — распространенный

summit meeting — совещание
в верхах

discovery — открытие

to publish — публиковать

educated — образованный

to regard — считать, рассматривать

prestigious — престижный

pronunciation — произношение

received pronunciation — нормативное произношение

combination — сочетание

compulsory — обязательный

primary — начальный (*о школе*)

secondary — средний (*о школе*)

road signs — дорожные знаки

distinct forms — различные формы

to vary — изменяться

locality — местность, район

normalized — стандартный

literary — литературный

regional — региональный,
районный, областной

to possess — обладать

native — коренной

rhyming slang — рифмованный
сленг

to associate — ассоциироваться

origins — происхождение

Questions

1. Why has English become a world language? 2. What is “standard British English”? 3. What languages are spoken in Britain besides English? 4. Do regional dialects possess literary forms? What

about variants? 5. What regional accents in the UK do you know? 6. What is the national language of your country? 7. What other languages are spoken in your country?

American English

American English is one of the ways of speaking English. In the formation of American English the English-speaking colonists were brought into contact with different peoples who spoke different languages. Many words, derived from these languages, were added to the 17th-century form of English.

First in importance come the words derived from the speech of various Indian tribes. This was caused by the necessity of talking about new things, operations and ideas. So, a lot of new words came from the Indians, such as *canoe*, *wigwam*, *toboggan*, *tomahawk*, *squash*.

Besides the various Indian influences, American English reflects the other non-English cultures which colonists met in their conquest of the continent. In the westward expansion of their territory, the English colonists soon came into contact with French settlements in the Middle West. From the French a considerable number of words were derived, such as *rapid*, *prairies* and *creek*.

More substantial borrowings were made from the Spanish colonization and culture as the English colonists moved southward and westward towards the Pacific Ocean. Spanish words in American English are *mulatto*, *canyon*, *ranch*, *sombrero*, *poncho* and *cafeteria*.

The Dutch settlers of New York contributed to American English the following words: *boss*, *cookie*, *Santa Claus*. Finally, there are words of German origin in English, such as *sauerkraut*, *semester*, *seminar*, *noodles*.

Besides, the first English colonists discovered plants, animals and things that were new to them and gave those things names, for example, *turkey*. So, the English language was influenced by other languages and new environment.

Since that time American English and British English have developed in different ways, that's why American English retains some old forms of British English, for example, *get — got — gotten*.

When Americans obtained independence, they decided to create a new language, so at the turn of the 18th century Webster introduced a language reform in spelling and in pronunciation. The main changes in spelling were:

- the use of **-or** instead of **-our**: **labor**, **honor**, **color**, **harbor**;
- the use of **-er** instead of **-re**: **center**, **theater**, **meter**;
- the use of **s** instead of **c**: **defense**, **offense**, **license**.

There is also some difference in pronunciation:

- words ending in **-ary** and **-ory** have a stress on the next to last syllable: **secretary**, **dictionary**, **laboratory**;
- Americans often pronounce [r] in all positions: **car**, **here**;
- they pronounce [æ] instead of [ɑ:]: **can't**, **dance**, **answer**, **ask**.

There are a lot of cases in which British and American people continue to use different words to mean the same thing. These words are still in constant use and have retained their national character. Here are a few examples: **railway** (Br) — **railroad** (Am); **carriage** (Br) — **car** (Am); **lorry** (Br) — **truck** (Am); **petrol** (Br) — **gasoline** (Am); **gear box** (Br) — **transmission** (Am); **lift** (Br) — **elevator** (Am); **post** (Br) — **mail** (Am); **underground** (Br) — **subway** (Am); **trunk call** (Br) — **long-distance call** (Am); **barrister** (Br) — **lawyer** (Am); **vest** (Br) — **undershirt** (Am); **waistcoat** (Br) — **vest** (Am); **autumn** (Br) — **fall** (Am); **bill** (Br) — **check** (Am); **pavement** (Br) — **sidewalk** (Am); **chemist's** (Br) — **drug store** (Am).

Within American English there are three major dialects: **New England** (in 6 states), **Southern dialect** (Virginia and South Carolina) and **General American** (in the western part of the country).

Americans are constantly inventing new words, many of which have found a permanent place first in American and then in British usage, for example, *to televize*, *to park*, *know-how*.

Vocabulary

formation — образование, создание
contact — контакт
derived — производный, вторичный
necessity — необходимость, потребность

reflect — отражать
conquest — завоевание
westward — к западу
expansion — увеличение, расширение
rapid — быстрый, стремительный

prairie — степь, саванна
creek — бухта, морской залив
cookie — (амер.) сладкое
печенье
sauerkraut — квашеная капуста
noodles — лапша
turkey — индейка
Americans — *Обратите внимание: названия национальностей могут употребляться как с определенным артиклем, так и без артикля*
substantial — обширный
origin — начало, источник
preposition — предлог
numeral — числительное
carriage — коляска, карета;
вагон
lorry — (брит.) грузовик
truck — (амер.) грузовик
petrol — (брит.) бензин
gasoline — (амер.) бензин

gear box — (брит.) коробка передач
transmission — (амер.) коробка передач
post — (брит.) почта
mail — (амер.) почта
trunk call — (брит.) междугородний телефонный звонок
long-distance call — (амер.) междугородний телефонный звонок
barrister — (брит.) адвокат
lawyer — (амер.) адвокат
vest — (брит.) майка
undershirt — (амер.) майка
waistcoat — (брит.) жилет
vest — (амер.) жилет
pavement — (брит.) тротуар
sidewalk — (амер.) тротуар
chemist's — (брит.) аптека
drug store — (амер.) аптека
usage — обычай, привычка

Questions

1. What languages contributed to American English? 2. Do you know any English words derived from other languages? 3. What are the main differences between British and American English? 4. Is it difficult to understand an American person? 5. What dialects within American English do you know? 6. Do you learn British or American English?

Dialogues

1.

— Hello, Kate! I hear you're learning English now. Why?

— Oh, yes. Two years ago I learned French, but now I need English for my future career.

— You're right. As for me, my ambition is to be a businessman. That's why I'm learning English hard now. I go to special courses to learn English.

— So do I. My ambition is to be a tourist manager. I'll visit different countries, talk to different people. When you are in different countries, you can manage a lot better if you understand people and vice versa. And English is an international language nowadays.

— I agree with you. All business people should know English. It is the standard language for all kinds of international communication. Almost all information in computers is in English. Nearly all international letters and telexes are in English.

— Sure. And besides I'm keen on music. And almost all songs are in English too.

— Oh, yes. English is a global language. The problems of the twenty-first century can't be solved if people do not speak the same language.

— OK. I wish you good luck.

— The same to you.

2.

— Do you know that thousands words in the English dictionary aren't English at all — they come from other languages?

— Sure, I know about it. Some words are from Latin (video), some are from Spanish (macho), some from French (rendezvous) and other languages. I've read about it.

— But now English words have started to become a part of other languages too. In France this new vocabulary is called "Franglais". Every year there are more and more Franglais words. Some experts say that 5% of day-to-day French vocabulary now comes from English.

— I like Franglais. It's fun! It's very easy, modern and easy to understand too. Some older people don't like it, but that's their problem, not ours. They don't like the modern world, that's all. They want to live in the past.

— I share your opinion. Every language borrows new words. It happens all the time. Without new words languages can't grow and change. I'm not afraid of Franglais. It's normal.

— Lets continue our discussion later. I'm in a hurry now. Bye.

— Bye-bye. See you later.

3.

— Hello. I'm from Britain, and you?

— Hello. I'm from the USA. What do you think about English as an international language?

— English is changing very quickly, but languages have to change, don't they? I mean, my parents don't understand some of my vocabulary, but that's OK. In twenty years my children will use words I don't understand. It's normal.

— I'm very worried about the future of English. Some teenagers today can hardly read or write it at all. Even on the radio or TV you hear slang and grammatical mistakes every day. A language is like a garden — you have to control it. English is becoming a jungle.

— I think the name of the language will change. Soon people won't call it English, they'll call it "American". Don't you agree? I mean, these days the capital of the English language is Washington, not London.

— I don't agree with you. English will become more important and it won't change its name.

— OK. Let's meet in ten-years' time and continue our discussion.

4.

— You have just returned from your trip around Great Britain. Did you always understand native speakers while travelling?

— Actually, I did, especially if they spoke standard British English.

— What do you mean? Do people in Britain speak different languages?

— My answer is "yes" and "no". Everyone in Britain speaks English but they all speak it differently. You will have to listen carefully if you want to understand a Scottish person. Besides, in some parts of Scotland and Wales people speak different languages as well.

— Is Welsh different from English?

— Very much so. Welsh is one of the Celtic languages, like Scottish and Irish Gaelic. Even if your English is fluent, you won't be able to understand Welsh.

— Do the Welsh speak English?

— They do. English is taught side by side with Welsh in schools. But the Welsh language is still the first language for many people. They like to speak Welsh, to sing songs in Welsh and when you travel, you can see road signs in Welsh all over Wales.

— What do you think I should learn before going to Britain?

— First of all, you should know how to pronounce words correctly and speak without mistakes. But what is more important, you should know how to communicate with the British people and learn about their customs and traditions.

5.

— Hello. I'm a language teacher and I teach English at school. And you?

— Glad to see you! I'm a language teacher too. I was born in London, and I have been teaching British English for fifteen years already.

— I was born in America. And in the USA we teach American English. I think American English is winning and I guess it probably should be. It's a more lively and flexible language, open to change. Young people everywhere choose American English without question and regret.

— To my mind, I consider British English the only correct version of English. Besides, British English has a longer history than American English. After all, American English developed from British English and has a short 200-year history.

— I guess many learners prefer the American variant because of America's pop culture and travelling. All language learning is related to culture. And American culture just happens to be widely popular at the moment. It's much more exciting.

— To some extent that depends on who is doing the teaching. After all, a British-born teacher will naturally teach the British variant and vice versa. But I would recommend young people to learn British English. They won't regret choosing British English, "the Queen's English" as we call it.

— OK. I guess teenagers choose themselves what English to learn.

Writing

1.

Flat 125
21 Izumrudnaya Street
Moscow 129327
Russia

April 10, 2005

Royal Windsor College
Windsor XN 106
UK

Dear Sir or Madam,

I read your advertisement in *the Student News* (April 5th) and I am writing to apply for a scholarship to attend an English language course at your college this summer.

I am 16 years old and I live in Moscow in Russia. I have been learning English for eight years. I am learning English because I would like to study in Britain when I finish school. I have completed the ninth grade of secondary school. I will be taking the FCE in June and my practice test results have been excellent.

I have always wanted to go to Britain because it has some of the best universities in the world. I am also very keen on English pop music. I have a pen friend from Britain and read magazines in English. Finally, I believe I would make the most of the opportunity to attend an English course because I am very motivated and hard-working.

I would be very happy to give you more information if required. I enclose the name of a referee.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Ivan Belov

2.

24 Gorky Street
Moscow 115355

14 October 2005

Dear John,

Thanks for your letter. I'm sorry that I haven't written for so long, but I've been really busy.

I've got some good news! I've managed to persuade my parents to let me spend a year in England learning the language. I'll be studying at King's School. So I hope we'll be able to meet and to talk when I am there.

But I must admit that now I am getting a bit worried because everything is so different there. I wonder if I'll be able to adapt to living with a host family. What kind of problems do you think I might have? I'd really like your advice.

Please write back soon. I'm really looking forward to your reply. Give my regards to your parents. I hope they are both well.

Best wishes,

Alex

UNIT 9

TRAVELLING AND TOURISM

Travelling

A lot of people travel nowadays. It's not surprising because distances between countries are becoming shorter due to the development of transport. The main forms of public transport are buses, trains, ships and aeroplanes. Each of them has its pros and cons.

Of course, air travel is quicker than other means of transport. This is particularly true if you are travelling long distances. Moreover, many people enjoy travelling by air because of the meal and the entertainment on board. The time goes by more quickly when travelling by plane. Besides, if you have a window seat, you can get a wonderful view of the beautiful cloudy sky.

However, flying often involves delays and cancellations. You often spend more time getting to and from the airport than actually flying. In addition, planes are often cramped — people with long legs can find sitting in a plane for hours very uncomfortable. Turbulence can also spoil the flight. Besides, there are occasionally terrorist threats, which would definitely spoil any journey. Finally, air travel is more expensive than any other form of modern transport.

It could be said that flying is more efficient than other forms of public transport if you have to visit another country or continent. In other cases, it is more practical and economical to go by train or bus.

Travelling by train is one of the most popular means of travelling. First of all, it's cheaper than travelling by air. Besides, modern trains are very comfortable. You can enjoy a splendid view of the countryside. And if you are hungry, you can have a meal in the dining car.

Some people prefer travelling by sea which is very exciting. If the weather is fine, you can relax on the large sun deck and enjoy the panoramic view of the sea. Modern ships are usually very comfortable: they offer air-conditioned cabins, a large dining area

and even a swimming pool. But of course, if you are sea-sick, travelling by ship is not a good idea.

A lot of people travel by car because it's rather convenient. They don't have to buy tickets and to carry heavy luggage. They can stop wherever they wish and spend as much time as they like at any place. However, this way of travelling is not as comfortable and quick as travelling by plane or by train.

To sum up, I can say that we have a lot of different means of transport and people can choose the way of travelling according to their aims and preferences. As for me, I like travelling and I travel quite a lot. I like all means of transport, but my favourite one is travelling by coach. In my opinion, it's the best way to explore different towns and cities both in our country and abroad.

Vocabulary

due to — благодаря
development — развитие
particularly — особенно
to involve — вызывать, приводить к, подразумевать
delay — задержка
cancellation — отмена (*пейса*)
in addition — к тому же
cramped — тесный
to spoil — портить
flight — полет
threat — угроза
definitely — определенно
expensive — дорогой
cheap — дешевый

splendid — великолепный, роскошный
deck — палуба
cabin — каюта
to be sea-sick — страдать морской болезнью
rather — довольно
convenient — удобный
luggage — багаж
according to — в соответствии с
aim — цель
preference — предпочтение
coach — туристический автобус
to explore — исследовать
abroad — за границей

Questions

1. Why do people travel nowadays? 2. What means of travelling do you know? 3. What are the pros and cons of flying? 4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of travelling by train? 5. Which way of travelling is the cheapest? Which one is the most expensive? 6. What is your favourite way of travelling? Why? 7. Do you like to travel? Why? 8. Who do you like to travel with? 9. Have you ever travelled on foot or by bike? If not, would you like to try to? Why?

Seasons and Travelling

There are four seasons in a year: winter, spring, summer and autumn. Each of them is good for travelling.

Winter is the coldest season of the year. Winters in Russia are cold, snowy and sometimes very frosty. It isn't very pleasant to go out because you must wear warm clothing. But winter is a wonderful season for sports. People go skating and skiing and children play hockey and snowballs. Downhill skiing is becoming more and more popular. A lot of people go to the mountains and visit popular winter skiing resorts. There are a lot of skiing resorts in Russia such as Abzakovo in the Urals and Krasnaya Polyana in the Caucasus. But many people prefer to go to Finland, Norway or Switzerland because they have a lot of comfortable hotels and offer wonderful opportunities for downhill skiing.

When spring comes, nature awakens from its long winter sleep. We can hear birds singing. The snow starts melting and green grass and new green leaves begin to appear. It's so beautiful to see the new spring leaves, grass and flowers! The sun usually shines brightly, but sometimes it rains. In my opinion, spring is the best time for making coach tours, especially abroad. In March and early April European cities and towns are already full of flowers whereas in Russia we still have snow on the ground. On the other hand, it's not as hot in spring as it is in summer, and it is not stuffy inside the bus, so your coach tour will be much more pleasant.

Summer is the hottest season. The weather is usually fine, and the sky is blue, clear and cloudless. Summers are usually hot and dry on the most part of Russia, so it's a good time to go hiking, fishing or have a nice holiday at the seaside. People try to get away from the city and spend more time in the open air. Spain, Turkey and the Crimea are the most favourite tourist destinations. Package tours to seaside resorts are becoming more and more popular. People enjoy swimming, sunbathing and different water sports such as water skiing or windsurfing.

Summer is the best season for walking tours. A lot of young people go hiking or pony-trekking. It doesn't cost much and it is a really good way of getting away from the crowds. This sort of holiday

teaches the young how to survive. What is more, it gives them an opportunity to visit remote places and to enjoy nature.

Autumn is a rainy season. The rains are very cold, especially in October and November. One might say that autumn is an unpleasant season and it is not good for travelling. But that's not right at all! Autumn is very beautiful. The leaves turn yellow, red and brown. At the end of autumn all the ground is covered with fallen leaves. More than that, there is always a spell of fine weather in September or October, when it is warm and sunny. This spell is called Indian summer, and it is especially good for travelling because nature is full of bright colours. I think it's a great time to visit and explore ancient Russian towns. Besides, autumn is a wonderful time for going to the country because there are a lot of mushrooms and berries in the forests.

To sum up, I think every season has its own beauty and charm. A new season comes and new activities begin.

Vocabulary

frosty — морозный

downhill skiing — горнолыжный спорт

resort — курорт

to offer — предлагать

opportunity — возможность

to awaken — пробуждаться

to melt — таять

leaves — листья

to appear — появляться

grass — трава

brightly — ярко

coach tour — автобусный тур, путешествие на автобусе

especially — особенно

abroad — за границу

whereas — тогда как

stuffy — душный

cloudless — безоблачный

hiking — туристический пеший поход

destination — место назначения, цель поездки

package tour — комплексный тур (*включает проживание в гостинице, питание, проезд на поезде или самолете и трансфер от вокзала или аэропорта до гостиницы*)

to sunbathe — загорать

pony-trekking — конный поход

to cost — стоить

crowd — толпа

to survive — выживать

remote — отдаленный

spell — полоса

Indian summer — бабье лето

to explore — исследовать

ancient — древний

mushroom — гриб

berry — ягода

Questions

1. How many seasons are there in a year? What are they?
2. What's the weather like in winter? 3. Is winter good for travelling? Where can you travel in winter? 4. Some people say that spring is the most pleasant season. Why? 5. Is spring good for travelling? Where can you travel in spring? 6. What is the hottest season of the year? 7. Where can you go in summer? 8. What is the rainy season of the year? Is it good for travelling? Why? 9. What do we call the spell in autumn when the weather is very nice and warm? 10. What do you think is the best season for travelling? 11. When and where do you prefer to travel?

Travelling ... What for?

Every year a lot of people all over the world spend their holidays travelling. For many of them travelling is the most important event in the year.

People travel the globe to see other countries and continents, modern cities and the ruins of ancient towns, they travel to enjoy picturesque places, or just for a change of scene. The tourist industry will soon be the largest industry in the world. Many places that once were remote are now part of package tours. Tourism has been industrialized: landscapes, cultures and cuisines are consumer goods displayed in travel leaflets. In recent years tourism has really taken off.

Today people have lots of good reasons to travel. Travelling has always been a part of people's education. The best way to study geography is to travel and the best way to get to know and understand the traditions and customs of different people is to speak to them. Besides, travelling is a good way to practise foreign languages.

If you ask people why they travel, they will often mention world's most treasured sites, well-known museums, national parks or castles. It goes without saying that it's always interesting to discover new places and new ways of life, to try foreign food and to listen to unusual musical rhythms. It's much better than sitting at home and doing nothing.

Those people who live in the country like to go to a big city and spend their time visiting museums and art galleries, looking at shop windows and dining at exotic restaurants. City-dwellers usually like a quiet holiday by the sea or in the mountains, with nothing to do but walk and bathe and laze in the sun.

A lot of young people are fond of spending their holidays in different youth centres where they can enjoy various activities. Some young people spend their holidays hiking. It doesn't cost much and it is a really good way of getting away from the crowds. This sort of holiday teaches the young how to survive. What is more, it gives them an opportunity to visit remote places and to enjoy nature.

Some people are against travelling. They say that tourists have no respect for the countries they visit. A lot of tourist places are polluted and many of historical monuments are in danger of being destroyed by unstoppable march of tourism. Besides, today travelling is rather expensive. That's why some people prefer to spend their holidays in the country or at home in front of TV.

But why not make the most of your holiday and try something different? Certainly, travelling broadens the mind. But travel is more than sightseeing. It is a change, deep and permanent, that goes on in our ideas.

Vocabulary

event — событие

ruins of ancient towns — руины, развалины древних городов

picturesque — живописный

change of scene — перемена обстановки

remote — отдаленный

package tour — организованная туристическая поездка

landscape — пейзаж, ландшафт

cuisine — кухня

consumer goods — товары широкого потребления

education — образование, обучение

custom — обычай

mention — упоминать

most treasured sites — места, представляющие наибольший интерес

to discover — открывать, обнаруживать

way of life — образ жизни

rhythm — ритм

city-dweller — горожанин

to bathe — купаться

to laze in the sun — валяться на солнце

various — различный

to hike — путешествовать пешком

to survive — выживать

opportunity — возможность

respect — уважение

to pollute — загрязнять
danger — опасность
to destroy — разрушать
unstoppable — непреодолимый,
бесконечный
expensive — дорогой

to make the most of — макси-
мально использовать
to broaden the mind — расширять
кругозор
sightseeing — осмотр достопри-
мечательностей
permanent — постоянный

Questions

1. Can you think of any reasons for travelling? 2. Are you fond of travelling? Why? 3. What interesting places have you already visited? 4. What countries would you like to visit? 5. Are there any reasons for travelling to the UK? What are they? 6. What means of travelling do you know? What are their pros and cons? 7. Which way of travelling do you prefer? Why? 8. Who do you usually spend your holidays with? 9. Do you take a camera with you when you travel? Why? 10. Do you agree that travelling broadens the mind? Why? 11. Are you for or against travelling abroad? Why? 12. What kind of holiday do you prefer? Why? 13. What's your idea of a good rest?

Tourism: Pros and Cons

Millions of people all over the world are fond of travelling. They travel to see other countries and continents, to discover different ways of life, to meet different people and to practise foreign languages. It goes without saying that travelling broadens the mind. While travelling we can see and learn a lot of things that we can never learn staying at home and watching TV or reading books. No wonder that a lot of people enjoy visiting new places.

Today tourism is the world's second largest industry. The Mediterranean shores have a resident population of 130 million, but this increases to 230 million each summer because of the tourists. In Spain, France, Italy and most of Greece there is no undeveloped coastline left. In Notre Dame in Paris 108 visitors enter each minute during opening hours.

Global tourism is big business. It can bring substantial economic gain to developing regions. But what are the effects of tourism?

The Mediterranean is the dirtiest sea in the whole world. Most popular resorts are polluted: litter has become a major problem. A lot of ancient monuments are being destroyed by unstoppable march of tourism. For example, the prehistoric paintings at Lascaux in France were being slowly ruined by the breath and bacteria from 200,000 visitors a year. The caves have now been closed to the public and a replica has been built.

At the entrance to one of the ruined temples of Petra in Jordan there is an inscription chiselled into the soft red rock. It looks as if it has been there for centuries. But closer inspection reveals that it is not so ancient after all. It reads: *Shane and Wendy from Sydney were here. April 16th 1996.*

Many of great cities of Europe, such as London or Rome, are now finding that their historic centres are fast becoming occupied by tourists with clicking cameras and left by all local residents except for the souvenir sellers.

So what's the way out? In my opinion tourism should be given a humanistic direction. Cultural and environmental groups should work together to assure that tourism can maintain long-term benefits. Governments should create special programmes to support local residents and to protect cultural monuments.

But first of all people should change their attitude to tourism. We shouldn't buy cultural artefacts or products made from wild animals. We should try not to pollute our environment, try to accept different cultures and support traditional lifestyles.

Vocabulary

it goes without saying — само собой разумеется

to broaden the mind — расширять кругозор

shore — берег

resident — постоянный житель, местный житель

resident population — постоянное население, местное население

to increase — увеличиваться

undeveloped coastline — незастроенная береговая линия

substantial — существенный

gain — прибыль

to pollute — загрязнять

litter — мусор

major — главный

to destroy — разрушать

breath — дыхание

cave — пещера

entrance — вход

temple — храм, церковь

inscription — надпись

to chisel — высекать, вырезать

inspection — осмотр
to reveal — показывать, свиде-
тельствовать
ancient — древний
to occupy — занимать
except for — кроме
direction — направление
to assure — гарантировать,
обеспечивать
to maintain — поддерживать,
сохранять

long-term — долгосрочный,
длительный
benefit — прибыль, польза
to support — оказывать поддер-
жку, поддерживать
to protect — защищать
attitude — отношение
artefacts — остатки древней
культуры
to accept — принимать

Questions

1. Why do people travel? 2. What are the effects of tourism? 3. What are the favourite tourist spots in your country? Do they have any problems because of tourists? 4. Will the development of tourism bring economic gain to Russia? Why do you think so? 5. Should we reject tourism in order to preserve cultural monuments? Why? 6. What should we do to attract tourists to Russian cities and towns? 7. What is “socially responsible travel”?

Dialogues

1.

— Can I help you?

— Can I get a second-class ticket to Brighton on Monday for the train leaving at 9.30?

— Single or return?

— Return, please.

— £6.35, please.

— Thank you. And which platform for the Brighton train, please?

— Platform 3, madam.

— Thank you.

2.

— May I help you?

— Yes, please. I'd like to make a round-trip reservation to New York on Tuesday, June 23rd.

— All right. What time would you like to leave Los Angeles?

— Do you have any flights around 2 pm?

— Yes, there's a flight departing at 2.10.

— That'll be fine. I'd like a return flight on June 28th. In the late evening.

— Yes, we've got a 10.05 pm return flight.

— Fine.

— All right. I have you booked on Flight 64 departing Los Angeles on June 23rd at 2.10 pm, and arriving in New York at 11 pm, New York time. Your return flight is Flight 292 departing New York on June 28th at 10.05 pm and arriving in Los Angeles at midnight.

— Thank you. How much does it cost?

— \$135, please.

— Here you are.

3.

— Good morning. I've booked a KLM flight to Amsterdam for Wednesday 28th, but I can't travel on that day after all. Could I change my ticket to a flight on Friday 30th?

— Do you want to travel on the same flight on the 30th?

— Yes, if that's possible, please.

— Could I see your ticket, please? Just a moment. I'm sorry, but there're no seats on the KLM flight on the 30th. There's a British Airways flight, it departs at 15.30. Shall I try that for you?

— Yes, please.

— All right. Here's your ticket. September 30th, British Airways flight BA426 departing at 15.30 and arriving in Amsterdam at 17.00. You should be at Heathrow not later than 14.30 for check-in.

— Thank you.

4.

— Good afternoon. Can I check in here for the British Airways flight to Amsterdam, please?

- Yes, madam. May I see your ticket and passport, please?
- Yes, here you are.
- Would you put your luggage on the scales here, please?
- Yes, sure. I hope I haven't got any excess.
- No, it's all right, only 15 kilos. Any hand luggage?
- Just this handbag.
- Which section would you like — smoking or non-smoking?
- Non-smoking, please. I'd also like an aisle seat.
- All right. Here's your seat number and boarding pass. Your flight will depart from Gate 5 at 15.30.
- Thank you.

5.

- Would you mind coming over here, sir?
- Yes, what is it?
- Is this your luggage?
- Yes, that's right.
- And that suitcase over there?
- No, it's not mine.
- All right. Would you open your bags, please?
- Certainly.
- Any jewellery, spirits or drugs?
- No, just a few souvenirs for my family.
- Fine. Thank you, sir. Have a nice day.
- Thank you.

6.

- Hello, Bob. When are you going on holiday?
- Hi, Mike. I'm leaving in March. You see, I've got two weeks in March ... and then another two weeks in September.
- Are you going to take Mary with you?
- Sure. My sister enjoys travelling very much.
- And where are you going?
- Well, I'm hoping to go to Mexico. I've never been there and I keep hearing all these great things about it.
- Oh, God, it's sure to be fabulous. Especially if you go in March, you can get those charter flights.

— Yes, maybe.
— And it's beautiful down there and not so hot at that time of year.

7.

— Good morning. The Grand Hotel.
— Good morning. I'd like to reserve a single room for three nights starting with the fourth of August. Do you have any vacancies?
— I'm afraid our single rooms are fully booked. Would you take a double room?
— What are your rates for a double room?
— Our rate for a double room is \$76 plus VAT.
— OK then. I'll take a double room.
— In whose name shall I book it, please?
— In Holm's name.
— Could you spell it for me, please?
— H-O-L-M.
— How will you be paying?
— By credit card. The number is 2073 0905 0732 8914.
— Expiration date?
— July next year.
— Thank you, sir. You are welcome to the Grand Hotel.

8.

— Good evening. I have a reservation for 6 pm. My name is Thomas Holm.
— Would you spell the last name, please?
— H-O-L-M.
— Yes. I have your reservation right here. One double from today for three nights. Would you please fill in this registration form?
— Certainly.
— Here's your key. It's room 1180 on the eleventh floor. The lifts are round the corner over there.
— Thank you. What time's the breakfast, by the way?
— It's between 7 and 10.30 in the dining room or you could have it sent up.

— Oh, that's nice. I think I'll have it up in my room then. I'll give Room Service a ring about it later. One more thing, could you give me a wake-up call at 6 tomorrow morning?

— Yes, sure, sir. Have a nice day!

9.

— Hello, I'm looking for a place to spend my holidays. Could you offer me something interesting?

— Yes, certainly. How long are you going to travel?

— For about a fortnight.

— Do you like active holidays or would you prefer to stay somewhere in a quiet place just to relax?

— Well, I'd like to go on a sightseeing tour to Europe. I think Great Britain is the best place for it. It's a unique country, which is worth seeing. Besides, it's the best way to practise your English.

— Which cities and towns would you advise me to visit?

— I think the best way to start exploration of Great Britain is to visit London, its capital.

— And how much is this tour?

— Well, it depends on the hotel, but the average price is about \$600.

— And which hotel would you advise me to stay at?

— I would recommend you The New Barbican. It's a modern hotel, comfortably furnished and the prices are quite reasonable there.

— Is the hotel far from the main sights of the city? Where exactly is it?

— In Central Street. It's not far from the Tower of London and St. Paul's Cathedral.

— Fine, that will do. Let's sign a contract.

10.

— So, where shall we go this summer? As for me, I'd prefer to go to China. I have always dreamed of visiting this exotic country. Just imagine tasting Chinese food! Besides, we can buy exotic souvenirs.

— Oh, no. It's too crowded there! And it's dangerous to travel to China because we can catch a serious disease. As for Chinese

food, it's too spicy for me. Besides, I can't eat with chopsticks. And you?

— Neither can I. Well, then let's go to Australia. It's also an exotic country with different exotic animals. And if we stay at the seaside, we can learn windsurfing. It's very popular there.

— I don't think that going to Australia is a good idea. It's too far. I don't feel like spending so much time on board the plane. We'll be jet-lagged, I'm afraid.

— But we can practise our English! What's more, we'll be able to compare Australian English with British one. I think it's worth our efforts.

— Well, if you want to practise your English, why not go to the UK. It's much closer to Russia and it won't take us long to get there. More than that, we can buy a package tour and visit famous towns and cities, can't we?

— Yes, we can, but I hate packed holidays, because there are too many excursions. Besides, I have already been there twice. What I need is new impressions!

— Well, what about the USA? Have you been there?

— No, I haven't been there yet. But it takes you a long time to get a visa to the USA. And the tickets are rather expensive, I'm afraid.

— Not as expensive as to Australia or China. It's a great chance to learn more about America and to make a lot of new friends. Besides, we'll be able to compare American English and British one. What do you think of it?

— Perhaps, I'll agree with you. America is an unusual country. And I think we'll never have a chance of going there again.

11.

— Wow, we have our summer holidays at last! What shall we do? Shall we go to our country house?

— Oh, no! Let's try something different this year! I have always dreamed of going to the mountains. It's so exciting! We could see wonderful views, rare plants and drink pure water from mountain rivers.

— Mountaineering is not for me! I'm not strong enough and it might be tiring. Besides, it might be dangerous. There is always a

possibility of injury and I am not a risk taker. Why not go to the seaside? It's nice and warm there.

— Seaside? There is not much to do except staying on the beach all the time. As for me, I like active holidays. Besides, air tickets and accommodation could be expensive.

— But we could go by car and rent a room in a private house. It won't be very expensive.

— Then we'll have to cook ourselves. In this case, we'd better go camping. We will be able to combine cooking with wonderful walks in the woods for berries and mushrooms. And if we're tired of one place, we can go to another and enjoy new picturesque scenery.

— If you want to change places, I suggest going on a sightseeing tour.

— Sightseeing tour? What is it?

— We could visit many world famous places, enjoy museums and galleries, and learn a lot of interesting things.

— That sounds exciting! But won't it be too expensive?

— Not at all, because we'll travel by coach and stay at inexpensive hotels.

— Great! When shall we leave?

12.

— Do you like travelling?

— Actually, I don't. I can't stand long train or air journeys with heavy luggage. It's much better to stay at home and watch TV.

— But while travelling you can see a lot of interesting things that you can never see staying at home and watching TV. It goes without saying that travelling broadens the mind.

— I wouldn't say that. Most of tourist places are polluted and overcrowded. Today tourists have no respect for the countries they visit. The beauty of many places has disappeared for ever. So, who needs such holiday?

— I can't agree with you. You don't have to visit popular tourist places, but you may discover new faraway places and enjoy the scenery. Besides, while travelling you can also improve your knowledge of foreign languages.

— Well, thanks to computers and the Internet we have plenty of opportunities to practise a foreign language at home.

— But you must admit that when you travel, you can try foreign food and make a lot of new friends.

— Perhaps, you are right. However, travelling is rather expensive nowadays.

— Not exactly! If you are short of money, you can have a working holiday. Why not go to Great Britain to help wildlife and improve the landscape?

— Well, it's a good idea! I'll think it over.

13.

— Guess what! We've decided to go to the countryside tomorrow.

— It sounds great! But I am afraid your weekend won't be fine.

— What makes you think so?

— I think there will be a storm tomorrow.

— Well, if it is stormy, we'll stay at home. But I am sure our trip will be great!

— Are you? Why?

— The forecast is fine. I think it'll be warm. Just have a look! It's clearing up. I am sure it is going to be sunny. We'll go to the forest and pick mushrooms. I particularly enjoy walking in autumn because the trees are full of beautiful colours. I think autumn is the most beautiful season.

— Not exactly. Autumn is dull and rainy. As for me, summer is the best season.

— You are absolutely right. I can't but agree with you because we have our longest holidays in summer and we can go to the seaside and enjoy swimming in the sea.

— More than that, in summer you can go backpacking and see a lot of wonderful places.

— I quite agree with you. But does it mean that you don't like winter?

— Not at all. Winter is not so rich in colours but it is a healthy season. You can enjoy different winter sports.

— So I think each season has its good and bad sides.

Writing

1.

Helen Holwill
59 Rue Beabourg
Paris 75003
France

12 May 2005

Safari Travels
Spring Grove House
Bewdley DY12 ILF
UK

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to ask for more information about the safari holidays which I saw advertised in *the Daily News*.

Firstly, I would like to know whether it would be possible for you to arrange a holiday for four people in the middle of July. We are very keen on walking and we all enjoy horse-riding. We are also interested in the flying tours but would like to know whether these are by plane or by helicopter. Another thing which is not clear in the advert is the difference between the “Night drives” and the “Overnight trail”.

I would also be grateful if you could send more information about which animals live in the Safari and Leisure Park. Finally, we would like to know whether it would be possible to fly from Paris.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Helen Holwill

2.

Isle of Skye,
Scotland,

5th August

Hi Susan,

How are you? I hope the summer job is going well. Have you decided where to go on holiday? That skiing break sounds the best, doesn't it?

Anyway, we're camping here on the Isle of Skye. We're staying on a campsite in the middle of nowhere. We've been here for five days, but it feels longer. It's rained every single day — can you believe it? Everything is wet — our shoes, our sleeping bags, all our clothes.

Luckily, we didn't come here for the nightlife! Actually, there isn't any! But then we're all too tired at the end of the day anyway. We go walking every day and yesterday we saw some seals. We've all tried sailing and windsurfing, but we're not very good. This afternoon I fell into the sea five times!

Well, I must finish — it's my turn to cook tonight. Write back soon — I'll be home on Monday. You can tell me all your news!

All the best,

Janet

P.S. Brian phoned before we left — he wants you to get in touch.

UNIT 10

GREAT BRITAIN

Great Britain

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (the UK) is the official name of the British Kingdom. It occupies most of the territory of the British Isles and consists of four countries. They are England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Their capitals are London, Edinburgh, Cardiff and Belfast.

The UK is situated off the west coast of Europe between the Atlantic Ocean on the northwest and the North Sea on the east. It is separated from the European continent by the English Channel. The narrowest part of the English Channel is called the Strait of Dover. The total area of Great Britain is over 244,000 square kilometres.

The UK is an island state: it is made up of two large islands and several much smaller ones. The two main islands are Great Britain to the east and Ireland to the west. They are separated by the Irish Sea. Geographically, the island of Great Britain is subdivided into two main regions — Lowland Britain and Highland Britain. Lowland Britain comprises southern and eastern England. Highland Britain consists of Scotland, most of Wales, the Pennines, and the Lake District. Mountains are not very high. The highest mountain is Ben Nevis in Scotland (1,343 m). England is separated from Scotland by the Cheviot Hills, running from east to west.

There are a lot of rivers in Great Britain, but they are not very long. The Severn is the longest river, while the Thames is the deepest and the most important one. The chief river in Scotland is the Clyde. Great Britain has many beautiful lakes. The best known of them is long narrow Loch Ness, legendary home of the famous monster. On the northwest side of the Pennine system lies the Lake District, containing beautiful lakes.

The largest cities of Great Britain are London, Birmingham, Liverpool, Manchester, Sheffield, Leeds, Edinburgh, Glasgow, Cardiff and Belfast.

The population of the United Kingdom is over 57 million people. English is the official language. But some people speak Gaelic in western Scotland, and Welsh in parts of northern and central Wales.

The different parts of Britain have their own emblems. The red rose is the national emblem of England. The thistle is the national emblem of Scotland. The daffodils and the leek are the emblems of Wales. And the shamrock is the national emblem of Ireland.

The flag of the United Kingdom is known as the Union Jack. It is made up of three crosses: the cross of St. George (the patron saint of England), the cross of St. Andrew (the patron saint of Scotland) and the cross of St. Patrick (the patron saint of Ireland).

Vocabulary

to occupy — занимать
to consist of — состоять из
capital — столица
to be situated — располагаться
to be separated — отделяться
narrow — узкий
the Strait of Dover — Дуврский пролив, пролив Па-де-Кале
total area — общая площадь
to be made up of — состоять из
several — несколько
to be subdivided — подразделяться
Lowland Britain — низменная часть Великобритании
Highland Britain — гористая часть Великобритании
to comprise — включать (*в себя*)
southern — южный

eastern — восточный
mountain — гора
important — важный
famous — знаменитый
the Lake District — Озерный край
contain — содержать
population — население
western — западный
northern — северный
different — различный
part — часть
thistle — чертополох
daffodil — нарцисс
leek — лук-порей
shamrock — трилистник
cross — крест
patron saint — святой покровитель

Questions

1. Where is the UK situated? 2. What countries does the UK consist of? What are their capitals? 3. Is the UK a large country? 4. What channel separates the British Isles from the European continent? 5. Can you prove that Great Britain has a variety of

landscapes? 6. What is the highest mountain in the UK? 7. Are there a lot of long and deep rivers in Great Britain? 8. What famous lakes in Britain do you know? 9. What is the Lake District known for? 10. What's the population of the UK? 11. What do you imagine when you think of Britain? 12. What British symbols do you know? 13. What are the main geographical differences between the UK and Russia?

British Climate

The climate of Great Britain is more or less the same as that of the northwestern part of the European mainland. The popular belief that it rains all the time in Britain is simply not true. In fact, London gets no more rain in a year than most other European cities. The amount of rain that falls on a town in Britain depends on where it is. Generally speaking, the further west you go, the more rain you get.

The climate of Great Britain is mild and temperate due to the influence of the Gulf Stream. That means that it is never too hot or too cold. Snow is a regular feature of the higher areas only. Occasionally, in lower-lying parts winter can be without snow at all.

Usually the temperature is between 5 below zero and 23 above zero. The driest period is from March to June and the wettest months are from October to January. It seldom snows heavily in winter, frost is rare. January and February are usually the coldest months; July and August are the warmest ones. Sometimes the wind brings whirlwinds or hurricanes. Droughts are rare.

The lack of extremes is the reason why, on the few occasions when it gets very hot or very frosty, the country seems to be totally unprepared for it. A bit of snow and a few days of frost and the trains stop working and the roads are blocked. If the temperature goes above 27°C, people behave as if they were in Sahara and the temperature makes front-page-headlines. But these things happen so rarely that it is not worth organizing life to be ready for them.

The bad reputation of Britain's climate is due to its changeability. There is a saying that Britain doesn't have a climate, it only has weather. But English weather is never the same two days

running. One day it rains, the next day it may be sunny and then it may be cold again. It may not rain very much altogether, but you can never be sure of a dry day. There can be cool days in July and some quite warm days in January.

So, we may say that the British climate has three main features: it is mild, humid, and changeable. This humid and mild climate is good for plants and flowers. That's why Great Britain is such a green country, with long rich grass for the cattle and sheep, and beautiful lawns in the gardens.

Vocabulary

mainland — материк
belief — убеждение
amount — количество
to depend on — зависеть от
further — далее, дальше
mild — мягкий
temperate — умеренный
due to — благодаря, из-за
influence — влияние
regular feature — постоянная характеристика, черта
occasionally — иногда, время от времени
dry — сухой
wet — влажный
seldom — редко
frost — мороз
rare — редкий

wind — ветер
whirlwind — вихрь, смерч
hurricane — ураган
drought — засуха
lack — отсутствие
reason — причина
occasion — случай
unprepared — неподготовленный
to behave — вести себя
headline — заголовок
changeability — изменчивость
two days running — два дня подряд
humid — влажный
cattle — скот
lawn — лужайка, газон

Questions

1. Does it rain all the time in Britain? 2. Why is the climate of the British Isles mild? 3. Does it snow heavily in Britain? 4. What is the usual temperature in the UK? 5. The weather is a favourite conversational topic in Great Britain, isn't it? Why? 6. What is the best time of the year in Britain? 7. What do you know about London fogs? 8. Why do people call the British climate changeable? 9. What kind of weather do you like best of all? 10. How does the British climate influence plants and flowers?

Britain and the World

For two hundred years, until the 1950s, Britain's view of the world was dominated by its overseas territorial possessions and trade. Britain was reluctantly involved in continental Europe, usually only when its own security was directly threatened.

1919 was the time of the British Empire greatest extent. By this time, however, it was already becoming less of an empire and more of a confederation. The real dismantling of the empire took place in the twenty-five years following the Second World War.

The dismantling of the British Empire took place comparatively peacefully, so that good relations between Britain and the newly independent countries were established. As a result, and with the encouragement of Queen Elizabeth II, an international organization called the Commonwealth, composed of the former British colonies, has continued to hold annual meetings. Some countries in the Commonwealth have even kept the British monarch as head of state.

There are no formal economic or political advantages involved in belonging to the Commonwealth, but it has helped to keep cultural contacts alive. Today there is no longer the strong sense of Commonwealth purpose that there was thirty years ago. Today this organization represents historical accident rather than common purpose.

In 1973 Britain joined the European Community. Britain's decision to join EC was mainly for political reasons. Britain wanted to become part of Europe. It was also useful for economic reasons. The Single European Market offers British companies a market of over 350 million customers. The opening of the Channel tunnel in 1994 has emphasized that Britain's links are now mainly with Europe. The majority of visitors to Britain are now from Europe.

As an EC member, Britain can buy goods from other EC member countries at a reduced rate. Today the Commonwealth is not as important to Britain as it was in the past. Britain's relationship with Europe now takes first place.

Ever since the Second World War, Britain has believed in a "special relationship" with the United States. This relationship is based upon a shared language and Anglo-Saxon culture, and upon

alliance forged by Churchill and Roosevelt during the war. Britain's second most important trading partner after the EC is the USA. A lot of American tourists visit Britain every year.

Today the country is able to make significant contributions to international peace-keeping efforts together with the USA. It takes part in many international conflicts. Britain is a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO).

Vocabulary

to dominate — доминировать
overseas territorial possessions —
владение заморскими
территориями
trade — торговля
reluctantly — неохотно
to involve — включать
to threaten — угрожать
extent — протяжение, степень
dismantling — распад
comparatively — относительно,
сравнительно
encouragement — поддержка,
одобрение
the Commonwealth — (Британ-
ское) Содружество

to compose — составлять
former — бывший
annual — ежегодный
advantages — преимущества
purpose — цель
historical accident — историче-
ское событие
customer — покупатель
reduced rate — пониженная
цена
relationship — взаимоотноше-
ние, связь
shared language — общий
язык
alliance — союз, альянс
to forge — возглавлять

Questions

1. What was the time of the British Empire greatest extent?
2. When did the real dismantling of the empire take place?
3. Why did the dismantling of the British Empire take place comparatively peacefully?
4. What international organization, composed of the former British colonies, appeared after the Second World War?
5. What is its role in the world today?
6. Why and when did Britain join the European Community?
7. What advantages does Britain have as a member of the European Community?
8. What did the opening of the Channel tunnel in 1994 emphasize?
9. Why isn't the Commonwealth as important to Britain as it was in the past?
10. What is the relationship between Britain and the USA based upon?

British Government

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is a political term which includes England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. All of these countries are represented in Parliament and the abbreviation UK is used on most official documents produced by Parliament. Britain is split into counties. The word county describes an area with its own local government. County councils are elected to run things, such as education, housing, town planning, and rubbish disposal. They look after things like roads, libraries and swimming pools.

In Britain the Queen is the Head of State, but in fact she doesn't rule the country. The most important function of the Queen is ceremonial. The Queen is a symbol of the country history and its traditions. She is very rich. She travels about the UK, meets different people and visits schools and hospitals.

The real power in the country belongs to the British Parliament and to the British Government. The British Parliament has two houses, or chambers: the House of Commons and the House of Lords. The House of Commons is the most powerful and decides national policy, but the House of Lords can ask the House of Commons to rewrite certain parts of a bill before it becomes a new law.

The House of Commons consists of Members of Parliament, or MPs. The British people elect 650 MPs every five years. The 1,203 members of the House of Lords are not elected. These members are permanent. They are often aristocrats, people of the church, lawyers and former politicians. The head of both Houses of Parliament is the Queen, but she has very little power. It is the Queen who formally opens Parliament every autumn, but the speech she makes from the throne is written for her by politicians. Nothing becomes British law without the monarch's signature, but the Queen would never refuse to sign a bill which has been passed by Parliament.

The British flag, known as the Union Jack, is a combination of three flags: the Saint Andrew's cross, the Saint Patrick's cross and the Saint George's cross.

Saint Patrick is the patron saint of Ireland. He was born about AD 390. He converted the Irish to Christianity. Saint Patrick's Day

is celebrated on 17 March. The symbol of Northern Ireland is a shamrock.

Saint George is the patron saint of England. He was a soldier famous for saving Princess Cleolinda from being eaten by a dragon. Saint George's Day is celebrated on 23 April. The symbol of England is a red rose.

Saint Andrew, a fisherman, was one of the 12 apostles who followed Jesus Christ. Paintings of Saint Andrew often show him being killed on an X-shaped cross. Saint Andrew's Day is celebrated on 30 November. He is the patron saint of both Scotland and Russia. The symbol of Scotland is a thistle.

The Welsh flag shows a dragon. Saint David, the patron saint of Wales, converted Wales to Christianity and established the Welsh church. Saint David's Day is celebrated on 1 March. The symbol of Wales is a daffodil or leek.

Vocabulary

to represent — представлять

abbreviation — сокращение, аббревиатура

to split — делить на части

county — графство (*административная единица в Великобритании*)

government — правительство

to elect — избирать, выбирать голосованием

to run — вести дела, управлять

rubbish disposal — вывоз мусора

to rule — править, управлять

to belong — принадлежать

chamber — палата

the House of Commons — палата общин (*нижняя палата парламента*)

the House of Lords — палата лордов (*верхняя палата парламента*)

bill — законопроект

law — закон

permanent — постоянный

church — церковь

lawyer — юрист, адвокат

former — бывший

politician — политик

power — власть

signature — подпись

to refuse — отказывать(ся)

to sign — подписывать

cross — крест

patron saint — святой покровитель

to convert — обращать (*в другую веру*)

shamrock — трилистник, клевер (*эмблема Ирландии*)

thistle — чертополох (*эмблема Шотландии*)

to establish — основывать, создавать

daffodil — нарцисс (*эмблема Уэльса*)

leek — лук-порей (*эмблема Уэльса*)

Questions

1. What is the UK? 2. What does the word county mean? 3. What is the role of the Queen in Britain? 4. Who does the real power in Britain belong to? 5. What does the British Parliament consist of? 6. What is the difference between the Commons and the Lords? 7. What do you know about the Union Jack? 8. What do you know about the patron saints in the UK? 9. What do you know about the symbols of the UK? 10. Can you compare British and Russian political systems?

British Character

The British are said to be polite and well-mannered people. Polite words or phrases such as “Please”, “Thank you” and “Excuse me” are used very often in Britain. Queuing is a national habit. At bus stops and cinemas, in shops, banks and post offices and in lots of other places you’ll have to join the queue and wait for your turn. “An Englishman, even if he is alone, forms an orderly queue of one,” said George Mikes.

The British are said to be reserved. They don’t like displaying their emotions even in dangerous and tragic situations. But they are not unemotional. They control their emotions because they are taught that it is best not to show their feelings. The English hardly ever lie, but they don’t tell you the truth either. English people take everything with a sense of humour. You can easily offend them if you tell them they have no sense of humour.

Englishmen tend to be rather conservative, they love familiar things. They are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. Britain has more living symbols of its past than many other countries. Traditional uniforms are still preserved in Great Britain. There are also a lot of traditional ceremonies such as the “Changing of the Guard” at Buckingham Palace, “Trooping the Colour”, which is performed on the Queen’s official birthday, or the “Ceremony of the Keys”, that takes place every night at the Tower of London.

The English are practical and realistic, prudent and careful about almost everything. Everything is orderly: the lawns and the

trees are neatly trimmed. Every Englishman is said to be a countryman at heart. The English countryside is many things to many people. It means peace and quiet, beauty, good health and no crime. Most Englishmen love gardens. Gardening is one of the most popular hobbies among Englishmen. They usually prefer a house with a garden to an apartment in a modern block of flats.

The British people are considered to be the world's greatest tea drinkers. They drink it at meals and between meals. The English tea is usually strong and with milk.

The British love animals very much. Millions of families have "bird-tables" in their gardens. Nearly half of the households in Britain keep at least one pet. The English take good care of their pets. They are pet lovers.

Vocabulary

well-mannered — воспитанный

queue — очередь

to queue — стоять в очереди

habit — привычка

reserved — сдержанный

hardly ever lie — почти никогда не лгут

truth — правда

to offend — обижать

familiar — знакомый

to preserve — сохранять

prudent — благоразумный

Changing of the Guard — смена караула королевских гвардейцев (*торжественная церемония, которая проводится каждое утро во дворе перед Букингемским дворцом*)

Trooping the Colour — вынос знамени (*торжественная церемония развода караулов с выносом знамени, которая проводится в официальный день рождения монарха*)

Ceremony of the Keys — церемония передачи ключей (*проходит в лондонском Тауэре в 10 часов вечера*)

lawn — лужайка

neatly — аккуратно

to trim — подстригать

crime — преступность

block of flats — многоквартирный дом

household — семья

to take care of — заботиться о

Questions

1. Are the British polite? Why? 2. Are the British reserved or communicative? Why? 3. Why are the British people said to be conservative? 4. What traditional British ceremonies do you know? 5. What are traditional British dishes? What do the British like to

drink? 6. Do the British keep everything in order? How can you prove that? 7. Do the British like their countryside? 8. What is their attitude towards animals? 9. Can you describe the British using 3 adjectives? 10. What is your personal attitude towards the British? 11. How different or alike do you think the Russians and the British are?

National Stereotypes

There are certain stereotypes of national character which are well known in Britain. For instance, the Irish are supposed to be great talkers, the Scots have a reputation for being careful with money, the Welsh are renowned for their singing abilities, and the English are considered to be reserved. These characteristics are, of course, only caricatures and are not reliable description of individual people from these countries.

British people give a relatively high value to the everyday personal contacts. Some writers on Britain have talked about the British desire “to belong”, and it is certainly true that the pub, or the working man’s club, or the numerous other clubs devoted to various sports and pastimes play a very important part in many people’s lives. Many people make their social contacts through work and, partly as a result of this, the profession is also important aspect of their sense of identity. British people try to appear as if they belong to as high class as possible, though nobody wants to be thought of as “snobbish”.

The British have few living traditions and are too individualistic to have the same everyday habits as each other. They are rather proud of being different. However, this does not mean that they like change. They don’t. They may not behave in traditional ways, but they like symbols of tradition and stability. The British are rather conservative and their conservatism can combine with their individualism. Why should they change just to be like everyone else? Indeed, as far as they are concerned, not being like everyone else is a good reason not to change. Their driving on the left-hand side of the road is a good example to this. Systems of measurement are another example. The British government has been trying for many years to get British people

to use the same scales that are used nearly everywhere else in the world. But everybody in Britain still shops in pounds and ounces.

The modern British are not really chauvinistic. Open hostility to people from other countries is very rare. If there is any chauvinism at all, it expresses itself through ignorance. Most British people know remarkably little about Europe and who lives there. The popular image of Europe seems to be that it is something to do with the French.

It is probably true that the British, especially the English, are more reserved than the people of many other countries. They find it comparatively difficult to indicate friendship by open displays of affection. For example, it is not the convention to kiss when meeting a friend. Instead, friendship is symbolized by behaving as casually as possible.

The British are comparatively uninterested in clothes. They spend a lower proportion of their income on clothing than people in most European countries do. Many people buy second-hand clothes and are not at all embarrassed to admit this. Of course, when people are “on duty”, they have to obey some quite rigid rules. A male bank employee, for example, is expected to wear a suit with a tie at work. But on Sundays the British like to “dress down”. They can’t wait to take off their respectable working clothes and slip into something really scruffy. In fact, the British are probably more tolerant of “strange” clothing than people in most other countries.

The English people are great pet lovers. Practically every family has a dog or a cat, or both. They have special dog shops selling food, clothes and other things for dogs. There are dog hairdressing saloons and dog cemeteries. Millions of families have “bird-tables” in their gardens. Perhaps, this overall concern for animals is part of the British love for nature.

The British are always talking about the weather. Unlike many others, this stereotype is actually true to life. But constant remarks about the weather at chance meetings are not the result of polite conventions. They are not obligatory. Rather, they are the result of the fact that, on the one hand, to ask personal questions would be rude while, at the same time, silence would also be rude. The weather is a very convenient topic to “fill the gap”.

Vocabulary

for instance — например
to be renowned — быть знаменитым, славиться
reliable — надежный
relatively — относительно
to give a high value — высоко ценить
desire — желание
numerous — многочисленный
identity — индивидуальность, самобытность
snobbish — спесивый, высокомерный
to behave — вести себя
to combine — сочетать, совмещать
indeed — в самом деле
measurement — измерение
government — правительство
scale — шкала, единица измерения
pound — фунт
ounce — унция
chauvinistic — шовинистический, высокомерный, подчеркивающий свое превосходство

hostility — враждебность
comparatively — сравнительно
affection — привязанность
convention — норма, обычай
casually — обычно, небрежно
income — доход
to be embarrassed — смущаться, стесняться
to admit — признавать
to obey — подчиняться
rigid — жесткий
a male bank employee — служащий банка мужского пола
to slip into — накидывать, влезать в
scruffy — неряшливый
tolerant — терпимый
cemetery — кладбище
overall concern — всеобщая забота
unlike — в отличие
remark — замечание
obligatory — обязательный
rather — скорее
rude — грубый
convenient — удобный
to fill the gap — заполнять паузу

Questions

1. What stereotypes of the British national character do you know? 2. Do the British like change? 3. Can you give any examples of the British conservatism? 4. Are the British reserved? 5. What is the attitude of the British people towards clothes? 6. Do the British like animals? 7. Why do the British always talk about the weather? 8. Can you describe the British using 3 adjectives? 9. What is your personal attitude towards the British? 10. How different or alike do you think the Russians and the British are?

What to See in the UK?

There are a lot of interesting places in Great Britain, which are worth visiting. One of the most famous and mysterious archaeological sites of Great Britain is Stonehenge. The huge stones of Stonehenge were transported from Wales and set up in a circle on Salisbury Plain. One of the mysteries is how it was ever built with the technology of that time. Another is its purpose. It appears to function as a kind of astronomical clock and we know it was used by the Druids for ceremonies marking the passing of the seasons. Nowadays every year thousands of young people go to Stonehenge to take part in the midsummer Druid festival, but only a small number of people are allowed near the circle of stones. Stonehenge is fenced off to protect it from damage.

Another mysterious place is Loch Ness, one of the lakes in Scotland, where some people think a large monster lives. The first recorded sighting of Nessie was in the sixth century. But despite scientific expeditions, underwater exploration and millions of tourist photographs, the monster has resisted all attempts to prove — or disprove — her existence. The monster has made Loch Ness the most famous lake in the world. Others are longer, wider and deeper, few are more beautiful, but none has monster to rival Nessie.

The Lake District is the largest National Park in England. It is situated on the northwest side of the Pennine system and contains plenty of beautiful lakes which gave it its name. More picturesque and diverse scenery can be found here than in any other area of Britain. For the lover of outdoor life the Lake District has almost everything. Make your own memories, on foot if you can, when the June days are long, the clouds are high and the hills are free. Perhaps then you may say that the Lake District is the loveliest spot that man has ever found.

Britain is known to be the garden kingdom. There are a lot of extraordinary gardens and parks. Britain's first Safari Park in Longleat is famous for its exotic animals and the world's largest Maze. The Maze was planted in 1975. It consists of over 1,5 miles pathways flanked by yew hedges.

Vocabulary

worth visiting — достойный посещения	despite — несмотря на
mysterious — таинственный	scientific — научный
archeological — археологический	exploration — исследование
site — место	to resist — сопротивляться, противостоять
huge — огромный	attempt — попытка
to set up in a circle — устанавливать в круг	to prove — доказывать
mystery — тайна	to disprove — опровергать
purpose — цель, назначение	existence — существование
It appears to function as ... — Он, по-видимому, может функционировать как...	to rival — соперничать, конкурировать
Druids — друиды, жрецы у древних кельтов	picturesque — живописный
to mark — отмечать	diverse — разнообразный
passing of the seasons — смена времен года	scenery — пейзаж
to allow — разрешать	hills — горы
to fence off — оградить забором	perhaps — возможно
to protect — защищать	spot — место
damage — повреждение, разрушение	extraordinary — необычный
to record — записывать	maze — лабиринт
sighting — обнаружение	to plant — сажать
	pathway — тропинка, дорожка
	flanked — обсаженный, обрамленный
	yew — тис
	hedge — изгородь

Questions

1. Do you know any mysterious places in Great Britain?
2. Would you like to visit them? Why?
3. Are there any mysterious places in Russia?
4. What was Stonehenge used for?
5. Do people believe that a huge monster lives in Loch Ness? What about you?
6. What is the most famous National Park in Great Britain?
7. Why is the Lake District considered to be the loveliest spot in Great Britain?
8. When is the best time to visit the Lake District?
9. Why is Britain said to be the garden kingdom?
10. What is Longleat Safari Park famous for?

Dialogues

1.

— What do you usually imagine when you think of Great Britain?

— Well, I usually imagine the country where it rains all year round. The British Isles have never been famous for good weather.

— Actually, the popular belief that it rains all the time in Britain is simply not true. In fact, London gets no more rain in a year than most other European cities. But the climate in Britain is mild due to the influence of the Gulf Stream. And this mild climate is good for plants.

— Yes, you are right. Britain seems to be a very green country with lots of beautiful gardens and parks. The British love flowers very much and you can see them everywhere. No wonder that some of the flowers have become the symbols of the UK.

— What are they?

— Don't you know? The red rose is the national emblem of England and the daffodil is the national emblem of Wales.

— What about Scotland and Ireland?

— Oh, they have their own emblems, too. The national emblem of Scotland is the thistle and the emblem of Ireland is the shamrock.

— Are there any mountains in Great Britain?

— Yes, but there are not very high. The Highlands of Scotland are among the oldest mountains in the world. They reach their highest point in Ben Nevis. Many valleys between the hills are filled with lakes.

— What is the most famous lake in Scotland?

— The best-known of them is Loch Ness where according to the legend a large monster lives.

— Well, I have never been to Britain, but I hope to go there someday to see everything with my own eyes.

— I completely agree with you. Seeing is believing.

2.

— Hi, Jane. How are you?

— I'm fine, thanks. And you?

— Very well, too. But I have to prepare a report on political system of Great Britain. Can you help me?

- Sure. I'll be glad to help.
- Do you know who the Head of State in Britain is?
- Of course, I know. The Head of State in Britain is the Queen, but in fact she doesn't rule the country as she has no power.
- Really? And who does the real power in the country belong to?
- Well, in Britain it is Parliament that has the power. It makes laws.
- Are the members of Parliament elected by the people?
- You see, Parliament is made up of two chambers — the House of Lords and the House of Commons. The members of the House of Lords are not elected. They qualify to sit in the House because they are bishops of the Church of England, aristocrats, who have inherited their "seats" from their fathers, people with titles or senior judges of the legal system.
- And what about the House of Commons?
- The House of Commons, by contrast, is occupied by Members of Parliament who are elected by the British public every five years.
- How many Members of Parliament are there in the House of Commons?
- There are 651 members in the House. People call them MPs.
- Do the British people elect the Prime Minister?
- No, they don't. The party with most MPs forms the government. The leader of the winning party automatically becomes Prime Minister and appoints the Cabinet.
- The Cabinet? And have you heard anything about the Shadow Cabinet?
- Certainly. The party who comes second is the Opposition and forms its own Shadow Cabinet.
- And what do you know about the British constitution?
- Well, the fact is that Britain doesn't have "a constitution" at all. Of course, there are rules, regulations and procedures for the running of the country — all the things which are known collectively as "the constitution". But there is no single written document which can be called the highest law of the country.
- Thank you very much for your help. I'm sure that my report will be very interesting.
- You are welcome.

3.

— I have always thought that the British differ much from other European people. They are said to be very conservative and reserved. Is that so?

— Well, I've just returned from Great Britain and I can't say that this image is true to life. The British are very polite and they are always helpful and kind to foreigners.

— Yes, they are very well-mannered and they are famous for their love of queuing. Queuing is a national habit in Britain, isn't it?

— Yes, it is, though there are almost no queues in Great Britain. But if there is one, then you'll have to join the queue and wait for your turn. People in Britain will expect you to be polite in the way that is normal to them.

— When I think of the British, I always imagine a man in a bowler hat with a pipe in one hand.

— In fact, this type of hat has not been commonly worn for a long time. But when people are on duty, they have to obey certain rules. Even the bus drivers in Britain wear a white shirt and a tie at work. However, the British are probably more tolerant of "strange" clothing than people in most other countries.

— Do the British always talk about the weather?

— Unlike many others, this stereotype is actually true to life. British weather is never the same two days running. So everyone notices it.

4.

— Mike, you have just returned from Great Britain! What's your impression of this country?

— Well, Britain is a very interesting country. It has more living symbols of the past than many other countries. For example, you can still see the famous red telephone and letter boxes, which were designed in the last century.

— Yes, I've heard that the British are very conservative. They don't like changes.

— Yes, indeed. But the most striking feature of the British people is their politeness. Before going to Britain I had thought that the British were reserved and cold. But that's not true at all. They are always helpful, especially if you speak English.

— People often say that British talk about the weather all the time. Is that so?

— Perhaps, this is an exaggeration, but it is certainly true that the weather is a good way to start a conversation with a stranger.

— By the way, what was the weather like during your journey? Did it rain all the time?

— No, it didn't. Perhaps we were lucky, but the weather was warm and sunny. Spring is the driest season in Great Britain and this is the best time for visiting the UK.

Writing

5 September

Dear Jane,

We're staying at a hotel in Scotland. The weather has been great — really hot and sunny. We've been very lucky so far. Everyone here says that it usually rains in September.

We've done a lot of fascinating things. We've climbed mountains, and we've sailed across one of the lakes. You know that Scotland is famous for its lakes. The best-known of them is Loch Ness where according to the legend a large monster lives. We've already visited that famous lake, but, unfortunately, we haven't seen any monster.

We've also visited some old castles. The most beautiful of them is Stirling Castle. I've taken some great photos with my new camera. The scenery here is really beautiful.

We've had a good time in the evening too. There are a few other teenagers in the hotel, and I've spent the evenings playing table tennis and watching videos with them.

Well, I have to go now. See you at school next week.

Love,

Julia

UNIT 11

THE USA

The United States of America

The United States is situated in the central part of the North American continent (except for Alaska and Hawaii). It is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the east and by the Pacific Ocean in the west. In the north it borders Canada and in the south it borders Mexico. The United States is the fourth largest country in the world after Russia, Canada, and China. It has an area of about 10 million square kilometers and its population is over 270 million people. The great majority of the population is English-speaking Americans. There are many ethnic groups in the United States. The largest group is Black Americans (about 12% of the population).

The US consists of 50 states and the District of Columbia. It is a special federal area where the capital of the country, Washington, is situated. The largest state is Alaska. Hawaii is one of the smallest states; it is a group of islands in the Pacific Ocean. California, New York, Texas, Florida, Pennsylvania, Illinois, Ohio are the most heavily populated states, and Wyoming, Vermont and Alaska are the least populated states. The largest cities are New York, Los Angeles, Chicago, San-Francisco and Philadelphia.

The continental part of the USA consists of 4 geographical parts: 2 highland and 2 lowland regions. The highland regions are the Appalachian Mountains in the east and the Cordillera in the west. The Appalachian Mountains are ancient, strongly destroyed mountains of no great height. The valleys between them are rich in coal. It is the oldest mountain system in the US.

Unlike the Appalachian Mountains of the east, the Cordillera is not a continuous chain. It consists of several high ranges, which are the Rocky Mountains on the east and the Sierra Nevada and the Cascade Range on the west. The Rocky Mountains are considered to be young, high, rough and irregular in shape. Between the Rocky Mountains and the Appalachian Mountains there is the vast Central Plain and the Plateau of Prairies or the Great Plains.

The main rivers of the USA are the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio Grande, the Colorado, the Columbia and the Hudson River. The five Great Lakes, between the USA and Canada, include Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie and Lake Ontario. They are all joined together by short rivers or canals, and the St. Lawrence River joins them to the Atlantic Ocean. The region around the Great Lakes is known for its changeable weather. In the west of the USA there is another lake called the Great Salt Lake.

The USA has many natural resources, such as coal, petroleum and natural gas. The economy of the US is based upon free enterprise.

The United States is one of the few countries in the world that has no “official” national language. The basic language spoken throughout the country is American English. The second language is Spanish.

The main symbol of the USA is the national flag, which is often called “The Stars and Stripes”. As there are 50 states in the USA, there are 50 stars on the American flag. The flag also has 13 stripes: seven red stripes and six white stripes. There is one stripe for each of the first thirteen colonies of the United States. Other most famous symbols of the USA are the bold eagle and the Statue of Liberty, which is situated in New York on Liberty Island.

Vocabulary

to be situated — располагаться

to border — граничить

majority — большинство,
большая часть

island — остров

highland — горная местность,
нагорье

lowland — низина, долина,
низменность

the Appalachian Mountains —
Аппалачи (*горы*)

the Cordillera — Кордильеры (*горы*)

ancient — древний

destroyed — разрушенный

valley — долина

coal — уголь

unlike — в отличие от

continuous chain — непрерывная
(горная) цепь

the Rocky Mountains — Скали-
стые горы

the Sierra Nevada — Сьерра-
Невада (*горы*)

the Cascade Range — Каскадные
горы

to consider — считать

rough — неровный

shape — форма

vast — обширный

the Mississippi — Миссисипи
(*река*)

the Missouri — Миссури (*река*)

the Rio Grande — Рио-Гранде
(река)
the Colorado — Колорадо (река)
the Columbia — Колумбия (река)
the Hudson River — Гудзон (река)
to include — включать

petroleum — нефть
natural gas — природный газ
free enterprise — свободное
предпринимательство
throughout the country — по всей
стране

Questions

1. Where is the USA situated? 2. What's the total area of the country? 3. How many states does the USA consist of? 4. What is the capital of the country? 5. What is the population of the USA? 6. What mountains in the USA do you know? 7. What are the largest rivers? 8. What lakes in the USA do you know? Where are they situated? 9. What is the official national language in the USA? 10. Can you compare the geographical positions of Russia and the USA?

American Climate

The climate of the US is temperate, with four distinct seasons. The USA is a very large country, so it has several different climate zones.

The coldest regions are in the north and northeast, where a lot of snow falls in winter. The climate of Alaska is arctic.

All along the western coast, the temperature changes little between winter and summer months, while in the north central part of the country the temperature difference between winter and summer is very great — 36 degrees centigrade and even more. In all of the heavily populated parts of the United States the summer can be extremely hot, and particularly near the eastern seaboard it is very unpleasant. In the winter, on the other hand, it can be very cold.

The climate along the Pacific coast is much warmer than that of the Atlantic coast. Parts of the Pacific coast are very wet. It is determined by the range of mountains. The west coastal territory is favourable for agriculture.

To the east, beyond the mountains, there is a vast dry region. This dry land extends from Canada to Mexico. But still farther east,

in the southeastern United States, you can find another wet region. On the whole the East is much wetter than the West. The climate of eastern and central America is continental and more resembles that of Russia.

One of the most important geographical boundaries in the United States is the 50-centimeter rainfall line, which runs north and south almost through the middle of the country. East of the line, farming is relatively easy, and the population is relatively large. West of the line, there are irrigation systems, dry-farming, grazing and fewer people.

The south has a subtropical climate. The hottest places are Florida, Texas, New Mexico and Arizona.

Americans can gather several crops a year. They grow wheat and corn (in the north and the northeast), tobacco and cotton (in the southeast), grapes (in the west). In the west cattle breeding is popular (sheep, cows). On the whole agricultural conditions are very favourable.

Vocabulary

temperate — умеренный
extremely — чрезвычайно, очень
particularly — особенно,
в особенности
seaboard — морское побережье
to determine — определять
range — цепь
favourable — благоприятный
agriculture — сельское хозяйство
beyond — за, по ту сторону
vast — обширный
dry — сухой, засушливый
to extend — простирается,
тянуться
farther — дальше
wet — влажный
on the whole — в целом
to resemble — иметь сходство,
напомянуть
boundary — граница
relatively — относительно

rainfall — атмосферные осадки,
количество атмосферных
осадков
irrigation — орошение, ирригация
dry-farming — сухое земледелие,
богарное земледелие
grazing — содержание скота на
пастбище, на подножном
корму
several — несколько
crop — урожай
Americans — *Обратите внима-
ние: названия национально-
стей могут употребляться
как с определенным артиклем,
так и без артикля*
wheat — пшеница
cotton — хлопок
cattle breeding — разведение
крупного рогатого скота
conditions — условия

Questions

1. How can you characterize the climate of the USA? 2. What are the coldest regions in the USA? 3. What are the hottest regions? 4. What regions are the wettest? 5. What region is very dry? 6. Can you compare the agricultural conditions in Russia and in the USA? 7. Compare the climate in the USA and in Russia. Are they different or alike? Why? 8. What kind of weather do you like best of all?

American Political System

After the colonies in America had won the War for Independence, they became free and independent states, but they had a problem: they needed one strong national government. That's why in the year 1787 all the states sent their representatives to Philadelphia where they wrote the Constitution. The Constitution is the highest law in the United States which describes the powers of the state governments.

The US government is like a tree with a strong trunk and three branches. The first branch on the tree of government is Congress. Congress makes the laws that everybody must obey. It meets in the US Capitol in Washington, DC. Congress is divided into two parts, the Senate and the House of Representatives. Every state, no matter how large or small, sends two people to the Senate. These people are called senators. There are one hundred senators in the Senate. A senator's term is six years.

Each state also sends people to the House of Representatives. The number of representatives from each state depends on its population. All in all there are 435 members in the House of Representatives. A representative's term is two years. The Constitution gives many powers to Congress, for example, the power to make laws, to create a court system, to tax people and to declare a war.

The second branch of the government is the President and his helpers. They carry out the laws made by Congress. The President signs bills and then they become law. The Vice President and members of the cabinet help the President to make decisions. The US President represents the country abroad, determines foreign

policy, and he is commander-in-chief of the country's armed forces. The President and Congress work together and check on each other.

A person who wants to become a President must be born in the United States, must be at least 35 years old and must live in the United States for at least 14 years before becoming a President. The President's term is 4 years and one can be a President for one or two terms, but not longer. Americans vote for the President in November of every leap year.

The third branch of the government is the Supreme Court. It is made up of nine judges. The judges work until they retire or die, but they also can be impeached and removed from the position. The main duty of the Supreme Court is to settle disagreements about what the laws mean.

The American Constitution was written more than 200 years ago and it is still working! But the people of the United States can change the Constitution. Changes in the Constitution are called amendments. There are 26 amendments to the Constitution. The first ten amendments are called the Bill of Rights. They were made in 1791. The Bill of Rights guarantees to people of the USA such important rights and freedoms as freedom of press, freedom of religion, the right to go to court, have a lawyer, and some others. Americans are very proud of their Constitution and their political system.

Vocabulary

the War for Independence —

Война за независимость

government — правительство

representative — представитель

law — закон

to describe — описывать

power — полномочие, право, власть

trunk — ствол (*дерева*)

branch — ветвь (*дерева*)

Congress — конгресс

the Senate — сенат

senator — сенатор

term — срок полномочий

to depend on — зависеть от

to create — создавать

to declare — объявлять

to sign — подписывать

bill — законопроект

to represent — представлять

to determine — определять

commander-in-chief — главнокомандующий

armed forces — вооруженные силы

to check — проверять

at least — по крайней мере

to vote — голосовать

leap year — високосный год

Supreme Court — Верховный суд

judge — судья

to retire — уходить на пенсию
или в отставку
to settle disagreements — урегу-
лировать разногласия

amendment — поправка
the Bill of Rights — Билль
о правах
freedom — свобода

Questions

1. Why did the American colonies write a new constitution?
2. What is the first branch of the US government?
3. How many senators are there in the Senate?
4. How long is the senator's term?
5. How many congressmen are there in the House of Representatives?
6. How long is the congressmen's term?
7. What is the second branch of the US government?
8. How long is the President's term?
9. What is the third branch of the US government?
10. How many amendments are there in the Constitution?
11. Which American presidents do you know? Who is the US President now?

American Government

The United States is a representative democracy. All government power rests ultimately with the people who direct policies by voting for government representatives. The nation's Constitution defines the powers of national and state governments, the functions and framework of each branch of government, and the rights of individual citizens.

The principle of limited government is basic to the Constitution. When the Constitution was first written, many Americans feared that government power could become concentrated in the hands of a few. Several features were created to guard against this possibility: 1) the federal organization of government; 2) the separation of powers among different branches of government; and 3) a system of check and balances to restrict the powers of each branch.

Under federalism, the principle of limited government was achieved by dividing authority between the central government and the individual states. The federal (national) government has powers over areas of wide concern. For example, it has the power to control communications among states, provide for the national defense and

declare war. The states possess those powers which are not given to the national government. For example, each state establishes its own government and criminal justice system, conducts elections, establishes public schools, and marriage and divorce laws. There are certain powers, called concurrent powers, which both the federal and state governments share. Examples include the power to tax and set up courts.

Besides the division of power between state and national governments, power is also limited by the separation of power among three branches — legislative, executive and judicial.

The legislative branch is made up of representatives elected to Congress, which consists of two Houses: the Senate and the House of Representatives.

The Senate is not elected nation-widely. Each state, regardless of population, sends two representatives to the Senate. Every two years 1/3 of the Senate stands for election. The vice-president presides over the Senate. However, he may vote only in the event of a tie.

The members of the House of Representatives are elected in proportion to the population, thus the most heavily populated states have more representatives than the sparsely populated states. Each representative is elected to a two-year term. The official presiding in the House is called a speaker.

The main function of the legislative branch is to make laws. Congress has also the power to tax people, to create a courts system and to declare a war. But the power of Congress is limited. The Supreme Court has the power to declare a law made by Congress unconstitutional.

The executive power is vested into the President and his Cabinet that has 14 executive departments and independent government agencies. The President is elected to a four-year term and can be re-elected to a second term. The Constitution gives the President many important powers and duties. As chief executive, the President appoints heads of federal departments and federal judges, puts into life laws made by Congress, calls sessions and delivers messages to Congress. He can veto any bill adopted by Congress. As head of state, the President represents the country abroad, entertains foreign leaders and addresses the public. The President also serves as commander-in-chief of the armed forces and as head of his political

party. The President starts his duties after the inauguration day that takes place at the end of January.

In the USA the President and Congress are elected separately, housed separately, and they operate separately.

The judicial branch is headed by the Supreme Court, whose nine members are appointed for life. Under the Supreme Court there are many state and federal courts. An important function of the judicial branch is to determine whether laws of Congress or actions of President violate the Constitution. The decisions in the Supreme Court are taken by the simple majority, but it's necessary that six judges should be present. The decisions of Supreme Court are final and are not subject to appeal.

The division of government power among three separate but equal branches provides for a system of checks and balances. Each branch checks or limits the power of the other branches. For example, although Congress makes laws, the President can veto them and the Supreme Court checks whether they are constitutional. But even if the President vetoes a law, Congress may check the President by overriding his veto with a two-thirds vote. The Supreme Court can overturn laws passed by Congress, but the selection of federal and Supreme Court judges is made by the other two branches. With this system no branch of government has superior power.

Vocabulary

representative democracy —
представительная демократия

government — правительство

power — власть, полномочие, право

to rest with somebody — быть возложенным на кого-л.

ultimately — в конечном счете, в конце концов

to define — определять

framework — структура

branch — ветвь

several — несколько

feature — черта, особенность

possibility — возможность

separation — разделение

the system of checks and balances

— система «сдержек и противовесов» (*принцип взаимозависимости и взаимограничения законодательной, исполнительной и судебной власти*)

to restrict — ограничивать

authority — власть

to provide for — обеспечивать

defense — оборона

to declare — объявлять

to possess — обладать

to establish — учреждать, основывать
to conduct — проводить
marriage and divorce laws — бракоразводные законы
concurrent — совпадающий
to tax — облагать налогом
division — разделение
legislative — законодательный
executive — исполнительный
judicial — судебный
representative — представитель
in the event of a tie — при равном количестве голосов
regardless of — независимо от
sparsely — редко

term — срок (*полномочий*)
to be vested into — принадлежать
independent — независимый
to appoint — назначать
to deliver — передавать, вручать
message to Congress — послание (президента) конгрессу
to adopt — принимать
inauguration day — день вступления президента США в должность (*20 января*)
to determine — определять
to violate — нарушать
are not subject to appeal — не подлежат обжалованию
to overturn — отвергать, отменять

Questions

1. What does the US Constitution define? 2. What features guard against the concentration of power in the hands of a few? 3. How is power divided between the central government and the individual states? 4. How is power divided among the three branches of government? 5. What is the purpose of legislative branch? 6. What powers does Congress have? 7. What is the purpose of executive branch? 8. What are the duties of the President? 9. What is the purpose of judicial branch? 10. What is the system of checks and balances? 11. Can you compare Russian and American governments?

Political Parties

There are three features that characterize the party system in the USA: 1) two major parties (the Democrats and the Republicans) alternating in power, 2) lack of ideology (except for the Communists), and 3) lack of unity and party discipline.

The United States has had only two major parties throughout its history. When the nation was founded, two political groupings emerged — the Federalists and Anti-Federalists. Since then two major parties have alternated in power.

There are no clear differences between the Republican and Democratic parties. Democrats and Republicans support the same overall political and economic goals. Neither party seeks to shake the foundation of America's economy or social structure. In general, the Republicans tend to be more conservative. They are for business, low taxation and are usually sponsored by upper classes. The Democrats tend to be more liberal and to have more support among the working classes, homeless people, ethnic minorities, because they are for social programs. They are sponsored by trade unions.

There are minor parties, also called "third parties". In most cases minor parties have been assimilated by the larger two or have just faded away.

The main function of the parties is to run the election campaign. The sitting of the convention announces the candidate for the elections. The way candidates are elected explains why two major parties have come to dominate the American political scene. Elections are held according to the single-member district system, based on the principle of "winner takes all". Under this system only one candidate — the one with the most votes — is elected to a given office from any district. Many people will not vote for a minor party candidate; they feel they are throwing away a vote since only one person wins.

The loose organization of America's political parties helps explain the lack of unity within parties. In the USA parties are decentralized. The membership is not fixed. The members of the parties have no membership cards, pay no membership dues and have no obligations to attend meetings or even vote for the party. Disagreement among members of the same party is common.

Political parties, interest groups and elections are opportunities for citizens to participate in the democratic process. Many Americans, however, are politically uninvolved.

Vocabulary

feature — особенность, характерная черта
to alternate — чередоваться, сменять друг друга
lack — недостаток

unity — единство
to emerge — появляться, возникать
goal — цель
to seek — добиваться, жаждать

to shake — потрясать, разрушать
taxation — налогообложение
to assimilate — поглощать
to fade away — постепенно
исчезать
to run the election campaign —
проводить избирательную
кампанию
convention — съезд (*партия*)
to announce — объявлять
district — избирательный
участок, округ

office — должность, пост
loose — свободный, вольный
membership — членство
membership due — членский
взнос
obligation — обязанность
to vote — голосовать
disagreement — разногласия
common — распространенный
citizen — гражданин
uninvolved — не принимающий
участия

Questions

1. What features characterize the party system in the USA?
2. What are the two major parties in the USA? 3. What is the difference
between them? 4. Are there minor parties in the USA? 5. What is
the main function of the parties? 6. Why is there the lack of unity
within parties? 7. Do party members have to pay membership dues
in America? 8. Are all American citizens politically active? 9. Can
you compare Russian and American political parties?

American People

America is a friendly country. People easily start talking with
each other. When Americans meet people for the first time, they
usually shake hands. When they meet friends or relatives they
haven't seen for a long time, they usually kiss them. You can easily
spot Americans abroad by their confident manners which come
from their sense of individual freedom — their first value and
belief.

America is a nation of risk-takers. The first Americans left the
known of the Old World for the unknown of the New. They lived a
hard life, and they had to be tough and self-reliant. So, self-reliance
is usually the second national trait and moral value.

The first immigrants often faced difficult problems which
needed new solutions. So they soon learned to experiment that
led to another American trait, a sense of optimism. Most

Americans are sure that every problem has a solution: a difficult problem can be solved at once; an impossible one may take a little longer.

The third national value is material wealth. Most Americans believe that wealth is a reward for hard work. And of course, they believe in the American Dream “from rags to riches”. Americans are optimistic and persistent. “If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again” is their favorite saying.

Americans are always on the move. Moving about from place to place is such a common practice that most Americans take it for granted that they may live in four or five cities during their lifetime. American people love speed. They like to cook in microwave ovens, they prefer making phone calls to writing letters, and they like to travel by air rather than bus or train.

Americans are patriots. They are proud of their flag and display it in many places. National holidays such as Thanksgiving and Independence Day greatly contribute to this feeling. There is, of course, no typical American, but a certain stereotype does exist. In my opinion, Americans are open-hearted, straightforward, cheerful, relaxed and tough.

Vocabulary

to spot — распознавать, узнавать

confident — уверенный

freedom — свобода

value — ценность

belief — убеждение

tough — крепкий, выносливый, упорный

self-reliant — полагающийся на свои собственные силы

self-reliance — уверенность в себе, в своих силах

trait — черта характера

solution — решение

wealth — богатство, благосостояние

to believe — верить

reward — награда

from rags to riches — из нищеты в роскошь, из грязи в князи

persistent — упорный, настойчивый

to succeed — добиваться успеха, преуспевать

common — распространенный

to take for granted — считать само собой разумеющимся

to contribute — способствовать

open-hearted — чистосердечный, открытый

straightforward — прямой,

откровенный, прямодушный

cheerful — жизнерадостный

relaxed — раскованный

Questions

1. Can you prove that America is a friendly country? 2. What is the first American value and belief? Why? 3. What is the second national trait? 4. What is the American Dream? 5. American people love speed, don't they? Can you prove that? 6. Are Americans patriots? Why do you think so? 7. How can you characterize American people using 3 adjectives? 8. Can you compare the Russian and American people?

American Values and Beliefs

You can easily spot Americans abroad by their toughness. It comes from their sense of individual freedom — their first value and belief. Americans realize, however, that individuals must rely on themselves; otherwise they risk losing their freedom. They must come to both financial and emotional independence from their parents as early as possible, usually by age of 18 or 21. So, self-reliance usually is the second trait and moral value supposed to be obligatory to a true American.

It designates the ability of succeeding on one's own. "Pull yourself up by the bootstraps" is their saying as well as "Life is what you make it" and "Actions speak louder than words".

The third national value accounts for their confident and unaffected manners. It's an old belief that everyone in America has equal opportunity to succeed and equal chance for success. This value was particularly true at the times of settlers' moving west to make a new beginning. The differences in wealth were little at that time, so their fortune depended only on their industry. But if everybody had chance to better his living conditions, then everybody's duty was to try, which led to the overall competition with one another. And up to now people who compete successfully are honored and called "winners". Those who do not like to compete and are failures are dishonored and called "losers".

Here we come to the fourth American value — competition. Sixty per cent of the Americans believe that competition and desire to win is healthy and desirable. So you can hardly see a person wishing to look incapable or "a loser".

The fifth national value is material wealth. Most Americans believe wealth is a reward for hard work and that is possible to have a good standard of living if a person works hard. But gaining wealth goes along with self-improvement of a person. "God helps those who help themselves," says the proverb. As for the American Dream "from rag to riches", it is still alive! And it goes on attracting immigrants from all over the world.

The sense of humor is highly valued in America. Humor is the great reliever of tension, the counterbalance to the dash and roar of our industrialized life with its whirring machines, traffic snarls and frayed tempers. American humor confirms the importance of mating and the family, the high status of women and children, the pace and tension of life.

Americans love children, animals, gadgets, mother, work, excitement, noise, nature, television, shows, comedy, installment buying, fast motion sports, the flag, Christ, jazz, shapely women and muscular men, crowds, beefsteak, coffee, ice cream, do-it-yourself.

Vocabulary

to spot — распознавать, узнавать

toughness — твердость, несгибаемость

value and believe — ценить и верить

to rely — полагаться

self-reliance — независимость, уверенность в своих силах

trait — черта характера

obligatory — обязательный

to designate — определять

pull yourself up by the bootstraps — вытаскивать себя за волосы

to account for — объяснять

confident — уверенный

unaffected — естественный, непосредственный

equal — равный

fortune — состояние, богатство

industry — трудолюбие

overall — всеобщий

failure — неудачник

incapable — неспособный

material wealth — материальное благополучие

reward — награда

to go along with — сопровождать

self-improvement — самосовершенствование

from rags to riches — из нищеты в роскошь, из грязи в князи

to attract — привлекать

humor — юмор

counterbalance — противовес

dash and roar — натиск и рев

whirring — шумный

snarl — затор, пробка

frayed tempers — раздражительность

to confirm — подтверждать
mating — брак
pace — темп
tension — напряжение
gadget — техническое новшество

installment — рассрочка, кредит
motion — вождение
shapely — стройный
do-it-yourself — самодельные
вещи

Questions

1. What are the main traits of character of a true American? 2. What is the sense of individual freedom for Americans? 3. How old are usually Americans when they come to financial and emotional independence? 4. What value accounts for their confident and unaffected manners? 5. Do Americans like to compete? Why? 6. Is the American Dream “from rags to riches” still alive? 7. What is humor for Americans? 8. What does American humor confirm? 9. What do Americans love?

Dialogues

1.

— Hello! How are you?

— Hi! I'm fine, thanks. And you?

— Oh, I have a problem. I need to prepare a report about the geographical position of the USA. Could you help me, please?

— OK. First of all, the USA is the fourth largest country in the world after Russia, Canada and China. It is situated in the central part of the North American continent excluding Alaska and Hawaii.

— And the USA is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the east and by the Pacific Ocean in the west. In the north it borders Canada and in the south it borders Mexico. Is that so?

— Right. Besides, it also has a sea border with Russia.

— And what are the main mountains and rivers in the USA?

— The main rivers are the Mississippi, the Rio Grande, the Missouri, the Columbia and others. And the main mountains are the Appalachian Mountains, the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada.

— And what about the climate of the USA?

— The climate in the USA varies greatly. There are four climatic zones: arctic, continental, marine and subtropical. The climate

along the Pacific coast is much warmer than that of the Atlantic coast.

— OK, thank you for your help. Bye!

— Bye!

2.

— If you had a chance to visit an English-speaking country, which one would you go to?

— As for me, I'd like to visit the USA.

— Why have you chosen this country?

— America is a great country with great history. But the main reason for my visit is that I'd like to listen to American speech because it differs a lot from standard British English we are used to. Besides, I'd like to visit Niagara Falls and Disneyland.

— I completely agree with you that the USA is a great country. It is the fourth largest country in the world so its territory varies greatly in climate and relief. If you travel across the country, you will go over mountain ranges and cross hundreds of rivers.

— Well, as far as American landscape is concerned, the USA greatly resembles a giant plate with Central Lowland and Great Plains in the middle. The plate's fringes rise gradually towards the Appalachians in the east, to the Cordillera in the west and to the Canadian Shield in the north.

— And what about the south? There are no mountain chains in the south, are there?

— No, there aren't. The plate opens to the Gulf Coastal Plain which connects with the Atlantic Coastal Plain.

— You describe it so vividly that I'll remember it for the rest of my life.

— I'm fond of geography, besides I'm really interested in the USA I want to know everything about this wonderful country.

— Then you can tell me about the climate of this country, can't you?

— The climate of the United States is extremely diverse. While people go to the beach in Florida, California and Hawaii, others in Alaska, the midwest and the northeast are wearing thick coats and trying to keep warm.

— So the climate in the USA resembles Russia's. Is that so?

— Well, I wouldn't say that. Of course, the climate in Russia is also very diverse, but you shouldn't forget that Russia is one of the

world's coldest and most northern countries. So the climate in the USA is much warmer than that in Russia, so American crops yield more bountifully.

— That explains why America is one of the richest countries in the world.

— I think that the main reason is in the people. Americans are very hard-working and persistent. “If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again” is their favourite saying.

— Oh, you know so much about America and its people that listening to you I feel like a traveller. Now I also want to visit this wonderful country.

3.

— What do you know about the political system of the USA?

— The US government is like a tree with a strong trunk and three brunches. The trunk is the people. It holds up the tree: without the support of the people there can be no government. People choose those who make American laws.

— And what is the first branch of American government?

— The first branch of American government is Congress. Congress is divided into two parts, the Senate and the House of Representatives.

— How many representatives does every state send to the House of Representatives and to the Senate?

— Every state sends two people to the Senate. Each state also sends people to the House of Representatives. The larger states have more congressmen than the smaller states.

— What are the next two branches of American government?

— The second branch is the President and his helpers and the third branch is the Supreme Court.

— What can you say about the Constitution of the USA?

— Americans are very proud of their Constitution. But the people of the United States can change the Constitution. Changes in the Constitution are called amendments. There are 26 amendments to the Constitution. The first ten amendments are called the Bill of Rights.

— Thank you very much for your help.

— You are welcome.

4.

— What do you think is the main trait of character of a true American?

— I think that their first value and belief is their sense of individual freedom.

— I completely agree with you. And they realize that individuals must rely on themselves, otherwise they risk losing their freedom.

— So, self-reliance is usually the second trait and moral value supposed to be obligatory to a true American. The third national value accounts for their confident and unaffected manners. It's the old belief that everyone in America has equal opportunity to succeed.

— But if everybody has a chance to better his living conditions, then everybody's duty is to try, which leads to the overall competition with one's another. So the fourth American value is competition.

— And what is the fifth national value then?

— I think that the fifth national value is material wealth. Most Americans believe wealth is a reward for hard work and that it is possible to have a good standard of living if a person works hard. Gaining wealth goes along with self-improvement of a person. "God helps those who help themselves," says the proverb.

— And what about the great American Dream "from rag to riches"?

— Oh, it is still alive by far. It goes on attracting immigrants from all over the world.

— Have Americans got a sense of humour?

— Of course, they have. American humour confirms the importance of mating and the family, the high status of women and children, the pace and tension of life.

— So the main traits of a true American are their sense of individual freedom and self-reliance as well as a great desire to succeed and to become rich.

— What's your personal opinion of Americans?

— I think they are open-hearted and tough people.

Writing

1.

1 July 2005

Dear Mary,

How are you? I am fine! I am very glad to be taking part in the Student's Exchange Program, because now I am able to learn more about America and its people.

What's your idea of a typical American teenager? A rich kid with his own car? A girl whose parents let her do anything she likes? A drug addict? Well, may be you have been watching too much television. Because the real life here is not quite like we expected it to be.

Most teenagers do not have enough money to own a car. Drugs, of course, is a serious problem, but the truth is that fewer and fewer young Americans are trying them. Typical American teenagers are in fact very ordinary. They think their teachers make them work too hard and their friendships are the most important things in their lives.

Most young people take jobs while they are in school. They work at movie theatres, fast-food restaurants, gas stations and stores to pay for their clothes and entertainment. May be this is what makes them so independent from their parents at such a young age.

It's not always easy to keep a job and still do well in school. But American teenagers learn early that you have to work hard to win. So, winning, in fact, is part of the American way of life.

It was very difficult for me to adapt to a very different way of life. But my host family are very friendly to me and always help me. Living in another country is an incredible experience.

When I return to Russia, I'll try to apply that knowledge.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Lots of love,

Ann

2.

Alexander Ivanov
Flat 11
25 Novokuznetskaya Street
Moscow 126574
Russia

15 May 2005

Dear Alex,

Hi! How are you? I am staying with my friends in the USA. They live in Florida. It is called the Sunshine State because of its warm climate. Can you imagine that oranges grow here all year round, even in winter?

At the moment I am sitting on the beach and drinking orange juice. The sun is shining and it's very hot. I wish you were here with me! It would be really great!

Bye,

Michael

UNIT 12

CANADA, AUSTRALIA, NEW ZEALAND

Canada

Canada is a constitutional monarchy, an independent federal state and parliamentary democracy with two official languages and two systems of law: civil law and common law, a member of the Commonwealth. It is the second largest country in the world. Its area is 9,976,000 square kilometers. Its population is about 30.1 million. The capital of Canada is Ottawa.

The country is situated in North America. It is bordered in the north by the Arctic Ocean, in the east by the Atlantic Ocean, in the south by the United States and in the west by the Pacific Ocean and Alaska.

In the center there is a great plain the Canadian Shield. It has many lakes and is rich in minerals. More than half of the population lives in the St. Lawrence Lowlands, between Quebec and Lake Huron. West of the Canadian Shield as far as the Rocky Mountains are the Great Plains or prairies, fertile farming lands. North of the prairies are the Northwest Territories, wild areas where few people live. In the west are the Rocky Mountains, the Coast Mountains and the Selkirks; the highest peak, Mount Logan, is in the Yukon territory. There are many rivers in Canada, and among them are the St. Lawrence, the Mackenzie, the Saskatchewan, the Columbia and the Yukon.

Climate, while generally temperate, varies from freezing winter cold to blistering summer heat.

Canada's natural vegetation can be best described as falling into five areas: the boreal forest, the forests of the southeast and the southwest, the grasslands and the tundra.

Government. Canada is a federative state consisting of ten provinces and three territories. Canadian provinces are: Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, Ontario, Prince Edward Island, Quebec and Saskatchewan. There are three large northern territories — Yukon,

the Northern Territories and Nunavut, which mainly lie north of the 60th parallel.

Head of State is Queen of Britain, represented by Governor General. Head of Government is Prime Minister. The roots of Canada's parliamentary system lie in Britain. The Canadian Parliament consists of the Senate (the Upper House) and the House of Commons.

The Senate is patterned after the British House of Lords. Its 104 members are appointed, not elected, and are divided essentially among Canada's four main regions of Ontario, Quebec, the West and the Atlantic Provinces. The Senate has the same powers as the House of Commons, with a few exceptions.

The House of Commons is the major law-making body. It has 301 members, one from each of the 301 electoral districts. The representatives are elected every five years.

But the real executive power is in the hands of the Cabinet under the Prime Minister. Strictly speaking, the Prime Minister and the Cabinet are the advisers of the monarch. However, the real power belongs to the Cabinet, and the Governor General acts on its advice. The Cabinet develops government policy and is responsible to the House of Commons.

Canada is a young country, but it has a legal system rich in tradition. Common law, which is used in all provinces except Quebec, is based on principles that were developed in medieval England. The principles of Quebec's civil law date back to the Roman Empire and reflect many principles of French law. The supreme law of the country is Canada's Constitution. In 1982 the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms became a fundamental part of the Canadian Constitution. The Charter sets out the basic rights and liberties of each person in Canada, which must be respected by all governments.

Languages. English and French are both official languages, but 20% of the population speaks only French. Tension between French-speaking Quebec and the other nine provinces where English is the majority language remains high.

Economy. Since the Second World War more people have worked in manufacturing than in agriculture. But farming is still important: cereals, dairy products, fruit, wool, fur. One of the most important industries is the manufacture of wood pulp and paper.

In the 20th century Canada became an industrial country with highly developed agriculture.

Largest cities. The largest cities are Ottawa, Montreal, Toronto, Vancouver, Edmonton, Calgary.

Vocabulary

independent — независимый

Commonwealth — (Британское)

Содружество

civil law — гражданское право

common law — общее право

to border — граничить

plain — равнина

Canadian Shield — Канадская возвышенность

prairies — прерии

fertile farming land — плодородная сельскохозяйственная земля

temperate — умеренный

blistering — мучительный

peak — пик

natural vegetation — природная растительность

boreal forest — северный лес

grasslands — пастбище, луг

root — корень

to lie — лежать

to pattern — делать по образцу, копировать

to appoint — назначать

to divide — делить

essentially — по существу

law-making body — законодательный орган

executive power — исполнительная власть

adviser — советник

to be responsible — быть ответственным

supreme law — высший закон

medieval — средневековый

to date back to — относиться (еще) к

Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms — Хартия прав и свобод Канады

to set out — излагать

to respect — уважать

tension — напряжение

agriculture — сельское хозяйство

to manufacture — изготавливать

cereals — злаки

wool — шерсть

fur — мех

Questions

1. What other countries are the members of the Commonwealth? 2. What is the capital of Canada? 3. What is the second largest country in the world? 4. What is Canada bordered by? 5. What rivers in Canada do you know? 6. What do you know about the climate of the country? 7. What do you know about the system of power in Canada? 8. How many provinces and territories are there in Canada? 9. What do you know about the Constitution of Canada? 10. What languages are spoken in the country?

The Symbols of Canada

The search for a new Canadian flag started in 1925 (they used the British flag, the Union Jack). But the work wasn't completed.

Later, in 1946, a parliamentary committee was appointed and received more than 2,600 designs. Still, the Parliament of Canada was never called upon to vote on a design.

Only in 1964, after eliminating various proposals, the House of Commons and the Senate approved the national flag of Canada. The design consists of a red flag with a single red maple leaf on a white square.

The official ceremony inaugurating the new Canadian flag was held on Parliament Hill in Ottawa on February 15, 1965, with the General Governor, the Prime Minister, the members of the Cabinet and thousands of Canadians.

The approved design was based on Canadian history. The combination of red, white and red first appeared in the General Service Medal issued by Queen Victoria. Red and white were proclaimed Canada's national colours by King George V in 1921. All Canadian Olympic athletes have worn the single red maple leaf on a white field as Canada's emblem since 1904.

The Union Jack may be displayed with the Canadian flag at the National War Memorial and in connection with ceremonies in which Canadian forces participated with other Commonwealth forces.

The present design of the coat of arms in Canada was approved in 1994. The design reflects the royal symbols of Great Britain and France: the three royal lions of England, the royal lion of Scotland, the royal fleurs-de-lis of France and the royal Irish harp of Tara. On the bottom of the shield is a sprig of three Canadian maple leaves representative of Canadians of all origins. Canada's motto "A Mari usque ad Mare" (from sea to sea) is written on the coat of arms.

The national anthem of Canada is called "O Canada". It was proclaimed Canada's national anthem on July 1, 1980, a century after it was first sung on June 24, 1880. The music was composed by Calixa Lavallée, a well-known composer. French lyrics to accompany the music were written by Sir Adolphe-Basile Routhier. Many English versions have appeared over the years. Mr. Justice Robert Stanley Weir wrote the version on which the official English lyrics are based in 1908. The official English version includes

changes recommended in 1968 by a Special Joint Committee of the Senate and the House of Commons. The French lyrics remain unaltered.

Vocabulary

search — поиск
to complete — завершать, заканчивать
to be appointed — быть назначенным
to approve — одобрять
to inaugurate — проводить инаугурацию
medal — медаль
maple leaf — кленовый лист
to display — выставлять
to participate — принимать участие
coat of arms — герб
to reflect — отражать

royal — королевский
harp of Tara — арфа Тары (гора, религиозный и культурный центр древней Ирландии)
fleurs-de-lis — геральдические лилии
bottom — низ
shield — щит
origin — происхождение
motto — девиз
anthem — гимн
to proclaim — провозглашать
to compose — сочинять
version — вариант
lyrics — лирические стихи
unaltered — неизменный

Questions

1. What do you know about the Canadian flag? 2. When did it appear? 3. What was the approved design of flag based on? 4. May the Union Jack be displayed with the Canadian flag? 5. When was the present design of the coat of arms approved? 6. What do you know about the coat of arms of Canada? 7. What motto is written on the coat of arms? 8. What do you know about the national anthem of Canada?

Canada's Inventions

Canada has been home to a surprising number (relative to population) of world renowned inventors. Here are just some things that have been invented in Canada or by its citizens.

The first long-distance telephone calls were made by Alexander Graham Bell between the Ontario and Brantford, and between Brantford and Paris in 1876.

The world's first commercial fiber optics telecommunications network was 3,268 kilometers system created by Sask Tel in Saskatchewan in 1982.

The world's first documentary film was "Nanook of the North", which was shot in Canada by Robert Flaherty in 1922.

Kerosene was developed by Abraham Gesner of Cornwallis, Nova Scotia, and its lighting properties were demonstrated in Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island, in 1846.

Henry Woodward of Toronto invented the first electric light bulb in 1874. He later sold a share in his patent to Thomas Edison, who designed a more practical bulb in 1879.

The greatest contribution to nuclear theory at a Canadian university was Ernest Rutherford's theory of atomic structure, which he developed at McGill University in 1902. It earned him the Nobel Prize in 1908.

The first frozen food sold to the public was Ice Fillets frozen fish, which went on sale in Halifax, Nova Scotia, in 1929.

J. J. Wright of Toronto built the first electric railway with overhead wires.

Hockey is known to have been played in Halifax and Kingston in the 1850s. The first public exhibition of the modern game took place at Victoria Rink in Montreal in 1875.

Basketball was invented by James Naismith of Almonte, Ontario, and first played at Springfield, Massachusetts, where Naismith was a physical education instructor, in 1892.

Doctors Frederick Banting and Charles Best, both of Ontario, discovered insulin in 1921.

Less known inventions: ear piercer, roller skate, snowmobile, table hockey, washing machine, zipper.

Vocabulary

relative to population — относительно численности населения

renowned inventor — известный изобретатель

long-distance telephone call — междугородный или международный телефонный звонок

fiber optics telecommunications network — система волоконной оптики

to be shot — снятый (*о фильме*)

kerosene — керосин

to develop — разрабатывать

lighting property — свойство воспламеняться

electric light bulb — электрическая лампа
share — доля, часть
contribution — вклад
atomic structure — структура атома
to earn — зарабатывать
Ice Fillets frozen fish — замороженное рыбное филе
electric railway — электрическая железная дорога

overhead wires — провода наверху
physical education instructor — инструктор по физкультуре
ear piercer — устройство для прокалывания ушей
roller skating — катание на роликах
zipper — молния

Questions

1. What do you know about Alexander Graham Bell? 2. When and where was the first documentary film shot? 3. Who developed kerosene? 4. Where do people use kerosene? 5. Who and where invented the first electric light bulb? 6. What did Thomas Edison do? 7. Where did Ernest Rutherford develop his theory of atomic structure? 8. Where was the first electric railway with overhead wires built? 9. Where did the first public exhibition of hockey take place? 10. What other inventions developed in Canada or by its citizens do you know?

Australia

Australia is an island continent located in the Southern Hemisphere. It is washed by three oceans and four seas. It is bounded on the north by the Torres Strait and the Timor Sea, on the east by the Coral and Tasman seas, and on the south and west by the Indian Ocean. The continent and the island of Tasmania and a number of smaller islands make up the Commonwealth of Australia.

It is independent federative state and the member of the Commonwealth headed by the British Queen. The population of the country is 18,000,000. The capital of the country is Canberra. Australia occupies 7,687,000 square kilometres and is almost as large as the continental US. It is twice the size of Western Europe. It is about 25 times larger than Britain and Ireland. It is the sixth largest country in the world.

Australia is the world's flattest and driest continent. It is the biggest island and the smallest continent in the world.

Australia's main regions are an ancient western plateau, which covers more than half of the continent; the central plains; the Great Dividing Range in the east, which rises to 2,230 m high (Mount Kosciusko); the Eastern coastal plain, where most of the large towns are; and the tropical northeast coast. The centre of the continent is taken by the deserts: Great Sandy Desert, Great Victoria Desert, Simpson Desert. There are few rivers and lakes in Australia. The best-known river is the Murray (2,600 km). The longest is the Darling (2,740 km).

Australia is in the Southern Hemisphere, so the seasons are the other way round. Summer is from December to February, autumn is from March to May, winter is from June to August, and spring is from September to November. Most of the country weather is characterized by clear skies and low rainfall. The climate of Australia ranges from the tropical regions of the Northern Territory to the cool temperature conditions in the southeast (Victoria, Tasmania), where it frequently snows in winter. The tropical northern region has only two seasons: a hot, wet season with rains in February and March, and a warm, dry season.

There are six states and two territories in Australia. Two territories and their capitals are Northern Territory (Darwin) and Australian Capital Territory (Canberra). The states and their capitals are New South Wales (Sydney), Western Australia (Perth), Tasmania (Hobart), the State of Victoria (Melbourne), South Australia (Adelaide) and Queensland (Brisbane). New South Wales is the first state in Australia. It has the biggest population, it is most industrialized and is a leader in agriculture. Its population is about 6 million people. Sixty per cent of it lives in its capital, Sydney.

The largest state is Western Australia, but it is very sparsely populated: its population is about 1.7 million people. Queensland is the second largest state. Its population is 3.2 million people. The state of Victoria is the smallest.

Government. Head of state is Queen of Britain. The Queen is represented by Governor General and six State Governors. Head of government is Prime Minister. Federal Parliament is a legislative body. It consists of the Senate and the House of Representatives. There are 76 senators, elected for 6-year term. The House of

Representatives consists of 148 members elected every three years. Each state and territory have their own local government. Each state is headed by a governor, has its executive, legislative and judicial systems, modelled on those of the federal government. Each territory has its own legislative assembly.

Languages. English and aboriginal languages are state languages. There is no aboriginal language which is spoken by all aborigines. There are many different tribal languages. But many aboriginal languages are dying nowadays, that's why an aboriginal language is taught as a second language to aboriginal children living in the cities.

Economy. Australia is one of the ten foremost countries in terms of its level of economic development. Agriculture and mining industry are highly developed. Australia exports beef, lamb, wool and wheat. The country is self-sufficient in food. It is rich in minerals such as lead, copper, iron ore, gold, silver, tin, uranium and others.

Big cities are Canberra, Sydney, Melbourne, Brisbane, Adelaide, Perth, Hobart, Darwin.

Vocabulary

a number — ряд
Commonwealth of Australia — Австралийский Союз
twice the size — в два раза больше
flat — плоский
dry — сухой
plateau — плато
plain — равнина
the Great Dividing Range — Большой Водораздельный хребет
coastal — береговой
desert — пустыня
hemisphere — полушарие
skies — небо
rainfall — количество осадков
wet — влажный
sparsely populated — редконаселенный
executive — исполнительный

legislative body — законодательный орган
judicial — юридический
to be headed — возглавляемый
a great variety — большое разнообразие
aborigine — абориген
tribal language — язык племени
level — уровень
beef — говядина
lamb — баранина
wool — шерсть
wheat — пшеница
self-sufficient — самодостаточный
lead — свинец
copper — медь
iron ore — железная руда
tin — олово
uranium — уран

Questions

1. Where is Australia situated? 2. How many oceans and seas is it washed by? 3. What is the population of the country? 4. What is the capital of Australia? 5. What do you know about the climate of the country? 6. How many states and territories are there in the country? 7. What states do you know? 8. What territories do you know? 9. What do you know about the government of the country? 10. What do you know about the economy of Australia?

The Symbols of Australia

Australian national flag consists of five white stars of the Southern Cross and the white Commonwealth star (the large seven-pointed star) on a blue background with a miniature Union Jack. The Southern Cross is the southern constellation Crux, whose four chief stars are in the form of a cross.

The flag of Australia is the only one to fly over the whole continent. The small Union Jack represents the historical link with Britain, the large seven-pointed star represents the six states and the Territories, and the small stars form the Southern Cross — a prominent feature of the Southern Hemisphere night sky.

Distinctive Australian flora and fauna are reflected in the country's coat of arms by the symbols of Australia's endemic animals, kangaroo and emu, and a twig of wattle (a kind of acacia).

Australia officially adopted green and gold as its national colours in 1984.

The Australia national anthem was adopted in the 1970s. It is "Advance Australia Fair". However, the popular song "Waltzing Matilda" is often played at international gatherings.

The national anthem is used in all official and ceremonial occasions. The vice-regal salute for the Governor General consists of the first bars and the last four bars of Advanced Australia Fair.

The royal anthem "God save the Queen" is used only in the presence of the Queen or a member of the royal family on appropriate formal occasions.

Vocabulary

cross — крест
seven-pointed star — семиконечная звезда
background — задний план
miniature — миниатюрный
constellation Crux — созвездие Южного Креста
chief — основной
link — связь
prominent — выдающийся
distinctive — характерный
coat of arms — герб
endemic — свойственный данной местности
acacia — акация

to adopt — принимать
anthem — гимн
Advanced Austria Fair — «Вперед, прекрасная Австралия» (название гимна)
vice-regal — вице-королевский
bar — такт
appropriate — соответствующий, подходящий
Waltzing Matilda — «Вальсирующая Матильда» (песня, содержание которой отражает историю Австралии; без этой песни не обходится ни одно торжество)

Questions

1. How many stars are there on the flag? 2. Why are there five stars on the flag? 3. What do they show? 4. What part of the flag represents the historical link with Britain? 5. What do you know about the coat of arms of Australia? 6. What are national colours of Australia? 7. When was the Australian national anthem adopted? 8. When is the royal anthem “God save the Queen” used?

Plants and Animals in Australia

Australia has 20,000 species of plants and wildflowers such as the red and green kangaroo paw. There are 700 species of acacia and 1,200 species of eucalyptuses. Many of the trees lose their bark and a lot of flowers have no smell. Among the eastern coast and in Tasmania there are forests of pine, which rank second to the eucalyptus in economic importance. The tropical northeast belt with its heavy rainfall and high temperatures is heavily forested. There are a lot of bush lands in the coast of the country.

Australia states and territories have their own floral emblems: the common pink heath is the emblem of Victoria, waratah is the emblem of New South Wales, Cooktown Orchid is the emblem of

Queensland, Sturt's desert pea is the emblem of South Australia, blue gum is the emblem of Tasmania, rose is the emblem of Northern Territory, red and green kangaroo paw is the emblem of Western Australia.

Australia's best-known animals are the kangaroo, koala, dingo (wild dog), Tasmanian devil (marsupial), wombats (bear-like marsupials), spiny anteater (or echidna) and many others.

Two thirds of Australian native mammals are marsupials. The only egg-laying mammals in the world come from Australia, they are the platypus and echidna. Though the emu and the kangaroo are the symbols of Australia, there is less exotic animal, which also symbolizes the country. It is a sheep. There is a monument to sheep in one of the Australian cities. Nowadays there are about 150 million sheep in the country. Australia produces one fourth of the world's wool production.

There are more than 700 bird species in Australia. Some of Australia's best-known birds are the emu (which cannot fly, it is related to the ostrich), the lyrebird, bowerbird, kookaburra (or laughing jackass), many varieties of cockatoos and parrots and many others. Australia's coastal waters and rivers contain many varieties of fish.

There are many national parks in Australia, Lichfield National Park is among them. There one can observe different plants and animals.

There are animal and bird emblems for Australia states and Territories. They are: platypus and kookaburra for New South Wales, possum and honeyeater for Victoria, koala for Queensland, wombat and a piping shrike for South Australia, numbat and black swan for Western Australia. Unofficial emblems for Australia are the red kangaroo and emu.

Vocabulary

species — вид(ы)

kangaroo paw — цветок, по форме напоминающий лапку кенгуру (*цветок зеленого цвета на красном стебле*)

bark — кора

pine — сосна

to rank — занимать место

eucalyptus — эвкалипт

bush lands — некультивированная земля, покрытая кустарником

belt — пояс

heath — вереск

orchid — орхидея
desert pea — горох, растущий в пустыне
gum — камедное дерево
marsupial — сумчатый
koala — коала (*небольшой бесхвостый сумчатый медведь*)
wombat — вомбат
spiny anteater — колючий муравьед
mammal — млекопитающее
platypus — утконос

ostrich — страус
lyrebird — лирохвост
bowerbird — шалашник
kookaburra (laughing jackass) — кукабара, большой австралийский зимородок
cockatoo — какаду
possum — опоссум
honeyeater — медосос
piping shrike — насвистывающий сорокопуд
numbat — сумчатый муравьед
swan — лебедь

Questions

1. How many species of plants and wildflowers are there in Australia? 2. What floral emblems do Australia states and Territories have? 3. What are Australia's best-known animals? 4. How many Australian endemic mammals are marsupials? 5. What are the only egg-laying mammals in the country? 6. What Australia's animals do you know? 7. How many birds are there in Australia? 8. What are Australia's best-known animals? 9. What do you know about these animals? 10. What are animal and bird emblems for Australia states and Territories?

New Zealand

New Zealand is an island nation, situated between the Equator and the South Pole in the southern Pacific Ocean. It is situated the same distance east from Australia as London is from Moscow. The distance between the two countries is about 1,600 kilometres. The countries are separated by the Tasman Sea. Its nearest neighbours to the North are New Caledonia, Fiji and Tonga.

New Zealand includes two main and a number of smaller islands. Each of the two main islands (North and South Islands) is hilly and mountainous. The main mountain ranges are on the South Island and include the Southern Alps, in which 20 peaks exceed 3,000 metres. The highest peak is Mount Cook on South Island.

A volcanic plateau is in the centre of North Island. There are three active volcanoes in North Island, and the Rotorua district is known for its geysers and hot springs. Volcanic action also played a part in the formation of the islands, especially on the North Island, where the process still continues. Earthquakes are frequent there. As a result of the movement of these tectonic plates many mountains have been lifted above the lowlands or reduced. In 1991 an avalanche reduced the highest peak, Mount Cook, from 3,764 metres to 3,754 metres.

New Zealand has an oceanic climate, without extremes of heat or cold. Snow is common only in the mountains. The eastern lowlands include the driest and sunniest climates.

The population of the country is small, 3.6 million people. Three fourths of New Zealanders live on North Island. The largest centre of population is Auckland. The capital of the country is Wellington.

New Zealand is an independent state and a member of the Commonwealth. The British monarch is head of state, represented by Governor General. As in Great Britain, the legislature is called the Parliament. In New Zealand the Parliament consists of a single chamber, the House of Representatives. Its members are elected every three years. There are 120 members in the House of Representatives. The leader of the party in power becomes the Prime Minister, who heads the formal Executive Council. There are 38 government departments in the country. Most ministers have charge of more than one department.

The Parliament seats in Wellington in the building which is called the Beehive because of its form. The Prime Minister's residence in Wellington is known as Vogel House.

New Zealand's dairy industry is considered to be the most efficient. The export of dairy products is the largest in the world despite the country's small size and population. Other industries are textiles, machinery, fish, forest products. Agriculture is highly industrialized. New Zealand is often called the sheep farm of Great Britain.

The largest cities of the country are Wellington, Auckland, Christchurch.

English and Maori are the official languages, also English is the main language.

Vocabulary

Equator — экватор

Pole — полюс

neighbour — сосед

distance — расстояние

mountain range — горная цепь

mountainous — гористый

to exceed — превышать

volcanic plateau — вулканическое плато

geyser — гейзер

spring — источник, родник

earthquake — землетрясение

avalanche — лавина

extreme — крайность

legislature — законодательная власть

single — единственный

Executive Council — исполнительный совет

department — департамент, ведомство

to have charge — отвечать (за что-л.)

beehive — пчелиный улей

dairy products — молочные продукты

Questions

1. Where is New Zealand situated? 2. What are Australia and New Zealand separated by? 3. Where are the main mountain ranges? 4. Why are earthquakes frequent in New Zealand? 5. What is the highest peak? 6. What do you know about the climate of the country? 7. What do you know about the capital of New Zealand? 8. What is the population of the country? 9. What do you know about the Parliament in New Zealand? 10. What is the most efficient industry in New Zealand?

Dialogues

1.

— Hello. Let's talk about literature.

— Oh, it's a very interesting topic. I am fond of reading.

— And what Canadian writers do you know?

— I like reading Stephen Leacock. I like humorous stories, and he is famous for his humorous fiction.

— I know about this writer. I've read his book "Sunshine Sketches of a Little Town", which he wrote in 1912. It's very interesting and humorous.

— And I prefer his book “Humour and Humanity”. He wrote it in 1937. I enjoyed it very much.

— And what other Canadian writers do you know?

— I know Northrop Frye, who was a Canadian literary critic, Margaret Atwood, who is one of the most popular writers in Canada. She is famous for her poetry and novels.

— And I’ve read about Lucy Maud Montgomery. She wrote a lot of books. And her major collection are archived at the University of Guelph.

— Thank you very much for our talk. It was very interesting and I learned a lot. Bye-bye.

— Bye-bye. See you later.

2.

— Hello. Have you ever been to Australia?

— No, I haven’t. But I’ve read a lot about this country and I can tell you some information about its culture. The first important poet in Australia was Charles Harpur (1813–68), followed by Henry Kendall (1841–82) and Andrew Barton Paterson. Among the most significant contemporary writers are the dramatist Ray Lawler and novelist Patrick White. Patrick White received the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1973.

— Oh, it’s very interesting. And I am fond of cinema and ballet. That’s why I can tell you some facts about cinema and ballet in Australia. “Strictly Ballroom”, an Australian film of youthful exuberance, took the Cannes Festival prize in 1992.

— And what about ballet?

— The national ballet company of Australia was founded in 1962. Nowadays the company has an extensive repertoire of classical and modern works.

— And I’ve read about aboriginal culture. It has given rise both to translated collections of oral poetry myth, and narrative, and to a modern tradition of aboriginal literature in English. And now there is the aboriginal musical Bran Nue Dae and the group Yothu Yindi in Australia.

— OK. Our talk was very informative. Bye.

— Bye-bye. See you later.

3.

— Do you enjoy eating local food?

— Not all. But what do you mean?

— I mean Australian food. A year ago I visited Australia and tasted traditional Australian food.

— Oh, tell me, please, something about it.

— OK, among very popular products in Australia is vegemite. It is considered very healthy. Vegemite is a vegetable extract used as a spread. It is rather salty.

— Anything else?

— Of course. There is a cake named in honour of Russian ballerina Anna Pavlova, which originated in Australia. It is a very popular dessert not only in Australia and New Zealand but in many countries. It's often called the pav.

— What is the recipe of the pav?

— You see, there are several recipes of this cake and one anecdote, which I'd like to tell you.

— Oh, my mouth is watering.

— So, ingredients of this recipe are \$15, a bag and a bicycle. When you have these ingredients, ride a bicycle to the supermarket, buy the pav with \$15, place it into the bag. Ride home. Remove the pav from the bag, place it in a cold oven. When guests arrive, remove it from the oven and say, "Look at this pav I've just made!"

— Oh, it's amusing. I'd like to tell my sister this joke. Bye and thank you.

— Bye. See you later. And I'd like to listen to an anecdote of yours.

4.

— Hi, I am fond of arts, especially national ones. Do you know anything about Maori decorative arts?

— Hi, I'm fond of arts too, but I don't know anything about Maori decorative arts. Can you tell me something about them?

— Sure. Maori decorative arts reached a high level of development in the 18th and 19th centuries. The primary forms were carvings in wood stone and bone; painting on wood and rock; tattooing called coru.

— And what about contemporary Maori painters?

— They make use of contemporary Western art styles while being loyal to their Maori heritage. Their names are Ralph Hotere and Selwyn Muri. The ceramic arts have reached a high level in the work of Barry Brickell and other potters.

— Are there many museums and art galleries in New Zealand?

— Of course, there are more than 600 art galleries and museums in New Zealand. There are also more than 1,000 libraries in the country with their documental materials relating to the arts of the country.

— Where are they situated?

— The art galleries and museums are found in most large cities, but the oldest one is in Auckland. The Auckland City Art Gallery was founded in 1888.

— Thanks. I think I'll go to the library and read more about these interesting arts. Bye.

— Bye-bye.

Writing

28 September

Dear Alex,

Many happy returns of the day! At the moment I am staying with my friends in Canada. It's a wonderful country with beautiful nature!

I am sending you a book by Stephen Leacock "Humour and Humanity". He wrote about Mark Twain, Charles Dickens and other writers. I think that you know that Stephen Leacock is a famous Canadian writer. He wrote a lot of non-fiction, but he is best known for his humorous fiction.

Hope you will enjoy it. I look forward to meeting you.

Best wishes,

Peter

UNIT 13

FAMOUS CITIES AND TOWNS

London

London is the capital and the largest city of the UK. Its population is about 8.5 million. London is the country's main industrial and financial centre. London is also one of the largest ports in the UK. It is linked with all parts of the country by roads and railways. Besides, London is a great educational and cultural centre.

Traditionally London is divided into several parts: the City, Westminster, the West End and the East End. The heart of London is the City, its financial and business centre. There are a lot of banks, offices and firms there, including the Bank of England, the Stock Exchange and the Old Bailey. Few people live here, but over a million come to the City to work.

The City is famous for its oldest part, the Tower of London, which was founded by Julius Caesar and rebuilt in the 11th century by William the Conqueror. For many centuries the Tower has been a fortress. But at various periods of history it was also used as a Royal Palace, a prison, a royal treasury, a mint, an arsenal, a Royal observatory and even a Royal Zoo. It is now a museum of arms and armour and as one of the strongest fortresses in Britain, it contains Crown Jewels. The Tower is guarded by the famous "Beefeaters" in the picturesque uniforms. The Ravens are also a part of its history. There is a legend that if the ravens disappear, the British monarchy will fall. That's why their wings are cut back and they are carefully guarded.

St. Paul's Cathedral designed by Sir Christopher Wren in the 17th century is one of the most famous churches in the world. It took Sir Christopher Wren 35 years to build this masterpiece. It is a beautiful building with many columns and towers. The magnificent classical structure is crowned by the dome. Inside the dome there are scenes from the life of St. Paul. Here too is the famous Whispering Gallery, where the words whispered into the stone wall

can be heard right round the other side. There are many memorials in the Cathedral including those to heroes such as Wellington and Nelson.

Westminster is now the political centre of London. The Palace of Westminster is among the world's most famous buildings. It houses the British Parliament and is often called the Houses of Parliament. The Clock Tower of the Houses of Parliament is famous for its big hour bell, known as "Big Ben". Many government buildings, including 10 Downing Street, the official residence of Prime Ministers for more than 250 years, are nearby.

Opposite the Houses of Parliament there is Westminster Abbey where from the Norman times British monarchs have been crowned and later buried. Many other famous people are also buried in Westminster Abbey including statesmen, musicians and writers. In the Poet's Corner one can find the tombs of William Shakespeare, Byron, T. S. Eliot and others.

Buckingham Palace is the official residence of the Queen. London's most popular spectacle is the Changing of the Guard. It takes place in the forecourt and lasts about 30 minutes.

The West End is the name given to the area of central London which includes the main shopping areas of Oxford Street, Regent Street and Bond Street, and the entertainment centres of Soho, Piccadilly Circus and Leicester Square. It's the richest and most beautiful part of London. The best hotels, shops and restaurants, clubs and theatres are situated there.

Trafalgar Square, which is also in the West End, is considered to be the geographical centre of London. It was laid out in memory of Lord Nelson's great victory of 1805 in the Battle of Trafalgar. Nelson's Column in the middle of the square commemorates this national hero, who died during the battle.

There are a lot of museums and galleries in London. On the north side of Trafalgar Square there is the National Gallery, one of the finest art galleries in the world. The biggest museum in London is the British Museum. It contains a priceless collection of ancient manuscripts, coins, sculptures and is famous for its library.

The East End covers a wide area to the east of the City and is quite different from the other parts of London. There are many warehouses and factories producing clothes there. It is also one of those areas of London where working-class people live.

The Royal Parks of London — St. James's Park, Green Park, Hyde Park, Kensington Gardens and Regent's Park — are London's lungs.

When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life.

Vocabulary

to link — соединять
to divide — делить
to include — включать
the Stock Exchange — Лондонская фондовая биржа
the Old Bailey — Центральный уголовный суд, находящийся в Олд-Бейли
to found — основывать
fortress — крепость
various — различный
prison — тюрьма
royal — королевский
treasury — казначейство
mint — монетный двор
arsenal — арсенал
arms — оружие
armour — доспехи
to contain — содержать, включать
Crown Jewels — королевские регалии (короны, скипетры и др. драгоценности)
to guard — охранять
Beefeaters — бифитеры, стражники лондонского Тауэра
picturesque — живописный
raven — ворон
to disappear — исчезать
wing — крыло

church — церковь
masterpiece — шедевр
magnificent — великолепный
to crown — короновать, венчать
dome — купол
scene — сцена
to whisper — шептать
bell — колокол
government — правительство
nearby — поблизости
to bury — хоронить
statesman — государственный деятель
spectacle — зрелище
forecourt — передний двор
entertainment — развлечение
to consider — считать
to lay out — планировать, разбивать
to commemorate — увековечивать
priceless — бесценный
ancient — древний
manuscript — рукопись
coin — монета
warehouse — склад
factory — фабрика
to produce — производить
lungs — легкие (*орган дыхания*)
to be tired — устать

Questions

1. What's the population of London? 2. Traditionally London is divided into several parts. What are they? 3. What do you know about the City? 4. Who founded the Tower of London? 5. What is

the Tower of London famous for? 6. Who designed St. Paul's Cathedral? 7. What can you see in St. Paul's Cathedral? 8. What is Westminster Abbey famous for? 9. Where is the official residence of the Queen? 10. Why does Buckingham Palace attract so many tourists? 11. What historic event does Trafalgar Square commemorate? 12. What is there in the middle of Trafalgar Square? 13. What museums and galleries are there in London? 14. What is the difference between the West End and the East End? 15. What places in London would you like to visit and why?

London Today

It goes without saying that London is one of the greatest cities in the world. It is a favourite destination for millions of tourists from all parts of the world. Today tourism is one of London's key industries. London has about 30 million visitors a year, and fifty per cent of them are foreigners.

The key to the tourist industry in London is integrating the city's history and tradition with the new economy. No other city can compare with London in that, so we can say that London is a unique city.

London is a city of living history. There are a lot of historic buildings such as Westminster Abbey, St. Paul's Cathedral, Buckingham Palace or the Houses of Parliament. Foreigners always visit the Tower of London where they can see famous "Beefeaters" and enjoy their stories about the legends of the past. Londoners carefully keep up their traditions and symbols of the past. A notable example is London famous black taxi. It was introduced onto the streets of the city in 1994 and it is an exact replica of London taxis of the 1930s (except, of course, that it has modern facilities and a modern meter). It was deliberately designed this way to appeal to tourists, who equate London with tradition.

But London's attraction for tourists is not only its historic sites but the fact that it is a modern, "lived-in" city. There are a lot of modern and attractive buildings in the centre of the city such as the Canary Wharf Tower which is now the tallest building in England.

There are so many museums and galleries in London that even people who have lived there for a long time don't know them all.

Some are traditional museums, but many are now making their exhibitions interactive, or hands-on, to encourage people to touch and understand what is on display. For example, at the Museum of the Moving Image almost all the things on display move. You can design your own cartoon, read the news on TV and fly like Superman over London.

What makes London a really great place for tourists is that it is a 24-hour city with nightlife, clubs, restaurants and internationally known events. Diversity and the most modern forms of communication create the city's unique character and attraction.

No doubt that tourism is extremely beneficial for the city's economy. The tourist industry supports 275,000 jobs. But we must admit that it does bring problems to the residents of London. They live alongside about 350 bars and clubs that stay open up to 5 am already. The capacity of such bars is 50,000 people, bringing with them noise, nuisance and crime. As a result, the very residents who make up the "lived-in" city are being driven out. So the key question now for London is how to integrate all the features of the city.

Vocabulary

destination — место для посещения, цель

key — ключ, ключевой

to compare — сравнивать

Beefeaters — бифитеры, стражники лондонского Тауэра

carefully — тщательно

to keep up — поддерживать

notable — примечательный

exact — точный

replica — копия

facilities — устройства, приборы

meter — счетчик

deliberately — специально

to appeal — нравиться

to equate — приравнять, отождествлять

attraction — привлекательность

to encourage — поощрять, побуждать

Canary Wharf Tower — башня Канэри-Уорф (*административное высотное здание в лондонском портовом районе, построено в 1991 г., высота 244 м*)

exhibition — выставка

to touch — трогать (*руками*)

Museum of the Moving Image — Музей движущегося изображения (*музей истории кино, телевидения и видеографии*)

cartoon — мультфильм

diversity — разнообразие

to create — создавать

no doubt — несомненно, без сомнения

extremely — чрезвычайно

beneficial — благотворный, выгодный

to support — поддерживать,
обеспечивать
to admit — признавать
resident — местный житель
capacity — вместимость

noise — шум
nuisance — неудобство
crime — преступление
the very — те самые
feature — черта, особенность

Questions

1. What makes London unique today? 2. London is a great international tourist centre, isn't it? Why? 3. What makes London a really great place for tourists? 4. Can you prove that London is a 24-hour lived-in city? 5. What are the main problems of London's tourist industry? 6. What is the key question now for London? 7. Would you like to visit London? 8. What places of interest would you like to visit and why? 9. If you want to spend time in the evening, where will you go? 10. How can you characterize London using 3 adjectives?

Famous British Cities and Towns

Great Britain is mainly an industrial country, and most of the people there live in towns and cities. London, its capital, is the most important city of Great Britain.

The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh. It is one of the most written-about and photographed cities on earth. Edinburgh is a delight to explore on foot; most of its attractions are contained within a compact central area. Edinburgh Castle is the natural starting-point for any visit. It is a famous fortress, which is situated in the centre of the city on a high hill called Castle Rock. The oldest parts of the building date back to about 1100. Visitors can also look round the Palace of Holyroodhouse, the Queen's official residence in Scotland.

The main cities of Wales are Cardiff, its capital, Swansea and Newport. Wales is famous for its medieval castles that stretch like an iron chain across Wales. Belfast, the capital of Northern Ireland, is one of the youngest capitals of the world. It is a city of the 19th century and of the industrial revolution.

In the South part of England there are quite a lot of other famous cities. Brighton is the largest holiday bathing resort of the

south coast. It is famous for its Indian-style palace, called the Royal Pavilion. It is a popular place for people to go for a holiday.

Windsor is famous for its castle, which is an official residence of the royal family. When the Queen is at the castle, a special flag is put up to tell everybody. Some of the interior apartments are open to the public when the Queen is not in residence. In 1993 the castle was seriously destroyed by fire.

Bath is known for its natural hot spring, the only one in Britain, as well as for its old Roman baths, which remain the heart of the city. Another spectacular sight of Bath is the Abbey, which is called the “lantern of the west” as it features more window than wall. The city is also famous for its annual agricultural shows and music festivals.

Oxford and Cambridge, known as Oxbridge, are famous for the oldest and most prestigious universities, founded in the 13th century. Most of their students are former public school-leavers. The universities have over a hundred societies and clubs, enough for every interest one could imagine.

Stratford-upon-Avon lies at the very heart of England. It attracts people not only by its history and connection with William Shakespeare, but also by its wonderful nature and typical English character. Here you can visit Shakespeare’s birthplace (it is a museum now), Grammar school which he attended, Holy Trinity Church where he was buried and, of course, the Royal Shakespeare Theatre, which is a living memorial to the poet’s work.

One of the famous cities in the centre of England is Nottingham, which is known throughout the world for its associations with the legend of Robin Hood. At the heart of the Robin Hood legend there is his former home, the magnificent Forest of Sherwood, situated not far from Nottingham. The name of Robin Hood is closely connected with Nottingham Castle, which is in the city itself. At the foot of the Castle there is a statue of Robin Hood. Now it houses a Museum of Fine and Applied Arts and contains paintings by many famous artists.

Another famous city in the central England is York, which was once the capital of a Viking kingdom. It is known for its chocolate factories, National Railway Museum and the Viking Centre, an archaeological museum where visitors are carried in “time-cars” through a vivid recreation of York under the Danish kings with the sights, sounds and even smells of the period.

Chester is the most historic city in northwest England. Attractively set on the River Dee, the city has an ancient history dating back to its days as a Roman port and a fortress. It is famous for its black-and-white buildings and a splendid red sandstone cathedral. Visitors to Chester can stroll along a reconstructed Victorian street and visit its unique galleried shops called Rows.

The main industrial cities in England are Birmingham, Manchester, Liverpool, Leeds, Newcastle. Liverpool is not only an industrial centre. First of all it is known all over the world as the birthplace of "The Beatles". In the Beatles Story Museum you can find everything about this famous group. Among other museums one can mention the Boat Museum and the branch of the Tate Gallery. There is also the largest Garden Zoo there. The city is famous for its sport too. One of the biggest football stadiums in Britain is in Liverpool.

Vocabulary

mainly — главным образом,
в основном

delight — большое удоволь-
ствие, наслаждение

to explore — исследовать

attraction — достопримечатель-
ность

castle — замок

natural — естественный,
природный

fortress — крепость

to situate — располагаться

to look round — осматривать

medieval — средневековый

to stretch — простирается,
тянуться

iron chain — железная цепь

to bathe — купаться

resort — курорт

to put up a flag — вывешивать
флаг

interior apartments — внутрен-
ние апартаменты

to destroy — разрушать

hot spring — горячий источник

baths — бани

to remain — оставаться

spectacular — грандиозный,
потрясающий

sight — зрелище, достоприме-
чательность

lantern — фонарь

to feature — являться характер-
ной чертой, содержать

annual — ежегодный

agricultural — сельскохозяй-
ственный

show — выставка

former — бывший, прежний

society — общество

to imagine — воображать,
представлять

to lie — лежать, располагаться

to attract — привлекать

connection — связь

birthplace — родина

to attend — посещать

to bury — хоронить

Holy Trinity Church — церковь Святой Троицы
throughout the world — по всему миру
magnificent — великолепный
closely — тесно
to connect — связывать
Museum of Fine and Applied Arts — Музей изобразительных и прикладных искусств
Viking kingdom — королевство викингов

vivid — живой, яркий
recreation — воссоздание, воспроизведение
smell — запах
attractively set — привлекательно расположенный
splendid — великолепный
sandstone — песчаник
to stroll along — прогуливаться по
among — среди
to mention — упоминать
branch — филиал

Questions

1. What important industrial and cultural centres do you know in Great Britain? 2. What attractions are there in Edinburgh? 3. What famous cities are there in the South of England? What are they famous for? 4. Where are the most famous British universities situated? 5. Why does Stratford-upon-Avon attract visitors? 6. What sights connected with William Shakespeare can you see in Stratford? 7. Why is York considered a unique city? 8. What museums are there in York? 9. What city is closely connected with the name of Robin Hood? 10. What is Chester famous for? 11. What are the most popular tourist places in Britain? 12. What places would you like to visit and why?

Washington, DC

The United States is a federal union which is made up of fifty states and one independent district — the District of Columbia. The District of Columbia is the territory of the national capital of the USA, Washington, with its own laws and regulations. Washington, DC is situated on both banks of the Potomac River, between the two states, Maryland and Virginia. This place was chosen by the first American President George Washington, and the capital got the name of Washington after the name of its founder. Created at the close of the 18th century, Washington is amongst America's most stately, most beautiful and most impressive cities.

Washington is sometimes called “home office of the nation”. It is the place where the federal government works. The main historic landmarks are the White House, residence of every American President since John Adams, the Capitol, home to the Senate and House of Representatives, and the Supreme Court Building, a marble temple dedicated to the law. International organizations such as the Organization of American States and the World Bank are also based in Washington.

Cultural and tourist sites abound in Washington as well. The Smithsonian Institution is comprised of art, history and science museums, most of which are found on Independence Avenue and the Mall, a long park-like area, planted with trees. The Mall is very broad and extends from the Capitol to the Potomac River. All the official buildings, museums and memorials are concentrated along the Mall.

The main landmark in the center of the Mall is the Washington Monument. It is just a simple obelisk, but from its top you can look round the whole District of Columbia. One of the most fascinating architectural monuments in the capital is the Memorial to the third US President, Thomas Jefferson. It is located by a circular lagoon, the Tidal Basin, surrounded by hundreds of Japanese cherry trees. In spring, when the trees are covered with pink and white blossoms, one can enjoy a marvelous view of the memorial. The imposing Lincoln Memorial with its classic style of a Greek temple also appeals to lots of tourists.

No doubt that Washington is one of the most attractive cities in the USA, and more than 18 million tourists from all over the world visit it every year.

Vocabulary

independent — независимый
district — округ
law — закон
regulations — правила
founder — основатель
to create — создавать
stately — величественный,
величавый
impressive — впечатляющий
government — правительство

landmark — достопримечательность, вежа
House of Representatives — палата представителей
(в конгрессе США)
Supreme Court — Верховный суд
marble — мраморный
temple — храм
to dedicate — посвящать
to abound — иметься в изобилии

to be comprised of — состоять из
broad — широкий
to extend — простирается,
тянуться
fascinating — увлекательный
circular — круглый
Tidal Basin — Приливный
бассейн
to surround — окружать

cherry tree — вишневое дерево
blossom — цветок (*на дереве*)
marvelous — изумительный,
чудесный
imposing — внушительный
to appeal — нравиться
no doubt — без сомнения,
несомненно
attractive — привлекательный

Questions

1. Where is Washington situated? 2. Who selected the place for the capital? 3. Is Washington a typical American city? 4. What is the main industry in Washington? 5. What important government buildings are situated in Washington? 6. Where does the US President live and work? 7. What monuments to famous people are there in Washington? 8. Why aren't there any skyscrapers in the capital? 9. Which places of interest would you like to visit in Washington? 10. Is Washington the largest city in the USA?

Main Cities of the USA

There are a lot of interesting and impressive cities in the USA, but the heart of the nation is Washington, DC, its capital.

Washington is smaller in size than the largest cities of the USA, such as New York, Chicago, Detroit or Los Angeles. The buildings in Washington are not very tall because no building must be taller than the Capitol. But in political sense Washington is the center of the country and the most important city of the United States.

The two main sights of Washington are the Capitol, which houses the two chambers of the legislature, and the White House, the official residence of the US President. Not far from the Capitol there is the Library of Congress, the largest library of the United States.

One can hardly find a park, a square or an open area in Washington without a monument or a memorial. The most impressive and the best-known of them are the Lincoln Memorial and the Washington Monument. There are also a lot of museums in Washington where you can see all kinds of things: famous

paintings and sculptures, the dresses of Presidents' wives, the original of the Declaration of Independence, etc.

New York is the largest city in the USA and one of the largest cities in the world. Situated at the mouth of the deep Hudson River, it has always been the gateway to the USA. People who come to New York by sea are greeted by the Statue of Liberty. It has become a symbol of the city (if not of the whole country) and an expression of freedom to people all over the world.

The five boroughs comprising the city are Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens, Brooklyn and Richmond. The center of New York is Manhattan Island. Numerous skyscrapers house banks and offices of American business. The Empire State Building, Rockefeller Center, the United Nations building, Central Park, Times Square, Broadway — all these world-famous sights are situated here.

The map of Manhattan seems unusual to a European eye. It is crossed from north to south by avenues and from east to west by streets. Each avenue has either a name or a number. The streets are numbered. Only a few of them have names.

Wall Street in Manhattan is the financial heart of the USA and the most important banking center in the world. Broadway is the symbol of American theater. The intersection of Broadway and Seventh Avenue forms world-famous Times Square, where New Year's Eve celebrations always take place. Park Avenue represents luxury and fashion because of its large expensive apartment houses. Fifth Avenue is the most famous shopping center.

New York is often called the cultural capital of the USA. There are more than 800 museums in New York. One of the best-known is the Metropolitan Museum of Art.

Los Angeles is America's second largest city. Its name comes from the Spanish for "the City of Angels", because the land was originally claimed for Spain by missionaries in 1781. It became an American city in 1850 when California became part of the United States. Los Angeles is a popular place because of its pleasant semi-tropical climate and beautiful Pacific coast. Almost everyone drives to work. There are about four million private cars in Los Angeles and the level of air pollution is one of the highest in the country. Suburbs like Hollywood, the center of the movie industry, and Beverly Hills, where famous actors and other celebrities live, have also made Los Angeles a tourist attraction.

The third largest city in the USA, Chicago, is on the shore of Lake Michigan. Chicago is called the Windy City because of the strong winds that blow through it. Chicago is an industrial center. The city has always attracted a diverse population of Americans and new immigrants in search of jobs. Chicago is also a railroad and trucking hub. Its airport, O'Hare International, is the busiest in the world.

San Francisco is the most interesting city in the United States. It occupies the northern end of a peninsula, so it is surrounded on three sides by water. San Francisco is famous for its bridges, fog and foghorns. The greatest attraction of San Francisco is the Golden Gate Bridge, which has become the symbol of the city. San Francisco is called the city of hills because it has 40 hills. It is famous for its picturesque cable cars, which climb these hills, and for its bright houses that cling to the hills along steep and narrow streets.

Of course, San Francisco has a lot of museums. But if you are tired of museums, you can visit Golden Gate Park, one of the largest man-made parks in the world, or go to Shakespeare Garden where you can find every flower and plant ever mentioned by the bard. San Francisco has a reputation as an intellectual, liberal and slightly crazy city and his sights attract millions of tourists every year.

Vocabulary

impressive — впечатляющий
sense — смысл
to house — вмещать
chamber — палата
legislature — законодательство
the Statue of Liberty — статуя Свободы
expression — выражение
borough — пригород
comprise — составлять
skyscraper — небоскреб
intersection — пересечение
represent — представлять
luxury — богатство, пышность
pollution — загрязнение
attraction — достопримечательность

celebrity — знаменитость
shore — берег
wind — ветер
diverse — различный, многообразный
peninsula — полуостров
surround — окружать
fog — туман
foghorn — сирена
picturesque — живописный
cable car — вагон канатной дороги
cling — цепляться, держаться
steep — крутой
narrow — узкий
mention — упоминать
slightly — мало, незначительно

Questions

1. What are the main cities in the USA? 2. Where is Washington, DC situated? 3. Why is Washington sometimes called the heart of America? 4. Why are buildings in Washington not very tall? 5. What is the largest city in the USA? 6. What are the five boroughs comprising New York? 7. What are the most famous sights in New York? 8. Why does the map of Manhattan seem unusual to European eye? 9. What street in New York is a financial centre of the USA? 10. What is the most famous shopping centre in New York? 11. Why is Los Angeles a popular place? 12. Why is the level of air pollution in Los Angeles one of the highest in the country? 13. Where is Chicago situated? 14. Why is Chicago called a Windy City? 15. Is Chicago an industrial centre? 16. Where is San Francisco situated? 17. What is the greatest attraction of San Francisco, which has become the symbol of the city? 18. Why is San Francisco called the city of hills? 19. What city would you like to visit and why?

Main Cities of Canada

Ottawa. It is the capital of Canada. Ottawa is a great example of a metropolitan city. It has lots of banks, big skyscrapers and embassies. The symbol of Ottawa is its Parliament buildings. It's really worth seeing. The buildings are home to the House of Commons, the Library of Parliament, the Hall of Honour, the Senate and the impressive Peace Tower. In summer you can watch the Changing of the Guard Ceremony on the hill. You won't see much difference between this ceremony and equivalent one in England.

In Ottawa you can take the Amphibus — the bus that not only rides on the streets, but also can float on water like a boat. In the city one can see the residence of the Canada's Governor General. It's a big beautiful building. There are a lot of other interesting places in Ottawa. They include the National Museum of Canada, which has collections representing Indian and Eskimo culture; the Public Archives of Canada; Royal Canadian War Museum; the Design center; Royal Canadian Mint and others. You can see

Ottawa University with classes for English- and French-speaking students.

Montreal. It is situated in Quebec — the French part of Canada. It really looks like France: lots of narrow, small streets, cafes and other things typical for France. It combines modern skyscrapers and 19th-century mansions in a unique mixture. It's usually called "Paris of the Western Hemisphere".

The most interesting part of the city is the Notre-Dame de Montreal that is known as the most beautiful church in North America. The Basilica of Mary Queen is nearly half-size replica of St. Peter's in Rome. The Royal Place is the oldest place in Montreal. In the eastern part of Montreal you can see Olympic Park with its famous tower that close resembles the one that is in Pisa, Italy (the leaning one). One can take an elevator and go up this tower. Near the leaning tower there is a special place where different animals and plants survive in their natural conditions.

The city's first subway, called the Metro, was opened in 1966. Montreal is Canada's most important port. It is the chief manufacturing center of Canada.

It has a number of large libraries and several theaters. It is the seat of McGill University (English-speaking), the University of Montreal (French-speaking) and several colleges. There are many museums in the city and among them are the Montreal Museum of Fine Arts, the Museum of Archaeology and History, Wax Museum and others.

Toronto. It is the capital and the largest city of Ontario, and is located on the north shore of Lake Ontario. It is one of the chief Great Lakes ports. The city is famous for its CN Tower — the biggest tower in the world — 553 m in height. From the tower you can observe the whole city. The most interesting thing about the tower is its glass floor. As you walk, you can see what is under you. The Canadian National Exposition, held here annually, features industrial and agricultural exhibitions and also contains an amusement park area.

The city is an artistic and musical center, with the Art Gallery of Toronto and the Royal Conservatory of Music. The Royal Ontario Museum is famous for its collection of dinosaur bones and for its Oriental exhibits. The University of Toronto, Ryerson

Institute of Technology and York University offer advanced educational facilities.

Quebec. It's difficult to call Quebec a city. It very much looks like a town — but is still the capital of the province of Quebec. There is Saint-Anne Church there. It has a cyclorama (a big picture screen that is round) — the biggest cyclorama in the world, on which the last days of Jesus Christ are painted.

Quebec is a city for tourist — there are lots of squares, monuments, souvenir shops, small houses and museums. It is the only city in North America that still retains a wall around it that was used to defend it from enemies. There is a very interesting big castle there — the Chateau de Frontenac.

Vocabulary

worth seeing — заслуживающий внимания

impressive — впечатляющий

Changing of the Guard Ceremony — церемония смены караула

to float — плавать

Governor General — генерал-губернатор

Archives — архивы

Mint — монетный двор

skyscraper — небоскреб

mansion — особняк

mixture — смесь

Western Hemisphere — Западное полушарие

basilica — собор, церковь

half-size replica — копия в половину величины

leaning — наклонная

subway — метро

Wax Museum — Музей восковых фигур

chief — основной

glass floor — стеклянный пол

annually — ежегодно

amusement — развлечение

conservatory — консерватория

bone — кость

Oriental exhibits — выставки Востока

advanced educational facilities — благоприятные, современные условия для учебы

to defend — обороняться, защищать

Questions

1. What city is the capital of Canada?
2. Why is it worth seeing?
3. What do you know about the Changing of the Guard Ceremony?
4. What is Ottawa famous for?
5. Where is Montreal situated?
6. Why is Montreal usually called “Paris of the Western Hemisphere”?
7. What city is the chief manufacturing centre of Canada?
8. What is Toronto famous for?
9. What do you know about Quebec?

Canberra

Canberra is Australia's federal capital. Established as part of Australia's federation, Canberra houses the national Parliament, federal government departments, the High Court of Australia, the Australian War Memorial and several other important institutions.

Canberra is comprised of five large "town centres" that lie in the valleys of the Canberra region. These are Central Canberra, Belconnen, Woden, Tuggeranong and Queanbeyan (actually in New South Wales). For tourists Central Canberra is the only major area of interest, but the presence of the other centres will explain why the size of Canberra's population seems so out of proportion with its low-built appearance.

Canberra is very different from most Australian capital cities. Firstly, it is relatively young (it was established in 1927), and secondly, its planned development has excluded the presence of buildings on any surrounding hilltops, or that are over fifteen stories high. Thus visitors may be slightly under-awed by Canberra, but don't just turn around. Explore the sites and you will realize that Canberra is a far more pleasant place than it is usually given credit for.

There are more than 30 Australian artistic and cultural institutions in Canberra, ranging from the Australian War Memorial to Parliament House, surmounted by a colossal stainless steel flagpole and set in 23 hectares of gardens.

The city has wide open spaces and many parks and gardens, with the impressive architecture housing the national institutions set in astonishingly well-groomed surroundings, so that you can pad barefoot through the grass from the National Gallery to the National Library, peacefully admiring the gum-trees.

It's also fun to note that the "mall" running between the War Memorial and Parliament looks familiar. This is because much of Canberra was designed by a US architect and the mall in Canberra is reminiscent of the mall in Washington, DC, specifically the reflecting pool between the Washington Monument and Lincoln Memorial.

Canberra is also known for its spring festival, Floriade, when the parks and gardens surrounding Lake Burley Griffin explode with colourful displays of massed tulips and other blooms. The city, with its many parklands, is especially beautiful in spring and autumn.

Vocabulary

to establish — основывать
government — правительство
to be comprised of — состоять из
valley — долина
presence — наличие
to explain — объяснять
relatively — относительно
to exclude — исключать
to under-awe — недостаточно
впечатлять
to explore — исследовать
to realize — понимать
to range — колебаться от ... до
to surmount — увенчивать,
венчать
stainless steel — нержавеющая
сталь

flagpole — флагшток
impressive — впечатляющий
astonishingly — изумительно
well-groomed — холеный
to surround — окружать
surroundings — окружение,
окрестности
to pad barefoot — ходить боси-
ком
to admire — восхищаться
gum-tree — эвкалипт
familiar — знакомый
to be reminiscent of — напоми-
нать
reflecting — зеркальный
to explode — взрываться
bloom — цветок

Questions

1. When was Canberra established? 2. What is the capital comprised of? 3. What is the only major area of interest for tourists? 4. Why is Canberra very different from most Australian capital cities? 5. Are there any artistic or cultural institutions in Canberra? 6. Why does the “mall” running between the War Memorial and Parliament look familiar? 7. What is Canberra known for? 8. Would you like to visit Canberra? Why? 9. Would you like to live in Canberra? Why?

Sydney

Sydney is the gateway to Australia. It's one of the most attractive cities in the world and it was voted the Number One Convention City in the Asia Pacific Region for 2000. But no introduction to Sydney would be complete without paying tribute to one of the world's great harbours.

Sydney Harbour is the heart and soul of the city. It provides spectacular views, ferry transportation and a variety of recreation

options to the city's four million residents. Its banks are home to the iconic structures of the Opera House and Harbour Bridge. Each of the areas along its 20-kilometre stretch offers a different perspective on this major port. Darling Harbour is flash and tourist-friendly, the North Shore suburbs are refined and trendy, and the various Sydney Harbour National Park areas provide a welcome break from the hustle and bustle of the city. The best way to experience Sydney Harbour is from one of the many cruises departing from Circular Quay.

Sydney is a major centre of culture and the arts, and a mecca for world-class sport and entertainment. There is fabulous shopping, fine dining, natural beauty and the friendliest people in the world.

Sydneysiders always knew they lived in one of the world's great cities, but it wasn't until the 2000 Olympics that the rest of the world started to agree with this fact. Since the Games Sydney has consolidated its position as one of the world's most enchanting cities. Hosting the 2000 Olympic Games has been a catalyst to a range of new and exciting venues as well as innovative and unique products for Sydney.

It might seem surprising that Sydney is not Australia's capital. The creation of Canberra in 1927 has not affected the view of many Sydneysiders that their city remains the *true* capital of Australia, and certainly in many ways it feels like it. The city has a tangible sense of history: the old stone walls and well-worn steps in the backstreets around The Rocks are an evocative reminder that Sydney has more than two hundred years of white history behind it.

Just imagine a place of distinctive sights and sounds and a city with spirit. It is a place in a legendary land that combines the best the world has to offer, and that place is Sydney.

Vocabulary

complete — полный, законченный

to pay tribute — отдавать дань

harbour — гавань

to provide — предоставлять,
обеспечивать

spectacular view — грандиозный,
потрясающий вид

ferry — паром

variety — разнообразие, большое количество

recreation — отдых, развлечение

resident — местный житель

stretch — отрезок земли

to offer — предлагать

suburbs — пригороды, предместья, окрестности

refined — ухоженный, изысканный
trendy — модный
various — различный
hustle and bustle — суета, суматоха
to experience — исследовать, узнавать
to depart — отходить, отчаливать
fabulous — сказочный
Sydneysiders — жители Сиднея
to consolidate — укреплять
enchanting — очаровательный
hosting — организация и прием

range — ряд
venue — место для занятий спортом, спортивное сооружение
to affect — влиять
tangible — осязаемый, осязаемый
evocative — пробуждающий воспоминание, воскрешающий прошлое
reminder — напоминание
distinctive — своеобразный
spirit — душа
to combine — сочетать, объединять

Questions

1. What is the heart and soul of the city? 2. What is the best way to experience Sydney Harbour? 3. What has been a catalyst to the development of the city? 4. What are the main attractions in Sydney? 5. Would you like to visit Sydney? Why? 6. Would you like to live in Sydney? Why?

New Zealand's Main Cities

Eighty-five per cent of New Zealand people live in the cities and towns. Early in the 20th century the four cities Auckland, Wellington, Christchurch and Dunedin shared leadership.

The largest city of New Zealand is Auckland. It is a modern city and the industrial and commercial port of the country. More than one million people live there. Twenty per cent of the population is Maori and Polynesian. The city was established in 1840 as the capital of the British colonial government. It was officially made a city in 1871. The city has an art gallery, zoological gardens, the Auckland War Memorial Museum with its outstanding Maori collection, and the University of Auckland, which was founded in 1882. There are forest, farms beaches, thermal pools and geysers near Auckland. Auckland remained the capital until it was replaced by Wellington.

Wellington is the second largest city and a main port. It is situated on the southern coast of North Island. The population of the city is about 200,000 people. It is the seat of the government and a large administrative centre. It is a transport link between the islands. It was settled by the group of British immigrants in 1840. They called it Nicholson after the captain of their ship. Wellington is the third capital of New Zealand: the first capital was Russel, then — Auckland, and in 1865 Wellington became the capital of the country. The most striking features of the city are its winds and constant danger of earthquakes. Its nickname is “the windy city”, because it is situated on the crossroads of the Pacific Ocean and the Tasman Sea. Several high office buildings were specially constructed to withstand earthquake shocks. In general Wellington is a city of two- and three-storeyed houses.

It is a commercial and cultural centre of the country. The Victoria University of Wellington and Wellington Teachers Training College are located in the city. The Alexander Turnbull Library is famous for its collection of New Zealand materials. Wellington is the home of the New Zealand Orchestra. There is the National Art Gallery in the city.

Christchurch is the largest city of South Island. It is the main commercial and industrial city of the island. It is a marketing centre for the agricultural products. There are industrial plants and factories for the production of machinery, rubber tyres, electric goods and shoes. The population of the city is 300,000 people.

The heart of the city is Cathedral Square, where one can see the Anglican Cathedral. There is the University of Canterbury, Canterbury Museum, McDougall Art Gallery, botanical gardens and the fields of Hagley Park in the city.

Dunedin is located on South Island. It is the second largest city of South Island. The city was founded in 1848 by Scottish Presbyterians as a Scottish free church settlement. It was called Dunedin for the Gaelic word for Edinburgh and still conveys Scottish values. It is often called “Edinburgh of the South”. Its population is 116,524 people. This region is rich in gold, timber and farming potential.

Vocabulary

to share — разделять
leadership — лидерство
to establish — основывать
thermal pool — термальный источник
to replace — заменять
transport link — транспортное звено
to settle — заселять
striking feature — характерная черта
danger of earthquake — опасность землетрясения

nickname — прозвище
crossroads — перекресток
to withstand — выдерживать
marketing centre — рыночный центр
machinery — машиностроение
rubber tyres — резиновые шины
Presbyterian — пресвитерианец
to convey — выражать
timber — древесина
farming potential — перспективный для фермерства

Questions

1. Where do people of New Zealand live? 2. What cities shared leadership in the 20th century? 3. What is the largest city of New Zealand? 4. What city is the capital of the country? 5. What is Auckland famous for? 6. What is Wellington famous for? 7. What are striking features of Wellington? 8. What do you know about Christchurch? 9. What do you know about Dunedin? 10. What city is a political centre of New Zealand?

Living in the City

Living in the city has both advantages and disadvantages. On the plus side, it is often easier to find work, and there is usually a choice of public transport, so you don't need to own a car, which is necessary when you live in the countryside. Besides, there are a lot of interesting things to do and places to see. If you live in the village, you have almost nowhere to go, but if you live in the city, you can eat in good restaurants, visit museums and go to the theatre and to concerts.

What is more, when you want to relax, you can usually find a park where you can feed the ducks or just sit on a park bench and read a book. All in all, city life is full of bustle and variety, and you will never feel bored.

However, for every plus there is a minus. For one thing, you might have a job, but unless it is very well-paid, you will not be able to afford many of the things that there are to do, because living in the city is often very expensive. It is particularly difficult to find good cheap accommodation. What is more, public transport is sometimes crowded and dirty, particularly in the rush hour, and even the parks can become very crowded, especially on Sundays when it seems that every city-dweller is looking for some open space or green grass. On the contrary, the air in the countryside is very clean and there are no noisy crowds, so living in the country can add several years to your life.

Last of all, despite all the crowds, it is still possible to feel very lonely in a city because people often don't know their neighbours.

In conclusion, I think that city life can be particularly appealing to young people, who like the excitement of the city and don't mind noise and pollution. However, a lot of people, when they get older, and particularly when they have young children, often prefer the peace and fresh air of the countryside, especially in summer.

Vocabulary

advantage — преимущество

disadvantage — недостаток

bustle — суматоха

variety — разнообразие

to feel bored — скучать

unless — если не

to afford — позволять себе

expensive — дорогой

cheap — дешевый

accommodation — жилье

crowded — переполненный

particularly — особенно

rush hour — час пик

especially — особенно

city-dweller — горожанин,
житель города

on the contrary — напротив,
наоборот

despite — несмотря на

lonely — одинокий

neighbour — сосед

appealing — привлекательный

excitement — возбуждение,
волнение

to mind — быть против, возражать

noise — шум

pollution — загрязнение

fresh — свежий

Questions

1. What are the advantages of living in the city? 2. What are the disadvantages of living in the city? 3. What are the advantages of living in the country? 4. What are the disadvantages of living in the

country? 5. What people prefer to live in the city? 6. What people enjoy living in the countryside? 7. Where would you rather live, in the city or in the countryside? Why?

Dialogues

1.

— Hi, Helen! You visited London last year, didn't you?

— Yes, I did. But why?

— I am going to Great Britain next week. What would you advise me to see in London?

— First of all, you should visit the Tower of London. It is an ancient fortress, guarded by the famous "Beefeaters". I am sure you'll enjoy the Crown Jewels and you'll be able to see the ravens.

— The ravens? What is special about these birds?

— Don't you know? There is a legend that if the ravens disappear, the British monarchy will fall. That's why their wings are cut back and they are carefully guarded.

— That's very interesting, indeed. Are there any famous churches in London?

— Of course, there are. One of them is St. Paul's Cathedral designed by Sir Christopher Wren in the 17th century. If you go inside, you'll see beautiful paintings and memorials. Another famous church is Westminster Abbey, which is famous for its Poet's Corner.

— Poet's Corner? What is it?

— It's the place where there are monuments and tombs of many outstanding people. By the way, opposite Westminster Abbey there is the Palace of Westminster, which is often called the Houses of Parliament.

— Oh, yes, it is famous for its Clock Tower called Big Ben.

— Right, though Big Ben, actually, is the name of a big hour bell. But if you really want to discover London, it is best to start with a tour on a sightseeing bus or go on a guided walk. The walks last up to three hours and have special themes, such as "Royal London — Palaces and People".

— Thank you very much for your advice. I'm sure I won't be bored in London.

2.

— You like living in London, don't you?

— Oh, I love it. I can take the bus to work, or the tube, or the taxi. I don't like to go by my own car because there are a lot of traffic jams in London. And there is so much to do in the city — lots of movies, theatres and museums.

— I know what you mean. I'd like to live in London, but living in the suburbs is better for my little son. There is a lot of fresh air, trees, grass there. But I wish I lived in London. There are lots of things to see here.

— You are right. I have been living in London for 20 years, but I'm never tired of it. I want to see again and again its remarkable museums and galleries, its old buildings and monuments, its palaces, gardens and parks.

— As for me, I enjoy London too. I have seen almost all interesting places there. I usually take my son and husband in London at the weekends. And what is your favourite place in London?

— I even can't say. I enjoy everything. And you ought to spend more time with your family at all great places in the city.

— I agree. But what about weather in London? Is it true that London is very foggy?

— No. People always think that. You see it all the time in the movies, but actually London hasn't had any thick fogs since the 1950s. Though the weather in London is rather changeable. It's never gets really hot, even in summer. But it rains a lot. Sometimes you can't even see the rain, but if you're outside, you get soaking wet. But just when you think it's safe to go out, along comes a quick shower and it's pouring with rain.

— I know it. But I like such weather. I don't like it when it's hot.

— OK. I hope we'll meet next weekend and I'll show you some interesting places in London. Bye.

— Bye. See you next weekend.

3.

— Which place in Great Britain would you like to visit and why?

— Oh, there is a lot to see in Great Britain. First of all, I would like to visit London, its capital.

— It goes without saying that London is the most important city in Great Britain. There are a lot of famous sights, such as Westminster Abbey and the Houses of Parliament, St. Paul's Cathedral and the Tower of London. As for me, I'd also like to visit Scotland.

— Why do you want to go there?

— First of all, I'd like to visit Edinburgh. The famous Edinburgh Castle looks truly magnificent. Besides, I'd like to visit Camera Obscura and enjoy the wonderful view of the whole city.

— Camera Obscura? I've never heard about it.

— Really? It is housed at the Outlook Tower and gives a moving image of the city with the help of lenses and mirrors. While the panorama unfolds, the guide entertains you with stories of the city's exciting past.

— That's really very interesting! As for me, I'd like to visit Stratford-upon-Avon.

— What would you like to see there?

— This town is closely connected with the name of William Shakespeare. It will be interesting to visit Shakespeare's birthplace, the Holy Trinity Church, where he was buried, and the Royal Shakespeare Theatre.

— I completely agree with you. I'm sure it would be great to learn more about this outstanding writer.

4.

— Would you like to go to Great Britain?

— Oh, I'd love to. I think it is a very interesting country.

— Why are you so sure?

— I've read a lot of books about Britain and I would like to go there and see green valleys, beautiful lakes and mountains.

— Then you should visit Scotland and see Loch Ness, where according to the legend a large monster lives.

— Do you really believe in legends? Anyway, it would be interesting to see this famous lake. Besides, Scotland is famous for its castles, and one of them is situated on the shore of this lake.

— By the way, Britain is said to be the garden kingdom. There are a lot of extraordinary gardens and parks there.

— Yes, the most famous of them is situated in Longleat. It is known for its wonderful maze. I hope to go there someday and have a walk in the maze.

— As for me, I'd like to visit Stonehenge and touch these famous stones.

— I'm afraid, you won't be able to do it, because this famous site was fenced off to protect it from damage.

— Really? Then I'll take a picture of myself on the background of this wonderful sight.

5.

— Hello! How are you?

— Hi! I'm fine, thanks. And you?

— I'm fine too. I'd like to go to the USA, but I'm not sure where to go. Which city would you advise me to visit?

— First of all, I think, you should visit Washington. It is the capital of the USA and there are a lot of sights. For example, the White House, the Capitol, the Library of Congress and many others!

— But there are no skyscrapers and I want to see them!

— Then you should go to New York. It is crowded with skyscrapers. Besides, New York is the largest city in the USA. There you can see the Statue of Liberty, which is the symbol of the country.

— OK. And what do you think is the most interesting city in the USA?

— To my mind, the most interesting city is San Francisco. This city is famous for its bridges, fog and foghorns. The greatest attraction of San Francisco is the Golden Gate Bridge, which has become the symbol of the city. It is also famous for its picturesque cable cars. Besides, San Francisco has a lot of museums.

— Well, I'm not fond of visiting museums. It's too boring.

— If you are bored by museums, you can visit Golden Gate Park, one of the largest man-made parks in the world, or go to Shakespeare Garden.

— What can I see there?

— There you can find every flower and plant ever mentioned by the bard. I have been there twice and I am sure it's worth visiting.

— OK. I think I'll go there. Thank you. Bye!

— Bye!

Writing

1.

1 June 2005

Dear Jane,

Thanks for your letter. I'm sorry I haven't written for so long, but I've been really busy with my exams. Now, it's all over and I'm having a short rest in London with my family.

London is wonderful! We are staying in a hotel not far from the centre so we are able to walk around London almost all day long. It's amazing because London is a 24-hour city. We've already seen most of the famous sights. Yesterday we visited the Tower of London and enjoyed the legends told by the famous Beefeaters.

Tomorrow we are going to Windsor. I am looking forward to visiting this old town because I am fond of ancient castles. We are also planning a trip to Stratford-upon-Avon. You know, William Shakespeare is one of my favourite writers and I would like to see his native town. I think it'll be great!

I am coming back to Moscow on Sunday, so I'll be able to call you next week. My best regards to your parents. How are they?

See you soon,

Elena

2.

15 October 2005

Dear Andrew,

Well, here we are in Sydney! The weather is fantastic! We are staying in a 4-star hotel by the Circular Quay. The view is amazing and the service is great. We have access to great pubs, restaurants and shopping down at the Rocks.

The restaurants are great! There is a mix similar to what we see in the US (Italian, Chinese, Thai and American). The only difference in the food is the Australian specialties such as crocodile, wallaby, ostrich and kangaroo. Tipping is not customary, although appreciated.

We've done the Bridge Climb over the Sydney Harbor Bridge, the view is breathtaking. And yesterday we did Sydney Harbor dinner cruise on the ship "The Bounty". It was great! The cruise leaves from the harbor by the Rocks. It's very convenient. Tomorrow we are going on a tour of the Blue Mountains which are fantastic.

We have already traveled to several cities in Australia but Sydney is by far our favorite. It is the best trip of our lives and there wasn't one thing we didn't enjoy. If you can tolerate a long flight, then Sydney is a must for you!

We look forward to meeting you soon.

Bye,

John and Ann

3.

10 August 2005

Dear Helen,

How are you? Hope you are OK. Well, here I am in California and my dream has finally come true.

We are staying in a small hotel in San Francisco. It's a great city full of picturesque houses. The symbol of the city is the Golden Gate Bridge that stretches across the mouth of San Francisco Bay. The scenery from the bridge is wonderful, and I've already taken some great photos.

Tomorrow we are leaving for Los Angeles. I look forward to seeing this famous city. It is the second largest city after New York and it is quite modern. I would like to visit Hollywood, the centre of the movie industry, and Beverley Hills, where famous actors and other celebrities live. And of course, I dream of visiting American Disneyland. I've already been to French Disneyland and I want to compare these two parks.

Well, I have to go now to pack my luggage. Wish you were here.

Love,

Catherine

UNIT 14

RUSSIA

Russia

Russia is my native country. It is the largest country in the world. Russia is situated on two continents: Europe and Asia. The Urals form a natural border between the continents. The country is washed by 12 seas of three oceans: the Pacific, the Arctic and the Atlantic. Its total area is over 17 million square kilometres. No traveller crosses the country from east to west without being astonished by its size. The population of Russia is more than 145 million. There are a lot of nationalities in Russia and people speak different languages. Russian is the official language.

The land of Russia varies greatly. We have thick forests and vast plains, high mountains and deep valleys. The main mountain chains are the Caucasus, the Urals and the Altai. Russia is rich in rivers and lakes. The longest river on the European territory of Russia is the Volga, which flows into the Caspian Sea. The main Siberian rivers are the Ob, the Yenisei and the Lena. The world's deepest lake, Lake Baikal, is also situated in Russia. The water in this lake is very clear. There is also a wide variety of wildlife in Russia.

Russia is a country without a climate because it has every possible climate from arctic in the north to subtropical in the south. In the west, for example, the climate is usually mild and wet. The southern parts of the country have warm temperatures all year round, but the northern parts have very cold winters. In the middle of the country the climate is usually continental. Winters are cold, windy and snowy, and summers are hot and dry.

Russia is rich in mineral resources. Three quarters (3/4) of the country's minerals and fuels, including oil, natural gas, coal, diamonds and gold, are concentrated in Siberia and the Far East.

Russia is a country of great traditions. There are many villages in Russia famous for their specific crafts. Painted boxes from Palekh and wooden tableware from Khokhloma are well-known all over

the world. Log houses decorated with wood carving are typical of Russian villages.

There are a lot of Russian symbols. One of them is the Russian national flag. This flag is made up of three stripes: white, blue and red. These colours have always been symbolic in Russia. They symbolize nobleness, honesty, courage and love. Another Russian symbol is a double-headed eagle. It was introduced in Russia in 1497 by Tsar Ivan III. Besides, there are other Russian symbols well-known all over the world, for example, Red Square and the Spasskaya Tower. Tourists usually buy such traditional Russian souvenirs as Matryoshka dolls, beautifully painted mugs, plates and spoons from Khokhloma village and Palekh boxes.

We, people living in Russia, love our country and are proud of it. And we would like other nations to understand and love our homeland.

Vocabulary

to be situated — располагаться
border — граница
total area — общая площадь
to astonish — изумлять
size — размер
population — население
to vary — меняться, изменяться
mountain chain — горная цепь
to flow — впадать
variety — разнообразие
wildlife — дикие животные
mild — мягкий
wet — влажный
windy — ветренный
snowy — снежный
dry — сухой
fuel — топливо
to include — включать

oil — нефть
natural gas — природный газ
coal — уголь
diamond — алмаз
craft — ремесло
wooden tableware — деревянная посуда
log house — деревянный дом, изба
wood carving — резьба по дереву
village — деревня
stripe — полоса
nobleness — благородство
honesty — честность
courage — мужество
double-headed eagle — двуглавый орел
to introduce — вводить
mug — кружка

Questions

1. What is the official name of your country? 2. What is special about the geographical position of Russia? 3. What mountains divide Russia into two parts? 4. What is the total area of the country?

5. What countries does Russia border? 6. What seas and oceans wash Russia? 7. Russia is a very rich country. What is it rich in? 8. What river is the longest in Europe? 9. What do you know about Lake Baikal? 10. What is the climate like in Russia? 11. What Russian symbols do you know? 12. What national emblems and colours does Russia have?

Russian Political System

According to the Constitution adopted in 1993, the Russian Federation is a presidential republic. Just like political systems in other countries, our political system also has three branches of power: legislative, executive and judicial.

The Federal Assembly represents the legislative branch of power. It is also made up of two houses: the Federation Council and the State Duma, which make laws. Both houses are headed by chairmen called speakers. Russia is divided into 89 federal subjects. Each subject elects two representatives to the Federation Council, so there are 178 members in the Federation Council. The State Duma consists of 450 deputies. 225 members are elected directly by the people. The other half of deputies is appointed by their parties after party-list voting according to which every party gains a number of seats. The main function of the Federal Assembly is to make laws. Every law must be approved by the State Duma and the Federation Council, and signed by the President.

The Federal Government represents the executive branch of power. It consists of the Prime Minister and the Cabinet of Ministers.

The President is the head of state in Russia and he is elected directly by the people. In fact he has a lot of power. The President can even dissolve the State Duma if it doesn't agree with his suggestions three times running. The President has his Administration but it is not part of the Federal Government. The President is involved in the work of the legislative and executive branches.

The judicial branch of power is represented by the Supreme Court and the Constitutional Court. The Supreme Court is the highest court for civil and criminal cases. The responsibility of the Constitutional Court is to determine whether new laws or actions

of President correspond to the Constitution. The Constitution is the main law of Russia. It guarantees the rights and freedoms of Russian citizens.

Russian political system also has “the system of checks and balances” like that in the USA. For example, the President appoints the heads of the Federal Government and the Chairman of the Government, but the State Duma must approve his appointment. The President can veto laws passed by the Federal Assembly, but the Federal Assembly can pass laws over the President’s veto by a two-thirds majority. The Constitutional Court has the right to declare actions of the President, the Federal Assembly and the Federal Government unconstitutional.

There are many political parties in our country. The most well-known are the Communist Party, the Liberal Democratic Party, the “Unity” Party, the Union of the Right Forces and the “Apple” Party.

Vocabulary

to adopt — принимать
branch — ветвь
legislative — законодательный
executive — исполнительный
judicial — судебный
to represent — представлять
house — палата (*парламента*)
law — закон
chairman (мн. ч. **chairmen**) — председатель
to divide — делить, разделять
subject — субъект
to elect — избирать, выбирать
голосованием
representative — представитель
member — член
deputy — депутат
directly — непосредственно
to appoint — назначать
voting — голосование
to gain — получать
seat — место
to approve — одобрять

to sign — подписывать
to dissolve — распускать (*парламент*), прекращать деятельность
suggestion — предложение
three times running — три раза подряд
civil — гражданский
criminal — уголовный
case — дело
responsibility — обязанность
to determine — определять
to correspond — соответствовать
right — право
freedom — свобода
citizen — гражданин
the system of checks and balances — система «сдержек и противовесов» (*принцип взаимозависимости и взаимограничения законодательной, исполнительной и судебной власти в США*)

to pass a law — принимать закон
majority — большинство
to declare — объявлять

“**Unity**” **Party** — партия «Единство»
Union of the Right Forces — Союз правых сил

Questions

1. What political system does the Russian Federation represent?
2. How many branches are there in the political system of Russia?
3. Which institutions exercise the legislative, executive and judicial power?
4. What is each branch of power responsible for?
5. Can you explain how the branches of power interact?
6. Who is the head of state in Russia? Does he have much power?
7. Are there many political parties in Russia?
8. What are the most well-known parties?
9. Can you compare Russian and American political systems?
10. Would you like to become the President of Russia? Why?

Russian Character

There are a lot of wonders in Russia. But it is true to say that Russia is most famous for its people.

To understand Russian people, one must know from where they come. Nature has not been kind to Russia. Winters in Russia are cold, windy and snowy. So in old Russia people could do little during long winter months. But in spring there was a lot to be done, and in a short period of time. Perhaps, this explains why the Russians are often inactive for long periods of time and then show bursts of energy.

The harsh climate explains the Russians' strength and their ability to overcome hardships. Climate has also made them cautious.

Yet most of the Russians are open people. They are neither reticent nor reserved as the British. Russian people love to sit down for a nice long chat. They like having parties and receiving guests. The Russians are known to be a hospitable people. According to old traditions, a guest should always be welcomed with the symbol of life-giving food — bread and salt.

Russian people have always loved their country, though life in Russia has never been easy. They have always been devoted to their Motherland, fighting for peace and independence against enemies.

We can't say that the Russians are conservative. On the contrary, they encourage research and innovation. Still, there are a lot of customs and traditions in their life. For example, before leaving on a journey, many Russian people sit down quietly together for a few minutes.

Russian people are clever and talented. We can name a lot of outstanding Russians who are well-known all over the world. And we can say that we are a nation that has done a lot for the world civilization.

When foreign guests leave Russia, they usually say different things about the country. Some of them like it, others don't. But practically everybody agrees that Russian people are wonderful. They are friendly, kind and very hospitable.

Vocabulary

Russians — *Обратите внимание: названия национальностей могут употребляться как с определенным артиклем, так и без артикля*

burst — вспышка, прилив (энергии)

harsh — суровый

to overcome — преодолевать

hardships — трудности, лишения

cautious — осторожный

reticent — молчаливый, скрытный

reserved — сдержанный

hospitable — гостеприимный

according to — согласно, в соответствии с

to welcome — приветствовать

to be devoted — быть преданным

to fight — бороться, сражаться

independence — независимость

enemy — враг

on the contrary — напротив, наоборот

to encourage — способствовать, поддерживать

research — исследование

innovation — нововведение, новшество

outstanding — выдающийся

to agree — соглашаться

Questions

1. How much is the Russian national character influenced by geography? 2. How can you describe your nation? 3. How different or alike do you think the Russians and the British are? 4. Why don't the Russians trim the grass, bushes or trees? Why does everything just grow wild? 5. Why do Russian people often gather around the samovar on holidays or when guests come to their

places? 6. The British are said to be polite. And what about the Russians? 7. What are the main traits of the Russian character? 8. How can you prove that Russian people are very hospitable? 9. What Russian traditions do you know? 10. Do the Russians have a sense of humour? 11. Do Russian people love their Motherland? And what about you?

Moscow

There is a lot to see in Russia, but first of all foreign tourists visit the capital of our country, Moscow, its economic and cultural centre. They dream of visiting Red Square, which is called the heart of Moscow. Perhaps, the most ancient monument of Red Square is St. Basil's Cathedral. With its nine beautifully painted cupolas, it is a real masterpiece of ancient Russian architecture.

If you come to Moscow for the first time, you should by all means visit the Kremlin, which is very impressive. On the territory of the Kremlin you can see old cathedrals, the Bell Tower of Ivan the Great, the State Kremlin Palace, the Tsar Cannon and the Tsar Bell, the biggest cannon and bell in the world. The Kremlin centre looks truly magnificent today. The main Kremlin tower, the Spasskaya Tower, has become the symbol of the country.

If you leave the Kremlin by Trinity Gate, you will come to the Alexandrovsky Gardens. The first thing to do in the Gardens is to stand by the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier, still and silent. Not far from the Alexandrovsky Gardens behind the Bolshoi Kamenny Bridge you will see St. Saviour's Cathedral with its huge beautiful gilded dome. The original cathedral was erected by the order of Emperor Alexander as a token of the Russian people's gratitude to God for the deliverance of Russia from Napoleon's invasion in 1812. In 1931 it was demolished. But in 1995, Moscow's Mayor Yuri Luzhkov and the world-famous musician Mstislav Rostropovich laid the first stone in the foundation of the new Cathedral of Christ the Saviour. Today you can admire this Cathedral in the centre of Moscow.

Foreigners are usually surprised by the number of churches and cathedrals in and around the city. There are also a lot of beautiful palaces, old mansions and monuments in Moscow.

There are more than 80 museums in our capital. The largest museums are the Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts, whose collections include works of art of the ancient Orient and ancient Egypt, and the State Tretyakov Gallery, which houses a rich collection of Russian painting and Russian icons. Other unique museums in Moscow are the State History Museum, the All-Russia Museum of Decorative, Applied and Folk Art, Polytechnical Museum and many others. Moscow is famous for its theatres too. The best-known of them is the Bolshoi Opera House. Drama theatres and studios are also very popular.

One more interesting place to visit in Moscow is the All-Russia Exhibition Centre, which occupies an area of 530 acres. The Exhibition Centre is situated in a beautiful park. The most admired feature of the Exhibition Centre is its fountains. The “Friendship of the Nations” and the “Stone Flower” fountains are the most beautiful. The Exhibition Centre is a large cultural and commercial complex where different international exhibitions and fairs are held.

One of the most famous sights of the city is the Moscow Metro and the journey by Metro will be unforgettable. In the Metro you do not feel as if you're underground. This is due to the unique architecture and the artistic design of the stations, which are more like palaces. No two stations are alike; most of them have their own appearance.

Moscow is the city that must be seen. It is one of the largest cities in the world. The population of Moscow is over 10 million. Moscow is the seat of the Russian Parliament and the centre of political life of the country.

Vocabulary

to admire — восхищаться,
любоваться

ancient — древний

appearance — вид, облик

by all means — во что бы то ни
стало

deliverance — освобождение

to demolish — разрушать

to erect — строить, воздвигать

exhibition — выставка

fair — ярмарка

foundation — основание,
фундамент

gratitude — благодарность,
признательность

gilded dome — позолоченный
купол

impressive — впечатляющий,
внушительный

invasion — вторжение, нашествие

magnificent — великолепный
mansion — особняк
masterpiece — шедевр
Orient — Восток

token — знак, символ
truly — поистине
unique — уникальный

Questions

1. When was Moscow founded? Who founded our capital?
2. Is there a monument to Yuri Dolgoruky in Moscow? Where is it?
3. What is the population of Moscow?
4. What places of interest in the centre of Moscow do you know?
5. What can you see on the territory of the Kremlin?
6. What do you know about the Cathedral of Christ the Saviour?
7. Why do people like to visit the All-Russia Exhibition Centre?
8. What is your favourite place in Moscow?
9. What are the most famous Moscow museums and galleries?
10. What theatres in Moscow do you know?
11. What are the most famous monuments in Moscow?

Saint Petersburg

St. Petersburg ranks among the world's greatest capitals. Founded by the will of Peter the Great in 1703, it has developed into a large European-type city known all over the world.

The new city started as a fortress with the Peter and Paul Cathedral as its symbol. The Cathedral of Peter and Paul served as a burial place of the monarchs and members of the royal family since Peter's reign. In 1725 the founder of St. Petersburg, Emperor Peter the Great, was buried there. The fortress on the Neva was not meant to play an active defensive role in the history of the city. Soon after its construction it was gradually converted into a political prison. Now the Peter and Paul Fortress is a unique architectural complex that houses the Museum of the History of St. Petersburg.

Peter the Great wanted his new capital to be as beautiful as any European city. That's why he invited a lot of famous European architects who created real masterpieces of architecture. One of the most famous architectural ensembles, the Winter Palace, stands at the beginning of the Palace Embankment. The huge palace was designed and built by Bartolomeo Francesco Rastrelli within eight

years, between 1754 and 1762. Now this wonderful building houses the Hermitage, one of the greatest Russian museums, where you can enjoy wonderful collections of paintings, sculptures, furniture, gold and silverware, and textiles.

Another unique museum in St. Petersburg is the State Russian Museum. This treasure-house of Russian art is situated in Mikhailovsky Palace. The visitors to the Museum today can see the world-famous display of Russian paintings, sculptures and engravings in its exhibition halls.

Each city has a favourite central place which attracts both its residents and visitors. The heart of St. Petersburg is Palace Square. The Alexander Column in the middle of the square commemorates the victory of Russia in the war against Napoleon. Next to the square you can see the tower of the Admiralty which was founded in 1704 as a fortress and shipyard. The main street of the city, Nevsky Prospect, begins at the Admiralty and runs eastward. It is lined with palaces, churches, shops, restaurants, cafes and theatres.

St. Petersburg is famous all over the world for its unique churches and cathedrals. The most wonderful of them is St. Isaac's Cathedral. The interior of the cathedral is a real artistic treasury with lots of mosaic and painted decorations.

St. Petersburg attracts tourists from all over the world. The best time to visit it is in summer, during the season of White Nights. If the weather is fine, tourists can take a coach tour to the suburbs where they will enjoy Peterhoff with its famous fountains and Pushkin or Pavlovsk. They are former residences of the Russian Tsars, which have been turned into fine museums. The best way to spend time in the evening is to visit the Mariinsky Theatre. And the most enjoyable spectacle at night is the opening of bridges across the River Neva to let cargo ships pass through.

In 2003 St. Petersburg marked its 300th anniversary and the renovated museums, palaces, cathedrals and churches are now waiting for new visitors.

Vocabulary

to rank among — относиться
к какой-л. категории
to found — основывать
will — воля

to develop — развиваться
fortress — крепость
cathedral — собор
burial place — место погребения

reign — царствование
defensive — оборонительный, оборонный
gradually — постепенно
to convert — превращать
prison — тюрьма
to invite — приглашать
to create — создавать
masterpiece — шедевр
ensemble — ансамбль
embankment — набережная
huge — огромный
furniture — мебель
gold and silverware — изделия из золота и серебра
treasure-house — сокровищница
engraving — гравюра

exhibition hall — выставочный зал
to attract — привлекать
resident — постоянный, местный житель
to commemorate — знаменовать, увековечивать
shipyard — верфь, судостроительный завод
treasury — сокровищница
coach tour — автобусная экскурсия
suburbs — пригороды
former — бывший, прежний
spectacle — зрелище
cargo ship — грузовой корабль
anniversary — годовщина
to renovate — реставрировать

Questions

1. When was St. Petersburg founded? 2. What was the starting point of the city? 3. Why does the Peter and Paul Fortress attract tourists? 4. What is the greatest palace in St. Petersburg? 5. What is the heart of the city? 6. What are the most famous museums in St. Petersburg? 7. What are the suburbs of the city famous for? 8. What is the best way to spend time in the evening? 9. What is the most famous spectacle at night? 10. When is the best time to visit St. Petersburg? 11. Would you like to visit this city? 12. Which places in and around the city would you like to visit and why?

Ancient Russian Cities

Nearly all Russian cities and towns have a lot of historic architectural monuments, such as Russian orthodox churches, cathedrals and monasteries. They are valuable symbols of ancient Russian culture. The most attractive city for foreign tourists is Moscow. There is a lot to see in the capital but the most important place to visit is the Kremlin.

Here visitors can admire beautiful cathedrals, built in the 15th century, visit the Faceted Palace and the Armoury, and get a fantastic view of the city from the top of the Ivan the Great Bell Tower, which is the composition centre of the entire Kremlin. There are quite a lot of other examples of ancient Russian architecture outside the Kremlin, such as St. Basil's Cathedral, Novodevichy Convent and Pokrova Church in Fili.

Moscow's attraction for tourists is not only its historical sites but the fact that it's a modern city with hundreds of museums and galleries, theatres and restaurants. In my opinion, it's impossible to be bored in Moscow, but if you want to enjoy some fresh sightseeing impressions, you may visit two major towns of the "Golden Ring of Russia", Suzdal and Vladimir.

Upon your arrival in Suzdal you will find yourself in a fairy-tale world. The town has a kremlin, a convent, two monasteries, dozens of churches, dating from the 12th to the 18th centuries and a nearly 200-year-old shopping arcade with traditional iron signs outside the shops. There are no high buildings here. The city is like an extended village of wooden houses, with lace curtains and geraniums in the windows.

Vladimir attracts tourists by the severe architecture of its white stone cathedrals and churches. The most famous of them are Dormition Cathedral, the Cathedral of St. Demetrius and Pokrova Church on the Nerl.

These two towns are like two islands of beauty in a sea of mediocrity. Yet, there are very few foreign visitors there. Why? They are scared off by the lack of comfortable hotels, coaches, good roads with road signs and well-trained guides. Besides, some of the architectural monuments have become ruined by time and really have to be renovated. But local authorities usually lack funds and it restricts the possibilities for developing tourism in these towns.

It goes without saying that sustainable tourism could provide good profits for local residents, especially at the height of the tourist season. But to draw more tourists into Russian towns, we must provide good accommodation and eating facilities, build roads and parking places, develop outdoor activities and make these towns known to the public. If only Russian cities and towns could become popular tourist destinations, then they would really prosper and flourish.

Vocabulary

orthodox — православный

valuable — ценный

ancient — древний

attractive — привлекательный

to admire — восхищаться

Faceted Palace — Грановитая палата

Armoury — Оружейная палата

entire — весь, целый

convent — женский монастырь

attraction — привлекательность

iron — железный

sign — знак, вывеска

extended — увеличенный, расширенный

lace curtains — тюлевые занавески

to attract — привлекать

severe — строгий, суровый

Nerl — Нерль (*река*)

Dormition Cathedral — Успенский собор

mediocrity — заурядность

to scare off — отпугивать

lack — недостаток, нехватка

coach — туристический автобус

authorities — власти, администрация

to restrict — ограничивать, сдерживать

sustainable — непрерывный, постоянный

profit — прибыль, доход

resident — постоянный житель

height — пик

to draw — привлекать

accommodation — проживание

destination — цель путешествия

prosper — преуспевать

flourish — процветать

Questions

1. When was Moscow founded? Who founded our capital?
2. Is there a monument to Yuri Dolgoruky in Moscow? Where is it?
3. What can you see on the territory of the Kremlin?
4. What is your favourite place in Moscow?
5. What are the most famous Moscow museums and galleries?
6. Are you proud of your home town?
7. What ancient Russian cities and towns do you know?
8. What are the main problems of ancient cities and towns in Russia?
9. What are the main ways of drawing more tourists into Russian cities and towns?
10. Where would you rather live: in the city or in the village?

Famous Russian Cities

Millions of people all over the world are fond of travelling. They travel to see other countries and continents, to discover different ways of life, to meet different people and to practise

foreign languages. It goes without saying that travelling broadens the mind. While travelling, we can see and learn a lot of things that we can never learn staying at home and watching TV or reading books. That's why a lot of foreign people come to Russia to get acquainted with Russian culture, with Russian customs and traditions.

Russia has always been a country of mystery and attraction for foreigners. There are a lot of villages and towns in Russia famous for their specific crafts: painted boxes in Palekh, wooden tableware in Khokhloma and toys in Dymkovo. Thousands of foreigners visit Russia to enjoy typical Russian log houses, decorated with wood carving.

Tourists like to visit old Russian towns and cities famous for their ancient architecture. They are especially attracted by Russian orthodox cathedrals, churches and monasteries. One of the most interesting old cities in Russia is Novgorod, or Novgorod the Great, as it was called in the old times. It is a treasury of architecture, painting and applied art created over the 11th to 17th centuries. The first records of the city on the Volkhov River date back to the year 859. Now Novgorod has expanded far beyond its former limits. It is an important industrial and cultural centre, located on the busy highway linking Moscow and St. Petersburg.

The focal point of the city is the Detinets, or the Kremlin. The present-day Kremlin stems largely from the 15th century. Several alterations made in the 16th and 17th centuries were minor and did not affect its appearance. Novgorod's contribution to the development of Russian culture is outstanding. No other city excels Novgorod in the number of ancient monuments of architecture. The Novgorod Museum of History, Architecture and Art shows visitors the history of medieval Novgorod. Its artistic value lies primarily in its collection of medieval icon painting.

Of course, every foreigner should visit St. Petersburg, the second largest city in Russia and one of the most beautiful cities in the world. It was founded in 1703 by Peter the Great at the mouth of the Neva River. Now it is an important industrial, cultural and educational centre.

St. Petersburg is indeed a wonderful city: at every turn there is something to catch your eye. The Winter Palace, St. Isaac's Cathedral, the Peter and Paul Fortress, the Admiralty building

attract thousands of tourists from every corner of the world. Petersburg's many museums house some of the world's most famous art collections. The Hermitage and the Russian Museum, for example, contain the richest collections of pictures in the world.

The city is called the Northern Venice because there are more than a hundred rivers, arms and canals there with artistically decorated bridges. It's also famous for its beautiful white nights.

There are a lot of Hero-cities in our country. And I would recommend my foreign friends to visit one of them. Volgograd is a legendary city, because here in 1943 the Soviet Army won the great and glorious victory over the fascists. The city was completely ruined during the war, but now it is a beautiful city again. It stands on the banks of the great Russian river Volga. The symbol of Volgograd is the Mamaev Hill. It was the centre of fighting during the heroic defence of Stalingrad. Now there is a great memorial there. Besides, you can visit the Stalingrad Battle Panorama Museum, which is situated on the bank of the Volga. The centre of Volgograd is the Square of the Fallen Heroes. In the middle of it there is a granite obelisk and the common graves of the heroes of the Civil War and the Great Patriotic War. At the foot of the memorial you can see the Eternal Flame. Now Volgograd is a big industrial and cultural centre.

There are a lot of other interesting towns and cities in Russia, which are all worth visiting.

Vocabulary

to get acquainted with — знакомиться с

wooden tableware — деревянная посуда

log house — бревенчатый дом, изба

wood carving — резьба по дереву

orthodox — православный

treasury — сокровищница

to attract — привлекать

applied art — прикладное искусство

to stem from — происходить от

alteration — изменение

contribution — вклад

to excel — превосходить

medieval — средневековый

artistic value — художественная ценность

glorious — славный

completely — полностью

to ruin — разрушать

fighting — борьба

defence — оборона

common grave — братская могила

Eternal Flame — Вечный огонь

Questions

1. Do you think that travelling is one of the best ways of learning about the world? 2. "Travelling broadens the mind." Do you agree with this statement? 3. What are the most popular attractions in Russia? 4. Which Russian cities would you like to visit? Why? 5. What places of interest would you like to see in St. Petersburg? 6. When was St. Petersburg founded? 7. Why is St. Petersburg called the Northern Venice? 8. What ancient Russian towns and cities do you know? What are they famous for? 9. What Hero-cities do you know in Russia? 10. What are the main places of interest in Volgograd?

Dialogues

1.

— Mike, are you proud of your native country?

— Of course, I am. Russia is the largest country in the world and it is very rich.

— What do you mean?

— I mean that it has thick forests and high mountains, long rivers and deep lakes. What is more, it is rich in mineral resources: oil, gas, coal, diamonds and gold.

— That's great! And what are the longest rivers in your country?

— The longest river on the European territory of Russia is the Volga, and the main Siberian rivers are the Ob, the Yenisei and the Lena.

— And what about the mountains? Are they very high?

— The Caucasus is the youngest and the highest mountain system in Russia, whereas the Urals are the oldest mountains and they are not very high.

— Every country is proud of its people. What can you say about the Russians?

— Whoever comes to Russia, they all say that Russian people are wonderful. They are kind and hospitable, clever and inventive. There are a lot of talented people in my country. People all over the world know the names of A. Pushkin, P. Tchaikovsky and Yuri Gagarin.

— I can't but agree that Russia has produced a galaxy of outstanding people.

2.

— The land of Russia varies greatly, doesn't it?

— Yes, it does. We have thick forests and vast plains, high mountains and deep valleys.

— And what are the main mountain systems?

— The main mountain chains are the Caucasus, the Urals and the Altai. The Caucasus is the highest mountain system and Mount Elbrus is the highest mountain in the Caucasus, in the Russian Federation and in the whole Europe.

— And what about the Urals? Are these mountains high?

— Oh, no! This mountain chain is rather old, that is why the mountains are not very high. The Urals form a natural border between Europe and Asia. They are famous for their valuable minerals and gemstones.

— Well, I know that vegetation in Russia is as diverse as its landscapes. Is that true?

— Yes, you are right. Russia is so big that there are six vegetation zones stretching across the country. In Russia you can find almost all kinds of trees: birches, maples, oaks, cedars, larches, fir-trees, pines, iron and cork trees, and even lianas.

— And what about animals?

— Oh, Russia is rich in animals too. You can find white bears and polar foxes in the north; wolves, elks and roes in the forest zone; and tigers and leopards in the Far East.

— Really? That's great!

3.

— Can you compare the Russian and American political systems?

— It's not very difficult. These two systems are very much alike.

— Really? What do they have in common?

— First of all, both systems consist of three branches of power: legislative, executive and judicial.

— Well, I know that the legislative branch of the federal government in the USA is represented by Congress, which is made up of the Senate and the House of Representatives.

— You are quite right. The same situation is in Russia. The Federal Assembly represents the legislative branch of power. And it is also made up of two houses: the Federation Council and the Duma.

— And what about the executive branch?

— Both Russia and the USA are presidential republics. But in the USA the President and his Administration represent the executive branch of federal government whereas in Russia the President also has his Administration, but it is not part of the Federal Government, which represents the executive branch.

— And which branch of power does the Russian President represent?

— Well, the President is involved in the work of both the legislative and executive branches.

— And judicial branches? Are they different or alike?

— They are very much alike. In both countries the Supreme Court represents the judicial branch of power.

— And can you compare Russian and American Constitutions?

— It's not an easy question. I can only say that American Constitution was written more than 200 years ago and it's still working whereas the Constitution of our country has been changed several times.

— When was the new Constitution of the Russian Federation adopted?

— The Russian Federation is set up by the Constitution of 1993 after the collapse of the Soviet Union.

— What does the Constitution guarantee?

— It guarantees the rights of the citizens of Russia. The most important rights and freedoms are the freedom of press, the freedom of religion, the right to vote, the right to education, the right to go to court, have a lawyer and many others.

— American Constitution also guarantees these important rights and freedoms. Now I see that the political systems in these two countries are very much alike.

4.

— Russia is visited by millions of tourists every year. There are a lot of attractions in Russia, but first of all foreign tourists come to Moscow, the capital of our country. What would you recommend visitors to see in Moscow?

— If you come to Moscow for the first time, you should by all means visit the Kremlin, which is very impressive. Here you can admire ancient cathedrals and churches, the Bell Tower of Ivan the Great, the Faceted Palace and the Armoury. You can also see the Tsar Bell and the Tsar Cannon, which are a good example of the early masters' work.

— I know that the Kremlin was rebuilt several times, wasn't it?

— Yes, it was. Originally it was built of oak logs, and in 1367 Prince Dmitri Donskoi built a wall of white stone around the Kremlin. Only a hundred years later tsar Ivan III built new walls and towers of red brick, as we see them today.

— And where shall we go after the Kremlin?

— If you leave the Kremlin by Trinity Gate, you will come to the Alexandrovsky Gardens and see the eternal flame burning at the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier. There are always a lot of flowers in honour of the soldiers who died in World War II. From here you can easily get to Red Square, which is the heart of the city, and enjoy a wonderful view of St. Basil's Cathedral.

— I think it'll be great. Are there any monuments in Moscow?

— Of course, there are. In Red Square you can see a monument to K. Minin and D. Pozharsky, which is one of the most ancient monuments in Moscow. And if you go down Tverskaya Street, you'll see a monument to Yuri Dolgoruky, the founder of Moscow, and a monument to Alexander Pushkin, a famous Russian poet.

— And what are the most interesting museums in Moscow?

— If you are interested in fine arts, you certainly ought to visit the Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts and the State Tretyakov Gallery. It would be interesting to visit the Polytechnical Museum, which holds displays featuring humanity's technological progress throughout the centuries.

— Moscow is a city of theatre-goers and its theatres are famous all over the world. Is that so?

— Exactly! And the best way to spend an enjoyable evening is to visit the Bolshoi Theatre, which is world-famous for its operas and ballets. Next to the Bolshoi Theatre there is the Academic Maly Theatre, the oldest drama theatre in Moscow. Moscow theatres are extremely popular with Muscovites.

— And what is your favourite place in Moscow?

— Most of all I enjoy visiting the All-Russia Exhibition Centre. It is situated in a beautiful park and has a lot of beautiful fountains. Its territory is rather large, but there is no need to walk a lot, since the area is served by minibuses. It is a wonderful place to spend free time and to have fun. Both children and grown-ups can enjoy many attractions such as the Big Wheel which is the largest in Europe.

— Well, I see that Moscow is a very large city and it will take long to see its main sights.

— Yes, indeed. The area of Moscow is 1,100 square kilometres. Its cultural and architectural heritage is huge and diversified. I have told you only about the main musts for the visitor. But there are a lot of other places which are no less interesting.

5.

— Hello! Where are you from?

— Hello! I'm from Russia.

— What is your home city?

— My home city is Moscow, the capital of Russia.

— Are there any places of interest in Moscow?

— Of course. There are many of them: the Kremlin, Red Square, Arbat Street, a lot of museums, galleries and monuments, churches and cathedrals.

— What is the centre of Moscow?

— It's Red Square. There are a lot of interesting places in Red Square. The most ancient monument of Red Square is St. Basil's Cathedral. You can see Lobnoye Mesto near the Cathedral. It was erected in the 16th century.

— What was it used for?

— The tsar's orders were read from it. It was also used as a place for execution. The Lenin Mausoleum is in the centre of the square too. It was originally made of wood and in 1930 it was rebuilt and made of stone, brick, marble and granite.

- Are the streets wide or narrow in Moscow?
- They are both wide and narrow. There are a lot of modern houses in Moscow but you can see old houses too. They are being reconstructed or pulled down.
- And what is the area of the city?
- It's over 1,000 square kilometres.
- What is the population of your city?
- It's over 10 million people.
- You live in a great country. Who is your country proud of?
- My country is proud of its people who brought fame to their country. My country was the first to launch a man into space. Nobel prizes for science, literature and peace have been won by Russian citizens. In the fields of art, media and sport Russia enjoys international reputation. Russia has nuclear weapons, a strong army and remains a widely-respected country.
- What traditions do people in Russia keep?
- People in Russia keep their old traditions and are very proud of them. They celebrate religious holidays such as Easter, Christmas and Maslenitsa. They eat traditional food for Maslenitsa such as pancakes with honey, caviar or sour cream. They colour eggs, bake kulich cakes, make a paskha out of cottage cheese for Easter.
- Are the Russians religious people?
- Many of them are. The main church in Russia is the Orthodox Church, but there are other religions too. The Orthodox Church has survived during the hard times and now we speak about a rebirth of religion in our country.
- What are the symbols of Russia?
- The national emblem of Russia is the double-headed eagle. Our national flag is made up of three stripes: white, blue and red. Another symbol of Russia is the Spasskaya Tower, because the Kremlin clock made in the 16th century is on it. You see, you have a lot of questions. That's why I invite you to visit my country and to see everything with your own eyes.

Writing

1.

15 September 2005

Dear Sam,

Thank you for your letter! It was great to hear from you so soon! How are you? I miss you so much. In your letter you asked me to tell you about Moscow. Well, it is a very beautiful city especially in autumn when all the trees are of different colours.

I often go for a walk with my friends and we enjoy all the beautiful sights of the capital. The heart of Moscow is the Kremlin. It's an ancient fortress with beautiful churches inside. There you can see the Tsar-Cannon and the Tsar-Bell, the biggest cannon and bell in the world. My favourite place in Moscow is the All-Russia Exhibition Centre, which is famous for its fountains. It is especially attractive in autumn and we often go roller-skating there.

Moscow is a unique city, where history and modern life are brought together. On the one hand, you can enjoy traditional Russian holidays and take part in celebrating Maslenitsa and other Russian festivals, but on the other hand, Moscow is a modern 24-hour city where you can visit different theatres, cinemas and exhibitions.

You should by all means visit Moscow and I would be glad to meet you and show you all interesting sights. I will also show you my school, which is very modern and well-equipped. By the way, will you tell me about your school and school life? Do you have any clubs at school? How do you usually spend your spare time?

Please write back. I look forward to your reply.

Bye,

Ivan Petrov

2.

1 December 2005

Dear John,

Thanks for your letter. I'll do my best to answer your questions.

Well, first of all, if you come to Russia in May, most places will be quite warm, but if I were you, I would pack a pullover too as the evenings can get a bit cold. And don't forget an umbrella. It often rains in spring.

If you enjoy visiting museums, galleries or theatres, spend a week in Moscow. There are a lot of different museums and galleries. The most famous of them are the Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts and the State Tretyakov Gallery. If you are fond of ancient Russian architecture, you could also try the towns of the Golden Ring, which are famous for their churches, cathedrals and monasteries.

If you have enough time, I would recommend you to visit St. Petersburg, the second largest city in Russia. There you can enjoy numerous palaces and park complexes. Don't forget your camera — you will take a lot of great photos! Let me know what you want and I'll try to book all the tours for you.

As to Russian food, I think you'll enjoy traditional Russian dishes such as cabbage soup and borsch, pelmeni (meat-filled dumplings), Russian salad and, of course, pancakes with caviar or honey. Make sure you try kvass (a beverage made from fermented rye bread)!

That's all for now,

Best wishes,

Andrew

UNIT 15

CULTURE

Russian Culture

Russia is a country with long-standing cultural traditions dating back to the pagan times. It is the homeland of many world-famous artists, writers, poets, architects, sculptors, musicians and dancers. Russian contribution to the world culture is hard to overestimate.

Russia is famous for its icon painting, which it inherited from Byzantium. The art of icon painting started in Russia in the 8th and 9th centuries. But only in the 14th century icon painting in Russia took on a much greater degree of personal expression. The most famous figure in this change was Andrey Rublyov, whose works can be viewed in both the Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow and the Russian Museum in St. Petersburg.

Russia is proud of its famous artists, whose pictures one can see in different picture galleries. They are Levitan, Repin, Surikov, Serov, Vasnetsov and a lot of others, who lived in the past and who are working nowadays.

Russia is proud of its writers and poets. Alexander Pushkin is one of them. He created a new linguistic synthesis that is still in use. In his later years he moved towards the realism that dominated in the 19th-century literature.

The poet and novelist Mikhail Lermontov succeeded Alexander Pushkin. His descriptions, in both lyric and narrative poems are unique for their power and depth.

The novelist and philosopher, Leo Tolstoy was a man of wide interests. And in his novels he tried to discover truth about the nature of human existence and human behaviour.

There are many other prominent writers and poets, and one of them is Fyodor Dostoyevsky. He tried to find out the nature in extremes of human behaviour, such as crime and rebellion.

Anton Chekhov tried to understand the particular circumstances of common human lives. He describes his characters with irony, pity or disgust.

The poet and novelist Ivan Bunin, was the first Russian writer to receive the Nobel Prize for Literature (1933). He worked primarily in short prose form.

Russia is proud of its famous musicians and composers. There are many outstanding Russian composers who wrote classical music, such as A. Schnittke, A. Skryabin, S. Prokofiev, D. Shostakovich, S. Rachmaninov, P. Tchaikovsky, A. Borodin, I. Stravinsky and many others. There is a tendency to speak about classical music with particular reference to the music of the past to the 19th century. However, the term also includes music being written now, and we may speak of modern classical music.

Russia is proud of its ballet, which is one of the famous in the world.

There is still a lot to say about Russian culture, as this theme is inexhaustible when we speak about Russia. Russia's cultural heritage is enormous and priceless indeed. And Russian people keep it up and are very proud of it.

Vocabulary

long-standing — долгий
pagan — языческий
to overestimate — переоценивать
to be inherited — наследовать
Byzantium — Византия
to take on — приобретать
personal expression — выражение личности
linguistic synthesis — лингвистический синтез
to succeed — сменять

existence — существование
disgust — отвращение
rebellion — бунт
particular circumstance — особое обстоятельство
reference — ссылка
term — термин
inexhaustible — неисчерпаемый
heritage — наследие
enormous — огромный
priceless — бесценный
to keep up — сохранять

Questions

1. What famous Russian painters do you know? 2. What do you know about icon painting? 3. What famous Russian writers and poets do you know? 4. Who is your favourite writer and why? 5. Who is your favourite poet and why? 6. What prominent Russian composers do you know? 7. What style of music do you prefer? 8. Who is your favourite composer? 9. Do you like Russian ballet? Why? 10. Why do Russian people keep cultural heritage up?

Moscow Museums and Galleries

Moscow is a cultural capital of Russia. It is famous for its museums, galleries, monuments and churches. All these attract a lot of tourists to Moscow. The Kremlin is the heart of Moscow. It is the ancient centre of Moscow. Today it is a museum. It is situated on Borovitsky Hill on the left bank of the Moskva River and considered one of the most beautiful architectural ensembles in the world. In 1156 the Kremlin was fortified with ramparts and in 1367 white stone towers and walls were erected. Brick buildings were added between 1485 and 1495. The Moscow Kremlin contains fine examples of Russian architecture of the 15th to 17th centuries: the Cathedrals of the Assumption, the Annunciation and the Archangel, Ivan the Great's Bell Tower, the Faceted Palace, the Terem Palace, the Senate Building, the Large Kremlin Palace and the Armoury. The State Kremlin Palace was built between 1959 and 1961. There are 20 Kremlin towers and the most notable are the Spasskaya Tower where one can see the Kremlin clock, the Nikolskaya, the Trinity and the Borovitskaya Towers. The Tsar Cannon (16th century) and the Tsar Bell (18th century) are remarkable achievements of Russian cast ironwork. The President of the Russian Federation has his residence in the Kremlin.

The Armoury was first intended as an arms and armour workshop attached to the royal court. Jewellers and icon-painters came here later. The work of the Kremlin masters ceased under Peter the Great, and the Kremlin Armoury became a royal treasure in the 18th century. A new building was constructed in 1844–51. The Armoury was the first museum in Moscow. The Diamond Fund was added to the Armoury later. This exhibition displays unique state treasures, including a large imperial crown of gold, silver, diamonds and pearls made for the coronation of Catherine the Great, the huge, world-famous Orlov and Shah diamonds, and the Big Bouquet — a magnificent piece of jewellery set with diamonds and emeralds (18th century). The exhibition also features a collection of Yakut diamonds and masterpieces by modern jewellers.

Victory Park on Poklonnaya Hill is the Memorial to the Victory in the Great Patriotic War. There is a museum, monumental sculptures, open-air displays and the churches. The memorial was

built on the highest point of Poklonnaya Hill in Victory Park. The museum is the central feature. The Church of St. George the Victor, the patron saint of Moscow, stands to the left of the central pathway. There is an exhibition of military hardware dating to the Second World War in the park.

The Polytechnical Museum was opened in 1872 on the initiative of Moscow University scientists. The modern building was erected in 1875–1907. The museum was a transmitter of scientific knowledge and technological achievements. After the 1917 Revolution public debates as well as poetry readings were held there. In the 1960s the performances in the Polytechnical Museum of the famous Soviet poets enjoyed great popularity.

The Central Museum of Armed Forces was opened in the GUM building. In 1921 it was transformed into the Museum of the Red Army and Navy, which in 1928 was located in the House of the Red Army (now the House of the Russian Army). There are 24 halls in the museum. More than 8,000 exhibits are displayed over an area of 5,000 square metres. Among those are the famous T-34 tank, banners of the defeated fascist Germany, documents and photographs.

There are some museums in Moscow which are connected with biology and zoology. They are the Biology Museum, Darwin Museum and Zoological Museum. They attract a lot of children and adults.

There are a lot of museums connected with the famous Russian writers, poets, composers, artists and actors. They also attract a lot of public.

And, of course, there are famous art galleries in Moscow, which are well-known all over the world. They are the State Tretyakov Gallery and the Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts. The State Tretyakov Gallery is a treasure house of Russian fine art, with its masterpieces. It was founded in 1856 by Pavel Tretyakov. In 1892 Tretyakov donated his collection (1,287 paintings, 518 drawings and 9 sculptures) to the city of Moscow. Now the gallery owns 100 thousand works of art. The Tretyakov mansion is a magnificent building with its own church and the bell tower dedicated to St. Nicholas. We can see paintings of outstanding Russian artists such as Repin, Vasnetsov, Shishkin, Surikov, Benua, Korovin, etc., in the Tretyakov Gallery.

The Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts was founded by Ivan Tsvetayev, a professor of Moscow University and a father of the famous poet Marina Tsvetayeva. The original collection consisted of copies of classical and ancient original art. The superb exhibition of Western European paintings appeared later. The nearby Museum of Private Collections was opened in 1993.

Of course, it's impossible to tell you about all museums and galleries in Moscow. You should just believe that Moscow and its citizens are proud of their museums and galleries.

Vocabulary

ancient — древний
to be fortified — сооружать
укрепление
rampart — ров
brick — кирпич
Cathedral of Assumption —
Успенский собор
Cathedral of Annunciation —
Благовещенский собор
Cathedral of Archangel — Архан-
гельский собор
Tsar Cannon — Царь-пушка
Tsar Bell — Царь-колокол
cast ironwork — образец изделия
из железа
Armoury — Оружейная палата
armour workshop — оружейная
мастерская

royal treasure — царская сокро-
вищница
Diamond Fund — Алмазный фонд
open-air display — экспозиция
на открытом воздухе
jewellery set — набор ювелирных
украшений
military hardware — военное
тяжелое вооружение
Navy — Военно-морской флот
adult — взрослый
masterpiece — шедевр
to donate — жертвовать
mansion — большой особняк,
усадьба
to dedicate — посвящать
superb exhibition — великолеп-
ная выставка

Questions

1. Why is Moscow a cultural capital of Russia? 2. What is the ancient centre of Moscow? 3. What do you know about the history of the Kremlin? 4. What is the Armoury famous for? 5. What is the Diamond Fund famous for? 6. What do you know about Victory Park on Poklonnaya Hill? 7. Who is your favourite painter and why? 8. What do you know about Pavel Tretyakov? 9. What is known about the Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts? 10. What is your favourite museum and why?

Museums and Art Galleries in St. Petersburg

St. Petersburg is called the second cultural capital of Russia. The city was founded by Peter the Great in 1703, and it eventually became one of the most beautiful European cities, an important cultural and scientific centre of Russia. The location of St. Petersburg in the delta of the Neva played a very important role in appearance of the city and its palaces and museums. There are a lot of palaces and museums, which attract tourists from all parts of the world. Among them is the famous Winter Palace, one of the Europe's most fascinating palaces and a monument to Peter the Great's daughter, Empress Elizabeth Petrovna. It was erected by the famous sculptor Bartolomeo Carlo Rastrelli. In the 18th century it became a place for collections of paintings. The name Hermitage is in no way related to the collecting of artworks, but later on it became attached to the entire ensemble — famous museum, where one can see an enormous collection of paintings, sculptures, china, arms and a lot of other historical and unique things. It's one of the top attractions in the city.

Another famous palace, the Mikhailovsky Palace was created by Rossi and in 1898 became the museum of Russian art in St. Petersburg (like the Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow). The museum collections contain over 300,000 exhibits, including old Russian icons, paintings by Karl Briulov, Ivan Aivazovsky, Ivan Shishkin and other famous Russian artists.

There are famous cathedrals and churches, which are masterpieces of arts in the city. One of them is magnificent St. Isaac's Cathedral. The cathedral is the fourth Petersburg church dedicated to St. Isaac, a legendary Byzantine monk whose feast day happened to be the birthday of Peter I. In 1819 the foundation stone of the cathedral was laid, and only in 1858 the church took its final shape. It is the construction of the highly advanced architectural thought and engineering skills of the 19th century. Now it is a museum.

Another famous museum is the Church of the Saviour on the Blood. It has a very sad history. On March 1, 1881, just at the same place where the church is now, Emperor Alexander II was fatally wounded and died. The very next day his son and heir Alexander III took the decision that a church dedicated to the Resurrection

of Christ should be built on that site. This church, built in 1907 and is better known as the Church of the Saviour on the Blood, became the most exotic structure in St. Petersburg.

There are a lot of other palaces and churches which are famous all over the world, and among them are the Kazan Cathedral, the Naval Cathedral of St. Nicholas, Peterhof, Oranienbaum, Tsarskoe Selo, Pavlovsk, Peter and Paul Fortress, Menshikov Palace, the Ethnographic museum, the Suvorov memorial museum and a lot of others. All of them show the history and the development of Russia, its life and victories during the centuries.

Vocabulary

to found — основывать
eventually — в конце концов
location — расположение
delta — дельта (*реки*)
fascinating — чудесный, очаровательный
empress — императрица
to erect — сооружать
to be related — быть связанным
enormous — огромный
china — фарфор
unique — уникальный
top attraction — самое привлекательное место
to contain — содержать
exhibit — экспонат
icon — икона
masterpiece — шедевр
to dedicate — посвящать

Byzantine — византийский
monk — монах
feast day — церковный праздник; день (*святого*)
foundation stone was laid — был заложен камень в основание
shape — форма
advanced architectural thought — прогрессивная архитектурная мысль
engineering skills — технические умения
Saviour on the Blood — Спас на Крови (*храм*)
to be fatally wounded — быть смертельно раненным
decision — решение
Resurrection of Christ — Воскресение Христово

Questions

1. Why is St. Petersburg called the second cultural capital of Russia? 2. Who and when founded the city? 3. Where is it situated? 4. What do you know about the Winter Palace? 5. Have you ever been there? 6. What exhibits do you like there? 7. What other palaces do you know in the city? 8. What cathedrals and churches in the city are famous all over the world? 9. What is your favourite museum in St. Petersburg and why? 10. Why does St. Petersburg attract tourists?

Russian Achievements and Success

Our country is great, and I'm very proud of it. Russia is famous for its outstanding people — scientists, writers, poets, travellers and explorers. Russia is a stable and democratic society. Its citizens have many freedoms, among them freedom of speech, religion and the press. Russia is a member of the United Nations. Russia is one of the largest trading countries. It has a lot of energy resources and exports oil and natural gas. Russia has for centuries encouraged research and innovation and it has a lot of achievements throughout the 20th century. Nobel Prizes for science, literature and peace have been won by many Russian citizens. In the fields of art my country is famous all over the world.

Russia is famous for its ancient churches, cathedrals, towns, etc. Moscow, the capital of Russia, is famous for its monuments to outstanding people, churches, galleries, theatres, squares and streets.

The heart of Moscow is Red Square. It's my favourite place in my native city. I show it to all my guests from different countries. It is our history, and I'd like to tell you some facts about the buildings in it. St. Basil's Cathedral was built in 1551–61 after the victory over the Kazan Kingdom. It's a magnificent Cathedral with eight churches placed around the tallest ninth one. There is a monument to Minin and Pozharsky in front of the Cathedral. It was built in 1818, and it was the first statue put up in Moscow. Minin and Pozharsky were heroes of the people's struggle in the war against Poland in 1612. You can see Lobnoye Mesto near the Cathedral. It was erected in the 16th century; the tsar's orders were read from it, also it was used as a place for execution. The tallest tower of the Kremlin is the Spasskaya Tower. It's also in Red Square. It's one of the symbols of Moscow, because the Kremlin clock made in the 16th century is on it. The clock strikes on the hour, half the hour and the quarter of the hour. The Lenin Mausoleum is in the centre of the square. It was at first made of wood; and in 1930 it was rebuilt and made of stone, brick, marble and granite. The State History Museum was opened in 1883. It has a rich collection of documents, drawings, pictures, materials about the country's past and Russia's great people. The State Department Store (GUM) is one of the largest department stores in the country. It is an impressive building with a glass roof.

Of course, the most ancient part of Moscow is the Kremlin. Nowadays the Kremlin centre looks truly magnificent with its many-domed cathedrals in Cathedral Square and with its Tsar Bell and Tsar Cannon.

A very interesting place in Moscow is the Cathedral of Christ the Saviour. The original cathedral was erected by the order of Emperor Alexander as a token of the Russian people's gratitude to God for the deliverance of Russia from Napoleon's invasion in 1812. In 1931 it was demolished by orders from Josef Stalin. In 1995 Moscow's Mayor Yuri Luzhkov and the world-famous musician Mstislav Rostropovich laid the first stone in the foundation of the new Cathedral of Christ the Saviour. Today you can admire this Cathedral in the centre of Moscow.

People in Russia keep up their old traditions and are very proud of them. They celebrate religious holidays such as Easter, Christmas, Maslenitsa. They eat traditional food for Maslenitsa such as pancakes with honey, caviar or sour cream, they colour eggs, bake kulich cakes, make a paskha out of cottage cheese for Easter. Many Russians are religious people. The main church in Russia is the Orthodox Church, but there are other religions too. The Orthodox Church has survived during the hard times, and now we speak about a rebirth of religion in our country.

Russian people are open-hearted, hospitable, friendly. They like to invite guests to their places, they like to give traditional souvenirs to their foreign friends as Matryoshka dolls, beautifully painted mugs, plates and spoons from the village of Khokhloma and Palekh boxes, art books, badges, etc.

We are proud of our famous and talented poets and writers such as Alexander Pushkin, Michael Lermontov and many others. We are proud of our famous composer Peter Tchaikovsky and one of our famous artists Isaak Levitan. We can see his paintings and paintings by other outstanding Russian artists such as Repin, Vasnetsov, Shishkin, Surikov, Benua, Korovin, etc. in the Tretyakov Gallery. It is one of the most famous and well-known picture galleries in our country and in the world. It is situated in the centre of Moscow and is named after its founder Pavel Tretyakov. He began to collect Russian paintings in 1856. He was a famous patron of arts. In 1892 Tretyakov donated his collection to Moscow.

So I'm very proud of my country, my native city and people who brought a lot of fame to my country. And I invite everyone who has never been to my country to visit it and to see its achievements with their own eyes.

Vocabulary

United Nations — Организация Объединенных Наций

energy resources — энергетические ресурсы

Kazan Kingdom — Казанское царство

magnificent — изумительный, чудесный

Mausoleum — Мавзолей

ancient — древний

to erect — сооружать

token — знак

gratitude — благодарность, признательность

deliverance — освобождение, избавление

invasion — вторжение, нашествие

Cathedral of Christ the Saviour — храм Христа Спасителя

to demolish — разрушать, сносить

Orthodox Church — православная церковь

rebirth — возрождение

founder — основатель

Questions

1. What famous Russian scientists, writers, poets and artists do you know? 2. What is your favourite place in Moscow and why? 3. What do you know about Red Square? 4. What do you know about the Kremlin? 5. Have you ever been to the Tretyakov Gallery? What are your favourite paintings and artists? 6. What museums in Moscow do you like to visit? 7. What religious holidays do people celebrate in Russia? 8. What is the traditional food for Maslenitsa and Easter? 9. Why are you proud of your country?

Artistic and Cultural Life in Britain

Artistic and cultural life in Britain is rather rich. It passed through several stages in its development. The Saxon King Alfred encouraged the arts and the culture. Under him Latin works in Old English were translated. Art, culture and literature were developed

during the reign of Elizabeth I. It was the time when William Shakespeare lived. During the reign of Queen Victoria the country became very powerful. As a result of industrialization and international trade the country saw another cultural and artistic heyday.

The development of arts and culture was interrupted by the World Wars.

Immigrants who have arrived in Britain from all countries of the Commonwealth since 1945 have brought their cultures and arts with them. Monuments and traces of past are everywhere in Britain. There are buildings of all styles and periods in the country, especially in big cities. A great number of museums and galleries display interesting finds from all parts of the world.

London is one of the leading world centres for music, drama, opera and dance. Many British playwrights, composers, sculptors, painters, writers, actors, singers and dancers are known all over the world.

The theatre has always been very strong in Britain. Its centre is London, where successful plays can sometimes run without a break for many years, the musical “Cats”, for example. British theatre has a fine acting tradition. Broadway in the USA, when looking for its next musicals, pays close attention to London productions. In short, British theatre is much admired.

Cinema in Britain is often regarded as not quite part of “the arts” at all — it is simply entertainment. Though cinema-going is a regular habit for a much larger number of people than is theartre-going.

Classical music in Britain is a minority interest. Few classical musicians become well-known to the public. Despite this, thousands of British people are dedicated musicians and many public libraries have a well-stocked music section. Several British orchestras, soloists, singers, choirs, opera companies and ballet companies have international reputation.

Since the 1960s popular music in Britain has been an enormous and profitable industry. Many worldwide trends have come out of Britain, and British “pop” artists are famous for their popular music and folk music.

Many people in the literary world say that British literature at the end of the 20th century has lost its way. The last British author

to win the Nobel Prize for literature was William Golding, in 1983. But many others disagree with this opinion. “The Lord of the Rings” is called the greatest book of the 20th century, and Tolkien is called one of the greatest writers.

The vast majority of the books that are read in Britain can't be classified as “serious” literature. But at the very end of the 20th century Joanne Kathleen Rowling with her famous Harry Potter appeared. And nowadays a lot of children and adults read her books about Harry Potter with great pleasure.

Painting and sculpture are not as widely popular as music is in Britain. There is a general feeling that you have to be a specialist to appreciate them, especially if they are contemporary. Small private art galleries are rare. Nevertheless, London is one of the main centres of the international collector's world. The two major auction houses of Sotheby's and Christie's are world-famous.

Vocabulary

to encourage — поощрять, поддерживать
reign — правление
heyday — расцвет
to be interrupted — быть прерванным
find — находка
playwright — драматург
to run — идти (*о пьесе*)
break — перерыв
to admire — восхищаться

entertainment — развлечение
soloist — солист
minority — меньшинство
profitable — доходный
trend — течение
to disagree — не соглашаться
vast majority — подавляющее большинство
to appreciate — оценивать
contemporary — современный
nevertheless — однако

Questions

1. What stages in the development of arts and culture in Britain do you know? 2. What did immigrants from the Commonwealth bring with them in 1945? 3. What is one of the leading world centres for music, drama, opera and dance in Britain? 4. What do you know about the theatre in Britain? 5. What do you know about the cinema in Britain? 6. What do you know about music in Britain? 7. What do you know about literature in Britain? 8. What do you know about painting and sculpture in Britain?

London Museums and Galleries

London is a cultural capital of Great Britain. It is famous for its museums and galleries. There are a lot of museums and galleries in the city, which attract a lot of tourists.

The British Museum is the oldest museum and attracts millions of visitors each year. It was founded in 1753 by an act of the Parliament. The enormous collection includes treasures from the Egyptian, Greek and Roman civilizations through to medieval European art and Japanese and Asian antiquities. Highlights include the Rosetta Stone (dates from 195 BC and is the key to understand ancient Egyptian picture writings and the hieroglyphs), the Egyptian mummies, sculptures from the Greek Pantheon in Athens, and Sutton Hoo treasure (comes from the burial site of 7th-century Anglo-Saxon King in Suffolk). In 1857 the famous domed Reading Room was built.

The Natural History Museum has a fine collection of dinosaurs, birds, mammals and plant life, as well as geology and ecology displays. It is divided into five departments covering botany, entomology, mineralogy, palaeontology and zoology. It was opened in 1881. Its research and educational departments continue to make a vital contribution to the world's store on information about our planet and its inhabitants.

The Science Museum has five floors packed with imaginative displays about science and technology from the Industrial Revolution through to space exploration, and even the digital age in the Wing, opened in 2000.

The Museum of London at the Barbican takes a look at the fascinating history of the city and its people from prehistoric times to the present day. It is the largest and the most comprehensive city museum in the world. There is also a research library containing a vast amount of material relating to London. The museum has a lively and original outlook — quite the opposite of the popular idea of a museum as a stuffy, boring place. It is a unique museum.

At the London Transport Museum trams, buses and even underground trains are among the colourful displays. It displays London's first horse-drawn omnibus of 1829 and a locomotive used on the Circle Line in 1866. The Museum houses the old Flower Market.

In the National Army Museum you'll discover the compelling story of the British soldier in peace and in war through five centuries, from Tudor times to the present day. It shows its visitors how soldiers lived, worked and fought. The treasures on display include medals, paintings, weapons and items from one of the world's finest collections of military costume.

The National Maritime Museum in Greenwich was opened in 1937. The museum displays cover naval history from Tudor times to the present day. There is a large collection of navigation instruments there. Two outposts of the museum should not be missed: the first will be seen at once by all visitors arriving by boat: the Cutty Sark, the last sailing clipper to be built, launched in 1869. Behind the museum, in Greenwich Park you can see the Old Royal Observatory, erected by Christopher Wren in 1675–76. The observatory moved out after World War II, but this is still the position of the zero meridian of longitude, marked on the cobbled yard.

The National Museum of Childhood in Bethnal Green displays over 4,000 toys past and present, from historic folk toys to Robots and Barbie. It is one of the largest collections on public view in the world. But it's more than just a toy museum — you will also discover many fine examples of children's books, costumes and nursery furniture.

The Museum of Moving Image explores the magical story of cinema, television and video, from its early beginnings in 2,000 BC with shadow plays to the latest developments in TV technology. Visitors can also experience the wonderful interactive exhibits — they can read the news, fly over London “like Superman”, make their own cartoon. Popular with children of all ages the museum was voted by its visitors as their best-liked London attraction.

The Victoria and Albert Museum (V & A) is a national museum of fine and applied art, and covers all countries, periods and styles. Its collection includes sculpture, fashion and textiles, paintings, silver, glass, ceramics, jewellery, books prints and photographs from Britain and all over the world.

The National Gallery and the Tate Gallery are two big London art galleries. They have some very famous pictures in them. You can see the history of British art in the Tate Gallery besides the Thames. It was opened in 1897 and was named after the sugar millionaire Sir Henry Tate who gave the Victorian paintings and

paid for the building. The National Gallery, overlooking Trafalgar Square, has over 2,000 paintings in its collection covering more than 700 years of art. The pictures belong to the public and access to them is free. It has been since the Gallery was founded in 1824. Famous names in British history and culture from Tudor times to the 21st century are represented at the National Portrait Gallery.

One of the top London's attractions are Madame Tussaud's and the London Planetarium. The famous exhibition of waxworks was established in Paris in 1770 by Marie Tussaud, who later made her name with models of victims of the guillotine. She moved to London in 1802. This museum consists of several halls with wax images of outstanding political characters, poets and writers, world-famous film stars and musicians.

You can see a lot of other museums in London, and besides there is a show or a new exhibition every week in London. People like different things, and London has exhibitions of cars, boats, books, pictures, food, clothes, bicycles and what not. The saying "When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life" means that you can't be bored in London.

Vocabulary

enormous — огромный
treasure — сокровище
medieval — средневековый
antiquity — древность, старина
highlight — в центре внимания
hieroglyphs — иероглифы
mummies — мумии
burial site — курган
mammal — млекопитающее
vital contribution — значительный вклад
space exploration — исследование космоса

fascinating — очаровательный
comprehensive — обширный
stuffy — скучный
compelling story — захватывающий рассказ
naval — военно-морской
longitude — долгота
cobbled yard — двор, мощенный булыжником
nursery furniture — детская мебель
jewellery — драгоценности
waxwork — восковая фигура

Questions

1. Why is London a cultural capital of Britain? 2. What is London famous for? 3. Which is the oldest museum in London? 4. What museums in London do you know? 5. What art galleries in

London do you know? 6. What museums would you like to visit and why? 7. What galleries would you like to visit and why? 8. What do you know about the V & A museum? 9. What do you know about the famous exhibition of waxworks? 10. What does the saying “When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life” mean?

The Arts in the USA

As American culture evolved, American artists began to create their own art forms. The styles of American art are as diverse as the people. Just as there is no single ethnic group, there is also no single American style. American artists have been inspired by a variety of influences. Painters, sculptures, musicians and innovators in other fields have won fame both at home and abroad.

Until the 1940s, America’s visual arts — painting and sculpture — were primarily influenced by European trends. American art developed mainly through subject matter and skills, as artists imitated the established styles of the European masters. The most significant developments in American art emerged in the years following the Second World War.

Abstract expressionism, which was begun by a group of New York artists in the 1940s, became the first American art movement to attract the attention of artists abroad. Abstract expressionism focused on such things as the utilization of space, dimension, the interrelationship of colours. The international influence of America’s abstract expressionists was so great that the painting centre of the world shifted from Paris to New York. Among the movement’s leaders were Jackson Pollack (1912–54), Willem de Kooning and Mark Rothko.

During this period American sculpture developed new styles of their own. Alexander Calder (1898–1976) designed the mobile. David Smith (1906–65) was the first sculptor to work with welded metals.

The reaction to abstract expressionism continued with a movement called “pop art” (“pop” is short for “popular”). The members of this movement attempted to produce works of art that would reflect the pervasive influence of mass marketing, mass media and other trends in American popular culture. Important in the

pop-art movement were Andy Warhol (1930–87), famous for his multiple rows of soup cans and multiple portraits of Marilyn Monroe; and Roy Lichtenstein, recognized for his mimicry of well-known comic strips.

Recent trends in art emphasize variety and innovation. Movements of the 1970s and 80s include performance art, earth art, conceptual art, graffiti art, neo- and figural-expressionism, and neo-geo art.

Unique forms and styles of music have been invented in America. Ragtime, blues, jazz, country-western, rock'n'roll, rock and the musical were all born in America.

Closely tied to developments in American music was modern dance, which emerged in America as a new art form early in the country. The first and most influential leader of the movement was Isadora Duncan (1878–1927). America's newest generation of modern dance choreographers includes Alvin Ailey whose style features African dance elements, and Twyla Tharp, who experiments with new areas for dance such as video and films.

In the past three decades dance, both ballet and modern, has been the most rapidly developing performing art in the nation. New York City has become the dance centre of the world.

Born in Hollywood after the turn of the century, the motion picture became the popular art form of the century. Audiences were charmed by westerns, gangster films, comedies, musicals.

Vocabulary

to evolve — развиваться
diverse — разнообразный
to inspire — вдохновлять
abroad — за граница
visual art — изобразительное искусство
to imitate — имитировать
to establish — устанавливать
to emerge — появляться
to attract — привлекать
abstract expressionism — абстрактный экспрессионизм
to focus — фокусировать
dimension — размер, измерение

utilization of space — использование пространства
interrelationship of colour — взаимная связь цветов
to shift — перемещаться
welded metal — сварной металл
mobile — абстрактная скульптура с подвижными частями
pervasive — распространяющийся повсюду
mass marketing — массовый маркетинг, рынок
mass media — средства массовой информации

trend — течение
multiple rows of soup cans —
многочисленные ряды
консервных банок
с супом

multiple portraits — многочис-
ленные портреты
to tie — завязывать
rapidly — быстро
motion picture — кино

Questions

1. How did the styles of American art develop? 2. What influenced the development of America's visual arts until the 1940s? 3. When did the most significant developments in American art emerge? 4. When did abstract expressionism begin to develop in America? 5. What artists were among the movement's leaders? 6. What unique forms and styles of music have been developed in America? 7. What do you know about American modern dance? 8. What was born in Hollywood?

Museums and Galleries in Washington, DC

The United States Capitol stands proudly at the top of the hill at the east end of the Mall, an American icon, a symbol of democracy and the most prominent landmark of Washington, DC. The Capitol's frescoes and art collection qualify it as a notable museum. Million tourists come, above all, to brush shoulders with history. The dominant feature of the Capitol is its Dome. It is crowned by the statue "Freedom". The part of the Capitol is a museum now.

The Smithsonian Institution owes its existence to a wealthy Englishman who died in 1829 without ever having visited America. A scientist himself, James Smithson mysteriously bequeathed his entire half million at Washington, under the name of the Smithsonian Institution, "an establishment for the increase and diffusion of knowledge among men".

Nicknamed "The Castle", the newly-built Smithsonian was rife with —redbrick turrets and towers. It was built in the middle of the 19th century. It became an instant attraction for museum-goers and one of the major landmarks on the Mall. Nowadays it is the

largest museum complex of the world. All the museums, which belong to the Smithsonian Institution, have free tickets, and most of them are on the Mall.

As for James Smithson, he finally crossed the Atlantic in 1904 when his remains were exhumed in Europe and reburied in a special crypt near the main entrance of the Smithsonian's original red-brick building.

The National Air and Space Museum has 23 main exhibition galleries pay homage to some of the most ingenious and beautiful crafted objects of flight, from the Wright brother's airplane to the complex and powered ships. Another highlight there is the moon rock, displayed so that the public can touch it.

The National Museum of American History has a variety of fascinating objects, connected with American culture. On the first floor there are tools of the Industrial Revolution, as well as locomotives, farm equipment and objects of the 20th century. One can see mementos of American cultural history on the second floor. The third floor features a stirring tribute to the American presidency.

The National Gallery of Arts displays the collections from the Middle Ages through to the 20th century, including Italian Renaissance works, Dutch masters, French impressionists and all ages of American art. The newer East Building is often considered a work of art in itself.

The Library of Congress is not only the library, it is also the museum. One can see the main reading room with its famous allegorical figures: Religion, History, Commerce, Art, Philosophy, Poetry, Law and Science. There is a collection of ancient manuscripts including Gutenberg Bible and the handwritten Giant Bible of Mainz.

The tourists can also visit the National Cathedral. It is the sixth largest cathedral in the world. The Cathedral is officially named the Church of Saint Peter and Saint Paul.

Mount Vernon is a mansion on the banks of the Potomac River. George Washington spent part of his childhood here and returned here after his presidency. One can see the rooms here where he lived.

The Hirshhorn Museum has a collection of contemporary 4,000 paintings and 2,000 sculptures. The museum is known for displaying the newest works of art.

The US Holocaust Memorial stands alone in Washington. It is a museum of the horrors. The museum was opened in 1993. It is warning to the world that to forget the Holocaust is to repeat one of the most terrible chapters of history.

There are many other interesting museums and galleries in Washington, DC. And of course, Washington, DC is famous for its memorials. Everyone knows the Jefferson Memorial, the Lincoln Memorial, the Washington Monument, the Arlington Memorial Cemetery, the Vietnam Memorial and the Korean War Memorial.

Vocabulary

Mall — Мол, место для гуляния
icon — икона, символ
most prominent landmark — самое заметное здание
to qualify — делать
notable — выдающийся, заметный
to brush shoulders with history — соприкоснуться с историей
dominant — преобладающий
to owe — быть обязанным
existence — существование
to bequeath — завещать
entire — полный
establishment — основание
diffusion — распространение
increase — увеличение
rife — обычный
red brick — красный кирпич
turret — башенка
instant — немедленный
remains — останки
to exhume — эксгумировать

to rebury — перезахоронить
crypt — склеп
homage — почтение
ingenious — гениальный, изобретательный
fascinating — интереснейший
mementos — изделия
to feature a stirring tribute — с трепетом отдавать дань
presidency — президентство
Renaissance — эпоха Возрождения
Dutch — датчане
handwritten — рукописный
mansion — усадьба, поместье
childhood — детство
to display — выставлять
contemporary — современный
Holocaust — Холокост (*уничтожение еврейского населения фашистами во время Второй мировой войны*)
horror — ужас

Questions

1. Where is the Capitol situated? 2. What is the Capitol crowned by? 3. How many main exhibition galleries are there in the National Air and Space Museum? 4. What is the highlight in the National Air and Space Museum? 5. What do you know about the National

Museum of American History? 6. What does the National Gallery of Arts display? 7. What do you know about the Library of Congress? 8. What other museums in Washington, DC do you know?

Cultural Life in New York

New York is often called the cultural capital of the USA. There are more than 800 museums in New York. One of the best-known is the Metropolitan Museum of Art. It is the largest art museum in the United States. Its magnificent collection of European and American paintings contains works of the greatest masters of art world. The second best-known is the Museum of Modern Art. The museum contains wonderful collections of modern art and photography. The Guggenheim Museum of Modern Art contains an impressive collection of 51 modern artists ranging from impressionists to abstractionists. The unusual circular building of the museum was designed by F. L. Wright.

No other city in the world offers as many theaters as New York does where there is a daily choice of almost two hundred productions. You can see the newest plays and shows on Broadway. But away from the bright lights of Broadway there are many smaller theaters. Their plays are called “off-Broadway”, and they are often more unusual than the Broadway shows. Some Broadway musicals like “Cats”, “Miss Saigon” live for decades, some off-Broadway shows live for a week.

The Metropolitan Opera at Lincoln Center is known through the music world. International stars sing here from September until April. The Carnegie Hall is the city’s most popular concert hall. It was opened in 1891 with a concert conducted by P. I. Tchaikovsky. Music masters such as Arthur Toscanini, Leonard Bernstein, Isaac Stern, Frank Sinatra, the Beatles have made up the Carnegie bill.

New York is famous for its festivals and special events: summer jazz, one-act play marathons, international film series and musical celebrations from the classical to the avant-garde.

There are a lot of colleges and universities in New York, among them such giants as Columbia University, the State University of New York, the City University of New York, New York University and others.

The New York Public Library is the largest library of the city. You can see a lot of interesting things here: Gilbert Stuart's portrait of George Washington, Charles Dickens's desk and Thomas Jefferson's own handwritten copy of the Declaration of Independence.

Vocabulary

magnificent — изумительный

to contain — содержать

to range — простираться,
тянуться

circular — круглый

daily choice — ежедневный
выбор

unusual — необычный

decade — декада

Carnegie Hall — Карнеги-холл

to conduct — дирижировать

to make up — пополнять,
составлять

bill — афиша

one-act — одноактный

international film series —
международный фестиваль
телесериалов

avant-garde — авангард

giant — гигант

handwritten copy — рукописный
экземпляр

Questions

1. What city is often called the cultural capital of the USA?
2. What famous museums and art galleries are there in New York?
3. What do you know about them?
4. Where can one see the most popular plays in New York?
5. How long can they last?
6. What plays do people call "off-Broadway"?
7. What do you know about the Metropolitan Opera?
8. Who conducted the first concert there?
9. What famous universities are there in New York?
10. What can people see in the New York Public Library?

British Music and Musicians

The British music scene is extremely varied. There are many different types of music and groups that you can enjoy. If you want to, you can go to a techno night at the local club on Friday, a classical concert on Saturday and see a reggae band on stage on Sunday.

It is difficult for groups in Britain to have lots of fans or sell lots of records because there are so many different types of music. Bands

do not last long, and very few groups stay in the Top 20, a list of the best-selling records, for more than one or two weeks. It's a world where "everyone is famous for five minutes".

Pop music in Britain is influenced by music from all over the world. Many teenagers like reggae, which comes from Jamaica. They also enjoy dancing and listening to Black-American rap.

Some music in Britain is a mixture of styles. Ragga brings together rap and reggae, for example. Pop music is also influencing traditional music. Recently some young musicians of Asian origin have started to mix bhangra (traditional music from the Punjab region) with Western pop.

Most clubs play different types of music and attract different types of clubbers each night. To get into many clubs you have to be over 18 or 21. Sometimes you have to be a member and there's often a dress code: if they don't like the way you look, they will not let you in.

One of the most popular groups of the 1960s was the Beatles. John Lennon, Paul McCartney, George Harrison and Ringo Starr were in the group. "The Fabulous Four" came from Liverpool. They began playing together in 1959. They appeared in different clubs until a string of hits in 1962–63 made them Britain's top new band. What followed is usually called "Beatlemania". They became the voice of new generation. They had hit after hit on both sides of Atlantic. By 1970, though, a mixture of drugs arguments and money problems brought the band's career to the end.

Their Greatest Hits include: Love Me Do, I Want To Hold Your Hand, Help, Yesterday, All You Need is Love and others.

The Beatles were polite, wore suits and came from the north of England. The Rolling Stones were different. They didn't smile, they dressed like hippies and they came from London. Their music was different too — rough rock and roll instead of Lennon and McCartney's more complex, melodic songs. But although the Beatles were bigger stars in the 60s, the Stones have had a much longer career. Today they're still one of the world's top rock bands, both on stage and record.

Their Greatest Hits include: I Can't Get No Satisfaction, Paint It Black, Brown Sugar, Undercover of the Night and others.

Pop music is an important British export. Some modern groups, like The Police, Ultravox and Sky, and some modern singers, like

David Bowie, Elton John and Boy George, are well-known internationally.

But if you ever did a musical tour of Britain, you might get some surprise. Electric guitarists and pop singers are not the only musicians to be heard. There are many local traditions of music still very much alive today.

Let's start in the north, in Scotland. The national instrument is the bagpipes. To the Scots such music is the most exciting in the world. Scottish pipers led to the First World War, they led the soldiers into battle, played for their royal masters, and at weddings and funerals. The bagpipes are still very popular, and every town has a pipe band.

In the north of England we come to the land of the brass band. This is the country of factories and coal mines, many of which have their own bands. The Grimethorpe Colliery Band, for example, is internationally famous. The bands have an annual competition, and Britain's best classical composers write music especially for them.

Let's go to central and southern England. Music is always to be found in the village church, where the choir sings the old hymns which every schoolchild learns. Here you can also listen to old folk songs.

Now let's go west, and we will find the best choral music in Wales. The Welsh have always been famous for their singing. Even before the Romans came, 2,000 years ago, their "bards" were known to the ancient world. They still meet every year at the "Eisteddfod", a Welsh competition.

London, like all the great cities of Britain, has a long tradition of classical music. Every night English and international musicians perform in the concert halls and opera houses. London is one of the great classical music centres of the world.

Vocabulary

reggae — музыкальный стиль
(из Ямайки)

band — группа

records — записи

the Top 20 — лучшая двадцатка

to influence — влиять

mixture — смесь

origin — происхождение

Punjab — Пенджаб (*штат на северо-западе Индии*)

dress code — определенная одежда

clubber — посетитель клуба
The Fabulous Four — Великолеп-
ная четверка
string of hits — серия хитов
Beatlemania — битломания
generation — поколение
drugs — наркотики
hippies — хиппи
rough — жесткий, грубый

bagpipes — волынка
royal master — королевская особа
wedding — свадебная церемония
funeral — похороны
mine — шахта
choir — хор
folk songs — фольклорные,
народные песни
choral music — хоровая музыка

Questions

1. What do you know about different musical styles in Britain?
2. What is pop music influenced by in Britain? 3. What music is a mixture of styles? 4. How old do the clubbers have to be? 5. What do you know about the Beatles? 6. Have you heard their songs? 7. Do you like them? Why? 8. What do you know about the Rolling Stones? 9. Why were these groups so popular in Britain? 10. What do you know about folk music in Britain?

Music in America

Americans have contributed to many art forms, but the jazz, a type of music, is the only art form that was created in the United States. Jazz was created by Afro-Americans. The black slaves sang and played the music of their homeland. Jazz is a combination of the music of West Africa, the slaves' songs, and religious music. The musicians make the music up as they go along, or create the music up on the spot. The music was inspired by African culture but evolved directly from spirituals, ragtime and blues. Jazz is characterized by improvisation. That's why a jazz song might sound a little different each time it is played. By the 1940s you could not only hear jazz in clubs and bars, but in concert halls as well. Today, people from all over the world play jazz. Jazz musicians from the United States, Asia, South America and Europe meet and share their music at festivals on every continent. In this way jazz continues to grow and change.

Famous jazz singers and leaders are well-known all over the world. They are Duke Ellington, Louis Armstrong and Charlie Parker.

Although the improvisational style of early jazz survives today, jazz has moved on to new frontiers. Jazz musicians began to combine the rhythms of rock'n'roll and electronic instruments with traditional elements of jazz to form a blend of music called "fusion". Today jazz is extremely popular in America.

The influence of jazz is found in many types of American music. The music of George Gershwin (1898–1937), one of America's most popular composers, was strongly influenced by jazz.

Vocabulary

to contribute — вносить вклад
to create — создавать
homeland — родина
combination — сочетание
to inspire — вдохновлять,
воодушевлять
to evolve — развиваться

spiritual — религиозный
improvisation — импровизация
to make up — составлять
on the spot — на месте
to survive — выживать
blend — смесь
fusion — сплав

Questions

1. Who created jazz? 2. In what country was it created? 3. What music is jazz a combination of? 4. When did jazz become popular? 5. Why does jazz sound a little different each time? 6. In what countries is jazz popular nowadays? 7. Are you fond of jazz? 8. What popular jazz musicians do you know?

Russian Music and Musicians

Everybody in Russia likes music: some people enjoy classical music, others are fond of pop music. For many of them music is a voice for the thoughts and feelings. For others it's a harmless way to relax and have fun. So many people so many opinions.

Many modern musical genres came to Russia from the English-speaking countries. For example, jazz, blues, pop music and others.

There are many modern musical genres nowadays in the world. Here are some of them.

Light classical music consists of short classical works, which are easy to listen to, because the composer's aim was simply to entertain.

Jazz. Popular music first played by Afro-American groups in the Southern USA in the early 20th century characterized by improvisation and strong rhythms, called traditional jazz; similar music played by large bands for dancing, a later variation much influenced by the blues to produce an unhurried emotive style called modern jazz.

Pop music is a modern music of an uncomplicated character, played mainly on electric guitars and drums often with a singer. There are many styles of pop music such as rap, rave, reggae, soul, techno, trance, ragga and what not.

Dance music is music used for dancing including jazz and pop music.

Blues. Afro-American music originated in the work songs and spirituals of the rural American South in the late 19th century. It is characterized by melancholy lyrics, which relate tales of woe and unhappy love. The guitar is the dominant instrument, but harmonica and piano are also common.

Spiritual. Afro-Americans religious songs.

Background music is any music played softly as a background for conversation, etc.

Chamber music is orchestral, written for a chamber orchestra, but the category also includes works for smaller groups of instrumentalists or vocalists or soloists.

There are many outstanding Russian composers who wrote classical music, such as A. Schnittke, A. Skryabin, S. Prokofiev, D. Shostakovich, S. Rachmaninov, P. Tchaikovsky, A. Borodin, I. Stravinsky and many others. There is a tendency to use classical music with particular reference to the music of the past, up to and including the 19th century. However, the term also includes music being written now, and we may speak of modern classical music. As for me, I am fond of classical music and my favourite composer and pianist is S. Rachmaninov. I'd like to tell you about him.

Sergei Vasilievich Rachmaninov is a prominent Russian pianist and composer who was descendant of a noble family. He was born in 1873. After his parents had separated Rachmaninov lived in St. Petersburg with his mother. His cousin advised his mother to send him to Moscow to study under Nickolai Zverev. He went to Moscow Conservatoire and lived in Zverev's house for four years. Later he went to live with his aunt, whose daughter Natalia was later to

become his wife. He started writing prominent musical pieces while still a student. By 1892 he wrote the one-act opera *Aleko* and the piano pieces at the age of 19.

In 1895 he wrote his first symphony and in 1898 he was invited by the Philharmonic Society in London to conduct his orchestral fantasy *The Rock*. After he had worked as a conductor of the Imperial Grand Opera in Moscow, he started his tours abroad. In 1909 he visited the USA for the first time. He had by that time developed into one of the finest pianists of the time, and he remained pre-eminent in that respect throughout his life. Since 1910 he had been living in Moscow. In 1911–13 he conducted the philharmonic concerts. During the war of 1914–18 he played a lot for charity.

After the death of Skryabin, he decided to make a tour playing that composer's works only. It was from that time on that he became a much-travelled pianist. Being out of sympathy with the October Revolution in Russia, he left his country forever. He lived in Paris for a time and then spent most of his rest life in America still touring each year from January to April. He spent some of the summer months in Switzerland where he had acquired a small property on the lake of Lucerne.

His reputation with the public as a composer and a pianist has always been secure.

Vocabulary

voice — голос
harmless — безвредный, безобидный
genre — жанр
to entertain — развлекать
improvisation — импровизация
emotive — эмоциональный, волнующий
uncomplicated — несложный
dominant — доминирующий
spiritual — церковный, религиозный
woe — горе
background music — музыкальное сопровождение

chamber music — камерная музыка
soloist — солист
to be descendant of a noble family — быть потомком дворянского рода
to separate — разводиться, расходиться
musical pieces — музыкальные произведения
to conduct — дирижировать
The Rock — «Скала» (*оркестровая фантазия*)
tour — турне
abroad — за границу

remained pre-eminent in that respect — таким оставался всю свою жизнь
charity — благотворительность
forever — навсегда

much-travelled pianist — постоянно гастролирующий пианист
to acquire — приобретать
property — собственность
secure — высокий (*о репутации*)

Questions

1. What musical genres do you know? 2. What is meant by the terms classical or serious music, pop, jazz, etc.? 3. What genre do you prefer? 4. Is rock music an entertainment to young people or does it represent their values? 5. What values does classical music represent? 6. What values does rock and pop music represent? 7. What famous Russian composers do you know? 8. What composers do you prefer and why? 9. What do you know about S. Rachmaninov? 10. Have you ever heard his music?

Music in Our Life

Can you think of a day without music? We can hear music everywhere: in the streets and at home, over the radio and on TV, in the shops and in the parks. People all over the world are fond of music. They listen to music, they dance to music, they learn to play musical instruments.

But what is music? Specialists explain that music isn't only a combination of pleasant sounds. It is an art, which reflects life. There are a lot of different kinds of music. Some of them appeared long ago, and some are modern. For example, folk music appeared long ago, but it is still alive. There are many local performers, choirs and folk groups in Russia, but perhaps one of the most famous singers is Nadezhda Babkina. Folk songs are very tuneful and pleasant to listen to. Classical music is often associated with the music of the past. However, this style also includes music being written now, and we may speak of modern classical music. Rap is a modern musical style where the singer speaks or shouts the words in time to music with a steady beat. Such groups as Public Enemy or House of Pain are major in this style.

Great Britain has produced more popular music stars than any other country. Over the last 30 years rock and pop music have been very popular in Britain. The Beatles, with their style of singing, eloquent and exciting, is still one of the most popular groups. British groups often set new trends in music. New styles, groups and singers continue to appear. Some of the more recent pop groups are Dire Straits, Eurhythmics and Spice Girls. Many of the new bands have been able to use the changes in technology to develop their music. Computerized drum machines, synthesisers and other electronic instruments are now just as popular as the piano and electric guitars.

Tastes differ. So people's musical interests range from pop and rock music, which are extremely popular nowadays, especially among young people, to classical music and opera.

My favourite style of music is pop music because it is breathtaking and full of energy. When I listen to pop music, it makes me remember happy times and forget the problems of everyday life. It helps me to relax when I'm tired and entertains me when I'd like to have fun. My favourite group is ABBA. It was formed in 1973 in Sweden. ABBA's cheerful tunes made them international pop stars and one of the most successful groups of the 1970s. Their most famous songs (Waterloo, Money, Money, Money, Knowing Me, Knowing You, etc.) often topped European charts. Though the group doesn't exist any more, it is still popular with people of all ages. I can't but admire their style of singing. I find it fascinating and overwhelming. When I have free time, I can't help listening to their records. I also like having background music while I am working.

I wouldn't mind listening to dance music, especially when I go to disco clubs. This style of music is catchy and torch and I like catching tunes. It makes me more energetic.

It's a pity that many young people like to listen only to modern music. As for me, I enjoy listening to classical music too. I find it tuneful and appealing. Classical music is always a complex of emotions. It gives me delight, pleasure and a sense of happiness. Some pieces of classical music are really wonderful. Not long ago I listened to the First Piano Concerto, composed by Tchaikovsky. The power of his music captivated me. The impression was overwhelming.

The music I hate is heavy metal. I find it noisy and dreadful. When I listen to this style of music, it pictures in my mind dark days. Though some young people are fond of this style of music, it is not to everyone's taste. To my mind, too loud music can destroy our ears. I am indifferent to other styles of music. For example, I don't mind listening to jazz. Improvisation is an important part of this style, that's why a jazz song may sound a little different each time it is played. I think that jazz is a mixture of many different kinds of music, but I consider it a bit complicated.

My mother and father approve my tastes in music. Though they prefer to listen to classical and bard music, they think that on the whole, modern music is not too bad. My parents agree that each generation has its own tastes.

It goes without saying that music plays a very important role in people's life. It reflects our mood and emotions. Music appeals to our hearts and transforms our feelings. It conquers our souls and enriches our minds. Besides, listening to music is the perfect way to spend free time and not to feel bored. You can hardly find a person who doesn't like or need music, who never sings or dances. Music is beauty in sounds, it is our magic source of inspiration.

Vocabulary

folk music — народная музыка

choir — хор

tuneful — мелодичный

eloquent — проникновенный, выразительный

exciting — волнующий, возбуждающий

brehtaking — захватывающий дух

to relax — отдыхать

to entertain — развлекаться

background music — музыкальное или шумовое сопровождение

overwhelming — захватывающий, переполняющий, потрясающий

torch — сентиментальный

catching — захватывающий

to captivate — пленять, очаровывать

dreadful — ужасный

mind — ум

to destroy — разрушать

to be indifferent — быть безразличным

complicated — сложный

to approve — одобрять

to appeal — обращаться

to conquer — завоевывать

soul — душа

to enrich — обогащать

source of inspiration — источник вдохновения

Questions

1. What is your attitude to music? 2. How can music influence people? 3. What do you think about classical/rock/pop music? 4. What sort of music do you like? 5. What does music make you think of? 6. What music irritates you? 7. What famous British musicians/composers/singers/groups do you know? 8. Who is your favourite musician/singer? 9. Where and when do you listen to music? 10. Do you like to go to concerts? Why?

History of Music

Nobody knows for certain what the origin of music was. Music is certainly older than poetry and painting but as early man had no way of recording it, we can only guess what it sounded like. Watching a child banging on a drum with its hands on a piece of wood, it is easy to see that this is the simplest of instruments. It does not take much effort to produce a rhythm on it.

Wall paintings show what some of the first instruments looked like. Early civilizations had already discovered the three basic ways of producing music: blowing into a tube, striking an object and scraping a string. We know that Western music comes from the ancient Greeks. The musical scales we use now are based on certain sequences of notes, which the Greeks used to create a particular mood.

Until the 16th century most players of instruments were single performers, but as music became more widespread, orchestras and musical groups began to appear. This brought about the writing of music to be played by several musicians at one time. This can certainly be called the birth of modern music.

Until the early part of the 20th century there was certainly a distinction between popular music, the songs and dance tunes of the masses, and what we have come to call underground music. Up to that point, however, there were at least some points of contact between the two, and perhaps general recognition of what made a good voice or a good song. With the development of mass entertainment, popular music split away and has gradually developed a stronger life of its own, to the point where it has become

incompatible with the classics. In some respects, it is now dominated by the promotion of youth culture, so that a concert by Elton John is just as much a fashion event, and other artists may be promoting dance styles or social protest.

For this reason it is impossible to talk about popular music as if it were only unified art. The kind of music you like may depend on what kind of person you are. Curiously, there are now classical musicians and operatic singers who have achieved the status of rock stars and have been marketed in the same way. This seems to suggest that many young people enjoy classical music but do not wish to be associated with the lifestyle of those who are traditionally supposed to enjoy it. Or it may simply be that recording companies have discovered that there is an insatiable desire for “sounds”, and that classical music is beginning to sound exciting to a generation raised on rock.

Vocabulary

origin — происхождение
to bang — ударять
drum — барабан
to produce — производить
wall painting — настенные рисунки
to blow — дуть
tube — труба
to strike — ударять
to scrape — трогать, касаться
string — струна
scale — размер
sequence — последовательность

distinction — различие
widespread — широко распространенный
to appear — появляться
general recognition — всеобщее понимание
entertainment — развлечение
to split — разделяться
incompatible — несовместимый
promotion — продвижение
unified — объединенный
insatiable — ненасытный
to raise — воспитываться

Questions

1. What was the origin of music? 2. Which is older — music or poetry? 3. What do we know about the first musical instruments? 4. Where does the Western music come from? 5. In what century was the modern music born? 6. Why is popular music dominated now? 7. Can the style of music you like show what person you are?

Reading Preferences

I think that we can't live without books. There are a lot of different kinds of books in the world. For example, thrillers, historical novels, science fiction, adventure books and others. Most of them are with us during all our life. Boys all over the world like reading adventures, thrillers and horrors, whereas girls prefer romances, historical novels and poetry. Encyclopaedias, reference books and dictionaries help pupils to do well at school.

All the members of my family like reading very much. My father often reads newspapers and magazines. He thinks that it is the only way to be in the know of everything. And my mother is keen on reading romances and modern novels. For her they are more interesting than boring historical novels. She agrees with Anatole France that "history books, which contain no lies, are extremely dull". But she wouldn't mind reading about the life of the well-known people.

I enjoy reading very much. Most of all I like reading detective stories, because they have interesting story lines and unusual endings. I am particularly captivated by characters who conduct investigations.

I never believed there really were books that you couldn't put down. I changed my opinion when I started to read "The Woman in White" by Wilkie Collins, an English writer. The book was written in the 19th century. It's a very good detective story with a bit of romance thrown in it. The book is basically about mistaken identity. The main character in the story is a young artist who goes up to the north of England to instruct two young ladies. And he falls in love with Miss Fairlie, who looks very like the woman in white. Finally they turn out to be identical twins. The author brilliantly describes the adventures, love and fears of his heroes. He really brings the characters to life. A good writer knows how to keep you reading the book. In "The Woman in White" the reader's interest is caught from the very first page, and there is suspense till the very end! This is a great book, and I would recommend it to anyone.

But my favourite writer is Agatha Christie. She is possibly the world's most famous detective writer. She wrote 79 novels and several plays. Her books are translated into 103 foreign languages.

Many of her novels and short stories have been filmed. Her sales outnumber those of Shakespeare, but her life was often lonely and unhappy.

She was born in 1890 in Devon. She didn't go to school, but she was educated at home by her mother. During World War I, while she was working in a hospital dispensary, she learned about chemicals and poisons, which proved very useful to her in her later career. She wrote her first detective novel, "The Mysterious Affair at Styles", in 1920. In it she introduced Hercule Poirot, the Belgian detective, who appeared in many subsequent novels. Her other main detective was an elderly spinster called Miss Marple. Miss Marple doesn't look like a detective at all. This old lady always uses her instinct and knowledge of human nature to investigate crimes.

In 1914 she married Archibald Christie, but the marriage was unhappy. It didn't last long, and they divorced in 1926. Agatha desperately wanted solitude and developed very bitter feelings towards the media because the newspapers had given her a hard time over her breakdown. She was determined never to let them enter her private life again, and she buried herself in her work. On 25 November 1952 her play "The Mousetrap" opened in London. Today, over 50 years later, it is still running. It is the longest running show in the whole world. Agatha Christie died peacefully in 1976. People all over the world value this talented writer and consider her to be the Queen of detective literature.

I wouldn't mind reading adventure stories. Especially I like to read about characters who go through dangers to complete their mission. I think it's more interesting than reading dull historical novels. But I dislike poetry, especially modern poetry. I find it too complicated. Sometimes I fail to understand what poets mean.

I am sure that reading is an essential part of our life. Only in books you can find answers to all your questions. Books can tell us a lot about the modern world and ancient times. Besides they can help us to explore new ideas and expand our outlook. I completely agree that "reading is to the mind what exercise is to the body". What is more, books teach us to be kind and honest. While reading we learn how to solve our problems and to make people happy. And I think that reading is the perfect way to spend free time and not to feel bored. Books must be our friends during all our life.

Vocabulary

novel — роман	character — герой
science fiction — научная фантастика	to conduct investigations — проводить расследования
adventure — приключение	to believe — верить
horror — ужас	basically — в основном
whereas — тогда как	mistaken identity — принятый за другого
romance — роман (<i>героического, приключенческого, любовного жанра</i>)	artist — художник
reference book — справочник	to instruct — учить, обучать
dictionary — словарь	twins — близнецы
to do well at school — хорошо учиться в школе	to describe — описывать
newspaper — газета	fear — страх
magazine — журнал	suspense — напряженный интерес
the only way — единственный способ	especially — особенно
to be keen on — увлекаться, очень любить что-л.	to complete — выполнять, заканчивать, завершать
modern — современный	complicated — сложный
boring — скучный	to fail to do something — не суметь, оказаться неспособным сделать что-л.
to agree — соглашаться	essential — неотъемлемый
to contain — содержать	ancient — древний
extremely — чрезвычайно	to explore — исследовать
dull — скучный	to expand one's outlook — расширять кругозор
to mind — возражать, быть против	honest — честный
story line — сюжет	to solve problems — решать проблемы
particularly — особенно	to feel bored — чувствовать скуку, скучать
to be captivated — быть увлеченным, плененным, захваченным	

Questions

1. Is reading important to you? Why? 2. What kind of books do you like to read? Why? 3. What were your favourite childhood books? 4. Have your childhood reading interests changed? 5. What is your favourite book? Why is it worth reading? 6. What book are you reading now? 7. What famous British writers and poets do you know? Have you read any of their books/poems? 8. What Russian

authors do you like? 9. Who is your favourite writer? Why? 10. What books can help you to learn better at school? 11. Do you read books in English?

British Writers and Literary Places

British literature is very rich. You can always find a city, a town or a piece of country connected with a famous writer.

William Shakespeare, Britain's greatest playwright, was born in 1564 in Stratford-on-Avon. Stratford is now the second most-visited town in Britain. People come to see the house, where he was born, Grammar school, where he went to, his plays, performed by the Royal Shakespeare Company at the theatre named after him, his tomb and other places, connected with his name.

In the early 1590s Shakespeare went to London. He set up his own theatre, the Globe, where his company performed his plays. It was a wooden theatre in London. An exact reconstruction of the Globe is being built and visitors can now experience what it was like to go to the theatre 400 years ago.

Charles Dickens was probably the most popular novelist in the English language in the 19th century. When he was only 12, Charles had to leave school and work in a factory. His novels often tell the stories of young children who work hard to escape a life of poverty. Many of the stories were set in London, and his novels show how the city changed during his lifetime.

London was to Shakespeare and Dickens what Paris was to Balzac. It held them in its thrall, was both their canvas and their inspiration, their workshop and their raw material. Today, despite the ravages of time, traces of their London — shipwrecks of the past — still abound in the City of London.

Jane Austen spent her short life in Hampshire, near the south coast of England. She was born in 1775 and died in 1817. Her novels describe the everyday life of people in the upper-middle class circles she knew best. Her characters spend most of the time in the countryside, doing little or no work. Occasionally they go to London; sometimes they go to Bath, a fashionable town. Today in Bath one can visit Jane Austen Centre. Here, in a Georgian town house in the heart of the city, the visitor can find out more

about Bath in Jane Austen's time and the importance of Bath in her life and work. She paid two long visits here towards the end of the 18th century, and from 1801 to 1806 Bath was her home. The city is still very much as Jane Austen knew it, preserving in its streets, public buildings and townscapes the elegant well-ordered world that she portrays so brilliantly in her novels. Her famous novels are *Sense and Sensibility* (1811), *Pride and Prejudice* (1813), *Emma* (1815), *Northanger Abbey* (1818) and *Persuasion* (1818). Her intimate knowledge of Bath is reflected in her two last novels. She never married, died at the age of 42, and is buried in Winchester Cathedral.

Charlotte Brontë was born in 1816 and died in 1855. Her best-known books include *Jane Eyre* (1847), *Shirley* (1849) and *Villette* (1853). She was the oldest of the famous Bronte sisters. All three were novelists, and they grew up in a remote house (now a museum) at Haworth in Yorkshire. All three sisters died very young, but many visitors come to see the museum, which tells them about sisters' life and work.

If you go to Oxford, you can visit Alice's Shop. The Alice in Wonderland Shop was the Victorian sweet shop frequented by Alice Liddell and immortalized by Lewis Carroll in *Through the Looking Glass*. Writing under the pseudonym Lewis Carroll, a young Oxford mathematician and clergyman named Charles Dodgson spent warm summer afternoons recounting his story, *Alice in Wonderland*, to the young Alice Liddell. This shop provides a fascinating window onto the world of Lewis Carroll and Alice and how this was transformed into the magical world of Alice in Wonderland.

There are a lot of other places in Britain connected with literature. They are everywhere. In Scotland many places are connected with Sir Walter Scott and Robert Burns. In London one can visit famous Baker Street and the museum of Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson. And the British take care of such places and keep up their traditions, which are connected with these memorials.

Vocabulary

playwright — драматург
to set up — основывать
to experience — узнавать

thrall — рабство
canvas — холст (для картины)
inspiration — вдохновение

workshop — мастерская
raw material — исходный материал
ravages of time — разрушительные действия времен
shipwrecks of the past — осколки прошлого
to abound — быть в большом количестве, изобиловать
upper-middle class circles — высшие и средние классы
occasionally — от случая к случаю
to preserve — сохранять
remote — удаленный

to grow up — становиться взрослым
Victorian sweet shop — кондитерская Викторианской эпохи
to frequent — часто посещать
to immortalize — обессмертить, увековечить
pseudonym — псевдоним
clergyman — священник
to recount — рассказывать, излагать подробно
to provide — открывать
to transform — превращаться
memorial — памятное место, мемориал

Questions

1. What famous British writers and poets do you know? 2. What are they famous for? 3. Have you read their books? 4. Who is your favourite writer and why? 5. What places in London are connected with Charles Dickens and William Shakespeare? 6. What places in Stratford are connected with William Shakespeare? 7. What places in Britain are connected with Jane Austen? 8. What places in Britain are connected with Charlotte Brontë? 9. What places in Oxford are connected with Lewis Carroll and his story "Alice in Wonderland"? 10. How do British people honour their famous writers and poets?

Dialogues

1.

— I know you are fond of classical music, aren't you?
— Sure. I'm keen on it. And you?
— So am I. Do you know Russian composers and pianists well?
— Yes, and why?
— I'd like you to guess the name of the great Russian composer and pianist. I'll tell you some facts from his biography.
— OK. I keep my ears open.

— He was born in Moscow in 1872 and died in Moscow in 1915. His works include three symphonies, piano concerto, a Poem of Fire for orchestra, piano and organ, ten piano sonatas and 58 of other piano works, preludes, impromptus, mazurkas, nocturnes and others. He visited England on several occasions, notably in 1913 and 1914, when his Prometheus was performed. He believed that each harmony was correlated with a distinct colour.

— I know who he was. He was the world-famous composer and pianist Scriabin. I admire his music. And now it's my turn to tell you about a famous English composer and your turn is to guess his name.

— I'm eager to listen to your story.

— He was born in England in 1913 and died in 1976. His father was a dentist and a music lover; his mother played the piano and sang. He began to play the piano and composed his first musical piece when he was five. His greatest achievement was creating operas. He is famous for using children's voices in his music. Among his best works is the sombre War Requiem expressing his hatred for war and death.

— I think he is great Benjamin Britten whose music can be enjoyed by music lovers of all ages.

— We are both right. And I think that our countries can be proud of these outstanding musicians and a lot of other famous people who bring fame to our countries.

2.

— Almost all young people are fond of music. And what about you? Do you like music?

— I can't imagine my life without music. Music reflects our mood and emotions. It is the soundtrack of our life, isn't it?

— Yes, you are quite right. But different people like different kinds of music.

— Exactly! Tastes differ. For example, my mother is fond of classical music. She likes quiet lyrical piano pieces by Chopin and Prokofiev, which are full of enchanting melodies. But her favourite piece of music is The Seasons by Tchaikovsky. This music reflects the different states of nature so truthfully that she is always carried away by it.

— And my father's taste is quite different. He enjoys rock music. And his favourite groups are Deep Purple, Led Zeppelin and Queen. He says their music is passionate and breathtaking.

— Do you share their tastes in music? What are your musical preferences?

— I wouldn't mind listening to classical music, especially I am fond of ballets and operas. My favourite ballet is Swan Lake by Tchaikovsky. Thanks to amazing music, this ballet leaves an unforgettable impression. But I don't like hard rock. I find it too noisy and dreadful. Do you agree with me?

— I am sorry, but I can't agree with you. Not all rock songs are noisy. In my opinion they are full of energy. Besides, there are a lot of tuneful, eloquent songs too. Stairway to Heaven by Led Zeppelin is the best example. As for classical operas and ballets, they usually put me to sleep.

— So what kind of music do you prefer?

— I like new rhythms and new styles and I enjoy modern rock musicals. My favourite musical is Jesus Christ Superstar composed by Andrew Lloyd Webber. When it first exploded onto the West End stage, it was clear that the musical world would never be the same again. It is packed with hit songs that can't leave us indifferent! And do you like modern music?

— Yes, of course, but I prefer pop music to hard rock. I like catchy and torch tunes. I don't have any favourites, but I enjoy such groups as The Beatles, ABBA, Modern Talking. As for Russian groups, I can't but admire Mashina Vremeni and DDT. Their music helps me to relax and escape from everyday problems.

— Have you ever been to the concert of a pop group?

— No, I haven't, but I'd love to.

3.

— Do you like reading?

— Of course, I do. I am fond of reading. Most of all I like reading about the history of the world and about famous people. I also like romantic stories with a happy end.

— As for me, I prefer reading whodunnit stories. I've got a large collection of such books. These books are certain delight. They are gripping and absorbing. Sometimes they entertain me.

— I agree with you. One English author said: “Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed or digested.” This quotation tells us how to read books of different kinds. If you are fond of crime stories, you’ll “swallow” them — you’ll read them quickly. Most travel books are “to be tasted”. And historical books should be read slowly and carefully. If a book is on important subject, and the subject you’re interested in, you’ll want to chew and digest it.

— Sometimes I think, I’m a bookworm. I can read the whole day if the book is interesting and absorbing. I know that some people read for instruction, and some for pleasure, but not a few read for habit. I belong to that company. I think that reading is just a drug that we cannot get without.

— And have you ever been to the British Museum library?

— Yes, I have. I saw the Round Reading Room there. There are some 30,000 reference books on the open access in the Reading Room, a tiny fraction of the British Library’s collections, which number over 13 million volumes. I was impressed greatly when I saw it.

— Unfortunately, I wasn’t there. But I hope to go there soon. Bye-bye. See you later.

— OK. Bye.

4.

— What an international organization of writers do you know?

— I know an international organization called PEN.

— Do you know who founded this organization and when?

— It was founded in 1921 by the English novelist John Galsworthy.

— Why does it have such a name?

— The name PEN is an acronym standing for “poets, playwrights, editors, essayists and novelists”.

— And what does the word “acronym” mean?

— It means a word, which is formed from the first letters of all words it stands for.

— What are the functions of this organization?

— PEN promotes freedom of expression for all writers regardless of their nationality, race or religion, or of the political system. PEN supports writers who are being persecuted or oppressed by their government.

- Does this organization give literary awards?
- Yes, it also gives literary awards, holds conferences and publishes newsletters.
- How can a person become a member of this organization?
- To become a member of PEN an author must have published at least two books, one of which shows considerable literary distinction.
- And where is PEN headquartered?
- It is headquartered in London, and there are more than 80 PEN Centres situated in about 60 countries in the world.

5.

- People have various reading preferences, and there are plenty of books to suit each taste. And what about you? Do you enjoy reading?
- Well, I can't say that I am a bookworm, but I love sitting for one or two hours reading books. Usually I like to exchange books with my classmates or borrow books from the library.
- So do I. I consider reading to be one of the best ways of spending free time. And what kinds of books do you prefer?
- Actually, I enjoy reading quite a range of books. But I suppose if I had to choose one for a desert island, I would choose a historical novel or an adventure book. These books usually have interesting story lines and unusual endings.
- As for me, I prefer science fiction. I like stories about imaginary people and events in the future. In science fiction the impossible is presented as possible. Isaac Asimov, Arthur Clark and Ray Bradbury are my favourites.
- What about a particular book that you've read recently and you've really enjoyed?
- Well, I think it's *Fahrenheit 451* by Ray Bradbury. Fahrenheit 451 is the burning point of paper. The action of the novel takes place in not very remote future but the life of the characters is quite different from ours.
- And who are the characters in the book, I wonder?
- The central character of the novel is Guy Montag, an enthusiastic fireman, who meets a girl, cherishing old views and traditions. Against his own will Montag begins to think and comes to interesting conclusions. The novel is exciting, it keeps you on

the edge of your seat. I particularly admire this book because it stresses once again the great value of books and reading.

— I can't but agree with you that reading is very important both for us and for future generations. Some people started to think that we get all information we need from radio and TV, so we don't need to read books. But that is not true at all! Reading makes a full man. Books teach us to be honest, kind and sympathetic.

— I am of the same opinion. We can't do without books. They help us to learn better at school and to prepare for our future career. I am thinking of becoming a computer programmer. The uses of computers and computer networks are growing rapidly, and I am glad there are a lot of books on computers.

— You are absolutely right. Books must be our friends during all our life though our reading preferences can change. When I was a child, I was keen on fairy tales about animals, and now I like to read historical novels. Walter Scott is my favourite writer.

— Oh, he is an outstanding English writer. Have you ever read any of his books in the original?

— No, not yet. I'm not so good at English. But I would be happy to read some of his books in future.

Writing

1.

1 February

Dear Jane,

I'm happy to tell you about the performance I saw two days ago at the Globe. It was wonderful! I liked it so much that I have already booked the tickets for the next play.

Do you like theatres? Do you have theatres in your town? How often do you go there? What performances do you prefer? What was the last performance you saw about?

Looking forward to hearing from you,

Mary

2.

17 February

Dear Mary,

How nice of you to write me about your last visit to the theatre.

I'd like to tell you about theatres in my town. There are two theatres in our town. One theatre is the professional one, and the other one is amateur. As for me, I'm a theatre-goer. I try to go there twice a month.

The performances are different. To my mind, some of them are great, and some are not. I like comedies because I prefer to relax at the theatre. The last comedy I saw there was the comedy about teens. It was very funny and I enjoyed it very much.

Are you a theatre-goer? Do you like comedies? Could you tell me what comedies are on at your theatres?

Hope to hear from you soon,

Jane

UNIT 16

HOLIDAYS AND CELEBRATIONS

Traditions in Our Life

What is a tradition? I think traditions are a way of defining who people are, that's why it is very important that traditions do survive in the country. Take Great Britain, for instance. It is a unique country because it has a link with quite ancient traditions. Traditional uniforms are still preserved in Great Britain. There are also a lot of traditional ceremonies such as the Changing of the Guard at Buckingham Palace, Trooping the Colour, which is performed on the Queen's official birthday, or the Ceremony of the Keys, that takes place every night at the Tower of London. The British people are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up.

People all over the world traditionally celebrate such common holidays as Easter, Christmas or New Year. But of course, each country has its own traditional holidays connected with its history. So we may say that tradition is the passing down of the beliefs, practices and customs from the past to the present.

Russia is also a country of great traditions. For example, Russian people traditionally mark the end of winter and the beginning of spring by burning straw scarecrows of winter on bonfires and eating pancakes with honey or sour cream. This long-standing tradition is still alive in many places in Russia.

There are a lot of traditions in our everyday lives, for example celebrating birthdays, holidays and traditional wedding ceremonies. The family meal is another tradition that we should try to keep up in our everyday life. In my opinion family meals reflect a country's culture and traditions. Besides, it's a good way to bring the family together and a good chance for parents and children to talk.

The oldest universities, like Oxford and Cambridge, are world-famous for their traditional practices, which have stood for hundreds of years. Student life is quite modern there, but the

traditions are kept and the students are proud of them. I wish we had more traditions in our school because traditions make us feel a little bit different.

There are some old traditions in our everyday life that make me especially proud. For example, a guest in Russia should always be welcomed with the symbol of lifegiving food — bread and salt.

To sum up, I think traditions are something that people keep doing for a long time. They are an essential part of our life because they join different generations together.

Vocabulary

to define — определять

unique — уникальный

link — связывать

Changing of the Guard — смена караула

Trooping the Colour — вынос знамени

Ceremony of the Keys — церемония передачи ключей

common — общий

belief — вера, убеждение

to burn straw scarecrow — сжигать соломенное чучело

bonfire — большой костер

pancake — блин

sour cream — сметана

long-standing tradition — длительная традиция

wedding ceremonies — свадебные церемонии

to welcome — приветствовать

lifegiving food — пища, дающая жизнь

essential part of our life — существенная часть нашей жизни

to join different generations

together — объединять разные поколения

Questions

1. What is a tradition? 2. What traditions in Britain do you know? 3. Why do British people keep their traditions? 4. What traditions are common for all countries? 5. What traditions in Russia do you know? 6. What traditions are kept in your family? 7. What traditions in everyday life do you know? 8. What traditions in universities do you know? 9. Why are students in Cambridge and Oxford Universities proud of their traditions and customs? 10. Why are traditions an essential part of our life?

British Traditions and Customs

One of the most characteristic features of Englishmen are their traditions, which they respect and which they have kept for centuries. The traditions don't only accumulate experience and wisdom of many generations, but they bring some stability into the rapidly changing world.

In the House of Commons there are two rows of benches: one row is for the government and the other one is for opposition. There is a red line in the carpet in front of each "front bench". The person who is speaking is not allowed to step across it. It is also a tradition from old days, when that division prevented the two parties from fighting during the debates. This tradition comes from old times.

Even the legislation of the country is traditional. It includes many laws that haven't been changed for centuries.

The British nation is very interesting and unusual. The British have sentimental love for all old things, including their traditions. They keep fireplaces in their houses instead of central heating, their letterboxes and telephone boxes are red — all these are traditions. The houses are traditionally not very high, they are usually two-storied.

Other traditional features of Great Britain are numerous clubs that unite people of various interests; and the pubs, the local beer halls where Englishmen like to spend their time talking, discussing traditional matters: politics, sports and weather over a glass of beer.

The British have a reputation of being conservative, for having established values without questioning their validity. They keep up the left side of the road and use double-deckers. They stick to their own measurement system and continue to measure distances in miles and yards (not in kilometres and metres). They buy cheese in pounds and ounces, milk in pints, petrol in gallons.

English people are famous for their habit of politeness. It is considered polite to give up one's seat to a woman who is standing, to open a door for her, carry things for her, and so on. Most British people expect the person in front of them to hold the door open for them. People think you are rude if you don't do this. English people are very reserved. This means that they don't talk much to strangers and don't show much emotion. A reserved person never tells you anything about himself. But the people of the North and West of

Britain are much less reserved than those of the South and East. Most British people queue when they are waiting for a bus or waiting to be served in a shop. But during the rush hour, when a bus or train arrives, people often push forward to make sure they get on. This is called jumping the queue.

British people keep their old traditions and are very proud of them. They are famous for their sense of humour. English people show great love for animals. And, of course, English people are fond of sports. Many continentals think life is a game; the English think cricket is a game. To many Englishmen cricket is both a game and a standard of behaviour. When they consider something unfair, they say "That isn't cricket".

The traditional love of English people for tea is well-known. They like to drink tea with milk. They have their five o'clock tea not only at home or offices, but also in tea-rooms and tea-shops, which can be found in every town.

Another tradition is keeping black ravens in the Tower of London. The legend says that until ravens are in the Tower, Britain will be powerful and London will be the capital of the country.

A nation is born from its land, its history, its art, its traditions and its institutions. These things work together to make people what they are. But above all, a nation is made up of people, and although there are things they all share, all of those people are different. We can say there is still the British nation, which keeps its traditions and customs.

Vocabulary

House of Lords — палата лордов

House of Commons — палата
общин

legislation — законодательство

Tower of London — лондонский
Тауэр

to accumulate — аккумуляиро-
вать

experience — опыт

wisdom — мудрость

generation — поколение

rapidly — быстро

bench — скамья

to step across — переступить

to prevent — предотвращать

debates — дебаты

double-decker — двухэтажный
автобус

central heating — центральное
отопление

values — ценности

validity — обоснованность

politeness — вежливость

reserved — сдержанный

to queue — стоять в очереди
to jump the queue — проходить
без очереди

standard of behaviour — образец
поведения
raven — ворон

Questions

1. What is the most characteristic feature of Englishmen?
2. Why do the British keep fireplaces instead of central heating?
3. What about the traditions in the House of Commons?
4. What do you know about British houses?
5. What are the most common stereotypes about the UK people?
6. What features do Englishmen have?
7. What does a word “reserved” mean?
8. What is called “jumping the queue”?
9. What sports and games are English people fond of?
10. What is cricket for Englishmen?
11. What do you know about the traditional love of English people for tea?
12. Why do British people keep ravens in the Tower of London?
13. Why do British people keep their traditions?
14. Do people in your country keep their traditions? In what way?

British Holidays

There are fewer public holidays in Great Britain than in other European countries. They are: Christmas Day (Xmas), Boxing Day, New Year’s Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Spring Bank Holiday and Late Summer Bank Holiday. During the public holidays in Great Britain the banks as well as most of the offices and shops do not open. All holidays and traditions are connected with the development of the history and culture of the country.

The most popular holiday is Christmas. Every year the people of Norway give the city of London a present. It’s a big Christmas tree, and it stands in Trafalgar Square. Central streets are beautifully decorated. Everything is rush and bustle. There is a great air of expectation. The British decorate trees with tinsel, various baubles and coloured lights. They decorate their houses with holly and mistletoe. They send Christmas cards to greet each other. Children hang their stockings hoping that Santa Clause will come down with toys and sweets.

Before Christmas groups of people go from house to house. They sing Christmas carols and collect money for charity.

Christmas is a family holiday. The family usually meets for a traditional dinner of turkey and Christmas pudding. Everyone gives and receives presents.

Whatever else Christmas may stand for, one thing it still means is eating. Christmas has traditionally been a time of the year when people have tried to cheer themselves up during the cold months of winter. Last year more than 10 million turkeys were bought in Britain during the festive season to satisfy the nation's appetite.

Health experts may continue to complain about all this self-indulgence, but they fail to realize that there is nothing new about celebratory feasting, practically at this time of the year. The Roman Saturnalia, which was supposed a festival to honour the god of agriculture, started on December 19th. Among other things, the Saturnalia involved lighting candles and giving gifts. People who had spent the whole year saving money suddenly became extravagant. In addition to exchanging gifts, this time of year was also an occasion for masters and slaves to eat. One of the emperors spent the equivalent of \$900,000 on a dinner for twelve guests which consisted of twenty courses and lasted all day. So, when mealtime comes round on December 25th, there's no point in having a guilty conscience. In fact the occasional seasonal feast may promote good health and stop year-round overeating.

New Year's Day is less popular in Britain than Christmas. But in Scotland, Hogmanay is the biggest festival of the year. The name "Hogmanay" is supposed to come from the Anglo-Saxon "Haleg Monath" (Holy Month), or the Gaelic "oge maiden" (New Morning).

December 26th is Boxing Day. People usually visit their friends, go for a drive or for a long walk, or just sit around and watch TV recovering from too much food after Christmas dinner. In the country there is fox hunting.

Easter is the time when certain old traditions are observed. It is celebrated as the start of spring and as a religious festival. It is the time for giving and receiving presents, such as Easter eggs, hot cross buns, fluffy little chicks, baby rabbits, springtime flowers to signify nature's reawakening.

Four times a year the banks are closed on Monday apart from traditional weekends. Such days are called Bank Holidays. There

are other different holidays, which have existed over centuries in the country. They are Pancake Day, Guy Fawkes' Night, Saint Valentine's Day, Mother's Day, Hallowe'en, April Fool's Day, etc. These days are not days off. But they help to keep up many traditions, which Englishmen have always been famous for.

Pancake Day is the day preceding the first day of Lent. In medieval times the day was characterized by merrymaking and feasting, and the main meal was the eating of pancakes. Nowadays it is consistently observed throughout Britain. At home families have pancakes for dinner. At school the children and teachers have pancakes for school dinner, and in restaurants customers ask for pancakes on Shrove Tuesday.

In some villages and towns in England there is a pancake race every year. In the race at Oxford students often take part. In all these races one has to make the pancake first and then run, tossing the pancake as one goes.

There are very unusual tricks on April Fool's day. Some of them date back to old times.

In 1698 a number of Londoners received invitations to see the lions washed in the Thames. This event was described in newspapers. However, the same trick was repeated in 1860, and again a lot of curious Londoners came to enjoy the lions washed. In 1957 BBC Television played an elaborate joke on its viewers. It showed a film about a spaghetti crop grown in Southern Switzerland. Agricultural workers were picking long strands of spaghetti from bushes and the presenter of the film commented on the uniform length of the spaghetti and on the successful cultivation of "these vegetables". After the programme was over, hundreds of viewers telephoned the BBC. Some of the calls were from those who enjoyed the joke. But there were a lot of calls from people who wanted to know where they could buy spaghetti bushes.

As for me most of all I like Hallowe'en. It goes back many, many hundreds of years. At that time the Celts lived in England. The Celts said, "In this night the ghosts of the dead come back." Nowadays children in the USA and Britain dress up as witches or ghosts. Some children also make lamps out of pumpkins. They put them in the windows at night. In the evening the children go out in groups and knock at people's doors. The children call out: "Trick or treat." Most people then give the children a "treat". This is

usually a sweet, some chocolate or maybe a toffee apple. But some people do not give the children a treat. Then the children play a trick on them. Sometimes they ring the doorbell, and then they hide or run away. Or they come to the house again later and put leaves, grass, stones or other things into the letterbox. Children and older people often have Hallowe'en parties where they play games such as "bobbing the apple", "apples on a string", "fortune telling". I wish we celebrated Hallowe'en in Russia because this holiday is very funny and interesting.

Vocabulary

- Christmas** — Рождество
(25 декабря)
- New Year's Day** — Новый год
- Boxing Day** — второй день
Рождества
- Good Friday** — Великая пятница
(пятница на Страстной неделе)
- Easter Monday** — первый
понедельник после Пасхи
- Spring Bank Holiday** — весенний
день отдыха (в мае или начале
июня)
- Summer Bank Holiday** — летний
день отдыха (в августе или
сентябре)
- Hogmanay** — Хогманей, канун
Нового года в Шотландии
- Guy Fawkes** — Гай Фокс, глава
порохового заговора в XVII
веке
- Hallowe'en** — Хэллоуин
(31 октября)
- charity** — благотворительность
- carol** — рождественская песня
- turkey** — индейка
- to rush and bustle** — суетиться
- tinsel** — мишура
- baubles** — шары
- holly** — омела (вечнозеленое
растение)
- mistletoe** — остролистник
(вечнозеленое растение)
- stocking** — чулок
- hot cross buns** — горячие
булочки с выпеченным
крестом
- fluffy chick** — пушистый цыпле-
нок
- to precede** — предшествовать
- Lent** — Пост
- medieval times** — времена
Средневековья
- merrymaking** — веселье
- feast** — пир
- to observe** — наблюдать
- race** — состязание
- to toss** — подбрасывать
- invitation** — приглашение
- elaborate joke** — тщательно
продуманная шутка
- spaghetti crop** — урожай спагетти
- to pick** — собирать
- strand** — прядь, нить
- bush** — куст
- uniform length** — однородная
длина
- cultivation** — культивирование
- pumpkin** — тыква
- ghost** — привидение
- witch** — ведьма

Trick or treat — Угостите или
подшутим
bobbing the apple — ловля яблока
ртом в миске с водой

string — веревка
fortune telling — предсказание
судьбы

Questions

1. What public holidays are celebrated in Great Britain? 2. What is the most popular holiday in Great Britain? 3. What is a “bank holiday”? 4. What holidays are movable (переходящие, не в фиксированный день)? 5. What are traditional Christmas songs called in Great Britain? 6. How do the British celebrate Christmas? 7. What do you know about Boxing Day? 8. What is Hogmaney? 9. What is the traditional Christmas dinner? 10. Is Easter a movable holiday or not?

American Holidays

The population in the USA is made up of people of different nationalities. Centuries ago they brought with them their native celebrations. Only some holidays, which are marked in the United States, were originated in America.

One of the greatest holidays is Independence Day. On July 4, 1776, the Declaration of Independence was signed. It proclaimed independence of the thirteen British colonies from Great Britain. July 4th has become the greatest holiday since. In the past this day was marked with big parades and fireworks, but now it is celebrated more quietly. Cities and towns are decorated with flags on that day, there are parades in some places, but most people just go on picnics to the countryside.

Thanksgiving Day is marked on the fourth Thursday of November. On this day Americans honour the memory of the first settlers. It also marks the end of the harvest season. It is a long-standing tradition to make a festive meal with fried turkey on this day.

Christmas is a religious holiday, which symbolizes the birth of Jesus Christ. By this day people decorate fir-trees with toys. Children wait for Santa Claus who comes to every house and brings them presents. Before going to bed children leave their shoes to find in

them what they want most of all the next morning. Some people, especially young people, like to celebrate it in restaurants and pubs, but most people prefer to stay at home with their family on this day.

Washington's Birthday is marked on February 22nd. George Washington led the American Army to victory in the War for Independence. Later he was elected President of the United States and was in office for 8 years (1789–97). The national capital of the USA, a state and several towns are named after George Washington.

Lincoln's Birthday is celebrated every year on February 12th. Abraham Lincoln was President during the Civil War (1861–65). He led the fight to keep the nation together and to free the slaves. His life ended tragically. He was killed in the theatre during the performance soon after the victory of the North. In honor of this great man a beautiful memorial has been built in Washington, DC.

On New Year's Day people see the old year off and the New Year in. Most people stay up all night, even children. At midnight many people go outside and shout "Happy New Year!" Some people set off fireworks and blow automobile horns which are heard everywhere. Everybody exchanges presents and good wishes. Offices, factories, banks and stores do not work on this day. In New York a lot of people gather in Times Square and watch the "Big Apple" fall. It is a moving picture of an apple on the side of the big building in Times Square. Every New Year's Eve during the last few seconds before the midnight it starts to "fall down" the building, and when it gets to the bottom, it's the start of the New Year.

Labor Day is celebrated on the first Monday in September. On this day workers make a public show with marches, meetings, etc. It also marks the beginning of the school year and the end of summer. There are some more public holidays in USA: such as the Day of Martin Luter King, Presidents' Day, Washington's Birthday and others.

Vocabulary

to originate — происходить
Independence Day — День
независимости
Declaration of Independence —
Декларация независимости
to sign — подписывать

to proclaim — провозглашать
firework — фейерверк
Thanksgiving Day — День
благодарения
to honor the memory — отдавать
дань памяти, вспоминать

to mark — отмечать
settlers — поселенцы
harvest — урожай
long-standing tradition — давняя традиция
fried turkey — жареная индейка
festive meal — праздничная еда
birth of Jesus Christ — рождение Иисуса Христа
to lead — вести, приводить

to free — освобождать
slave — раб
to see off — провожать
to see in — встречать
to blow automobile horns — давать автомобильные сигналы
to exchange — обмениваться
Labor Day — День труда
public show — публичное выступление

Questions

1. What American holidays do you know? 2. What do you know about the Independence Day? 3. When is Thanksgiving Day celebrated? 4. What is the traditional food on this day? 5. When is Washington's birthday marked? 6. What do you know about Abraham Lincoln? 7. When is Labour Day celebrated? 8. What American holiday do you like and why? 9. Do American people celebrate Christmas? 10. How do they celebrate Christmas?

Memorial Day in the USA

Honoring the dead has been a practice of many civilizations. The ancient Druids, Greeks and Romans decorated the graves of their loved ones with garlands of flowers. In the United States the dead have been honored on Memorial Day, or Decoration Day, as it also known, since the time of the Civil War. In 1967 a proclamation of President Lyndon B. Johnson and a joint congressional resolution officially recognized Waterloo as "the birthplace of Memorial Day". And the Memorial Day is observed on the last Monday of May each year.

Each year the President of the United States issues a special Memorial Day proclamation, which, by request of a joint resolution of Congress in 1950, includes a call for citizens to observe the occasion as a day of prayer for peace. Memorial Day observances are by no means limited to the big national cemeteries. In towns and cities, across the land, veterans' groups, civic organizations, family groups and individuals decorate graves with flowers or with

small American flags. In many communities, large and small, there are parades. Parade participants include veterans and armed forces personnel, members of civic organizations and schoolchildren. Memorial Day has also traditionally marked the beginning of summer activities.

Vocabulary

honoring the dead — отдать дань
памяти погибшим

Druids — друиды

grave — могила

garland — гирлянда

Civil War — Гражданская война

proclamation — провозглашение,
официальное объявление

joint congressional resolution — со-
вместная резолюция конгресса

to recognize — признавать

to issue — постановлять

call for citizens — призыв
к горожанам

prayer for peace — молебен,
молитва за мир

participant — участник

cemeteries — кладбища

civic organization — гражданская
организация

Questions

1. Who has been honoured on Memorial Day in the USA?
2. When was this holiday officially recognized? 3. What was the
birthplace of Memorial Day? 4. What does a special Memorial Day
proclamation include? 5. What else has Memorial Day traditionally
marked?

Mother's Day

Every second Sunday in the May mothers become the queen-
for-a-day. Children give cards, flowers and phone calls as offerings
of their love.

The earliest tributes to mothers date back to the annual spring
festival the Greeks dedicated to Rhea, the mother of many deities,
and to the offerings ancient Romans made to their Great Mother
of Gods, Cybele. Christians celebrated this festival on the fourth
Sunday in Lent in honour of Mary, mother of Christ. In England
this holiday was expanded to include all mothers and was called
Mothering Sunday. In the United States Mother's Day started
nearly 150 years ago, when Anna Jarvis, an Appalachian

homemaker, organized a day to raise awareness of poor health conditions in her community, a cause she believed would be best advocated by mothers. She called it “Mother’s Work Day”. Anna’s hard work paid off when W. Wilson signed a bill recognizing Mother’s Day as a national holiday. The second Sunday of May has become the most popular day of the year to dine out, as sons and daughters want to express appreciation of their mothers.

Vocabulary

queen-for-a-day — королева
на один день

offering — приношение

tribute — дань, должное

to date back — вести начало

annual — ежегодный

to dedicate — посвящать

deity — божество

Lent — Пост

to expand — расширять

to raise awareness — ставить
вопрос

community — община, местность

to advocate — поддерживать

to pay off — окупаться

bill — закон

to recognize — признавать

to dine out — обедать вне дома

to express appreciation — выра-
жать любовь, благодарность

Questions

1. When do mothers become the queen-for-a-day in America?
2. What do their children present them?
3. What is the history of this holiday?
4. When did Christians celebrate this festival?
5. What is the name of this holiday in England?
6. When did this holiday start in the USA?
7. Who signed a bill recognizing Mother’s Day as a national holiday?
8. How and when is Mother’s Day celebrated in Russia?

Columbus Day

The identity of the first Europeans to visit the shores of America is uncertain. The Irish may have reached what is now Canada in the 9th or 10th century. But it was only with the voyage of Christopher Columbus in 1492 that effective European exploration and colonization of the New World commenced.

Little is known about the commander of the momentous 1492 expedition. Columbus was born in Genoa in 1451. He arrived in Portugal in 1476 after narrowly escaping death during a naval battle.

The young seaman made a number of voyages under the Portuguese flag and visited England, the African Gold Coast, the Madeira Islands and the Azores.

On August 3rd, 1492, Columbus and his 90 member crew sailed from Spain aboard the *Niña*, *Pinta* and *Santa Maria*. They carried with them a letter from Ferdinand and Isabella addressed to the Grand Khan of China. The expedition maintained its westward course, and on October 12th they landed the Bahamas, but they thought they had reached the East Indies. Columbus made three more voyages to the New World, but he believed he had discovered a new route to the Orient.

The landing of Columbus was not only a great feat but an event that was to change the history of the world. Celebrations of Columbus Day in the United States are countless. Most localities sponsor special programmes to mark the day, and every school holds exercises on the day. Parades, patriotic ceremonies and addresses are popular ways of honouring Columbus.

Vocabulary

identity — установление
uncertain — неясно
effective — действительный, интенсивный
exploration — исследование
to commence — начинаться
momentous expedition — экспедиция, имеющая важное значение
narrowly — чуть
to escape — избегать
naval battle — морской бой

crew — команда
to address — обратиться
to maintain — поддерживать
course — курс
to land — высаживаться
route — маршрут
Orient — Восток
feat — подвиг
countless — бесчисленный
localities — населенные пункты
to sponsor — спонсировать
to honour — чтить

Questions

1. What is known about Christopher Columbus? 2. What do you know about his expedition? 3. What letter did Columbus carry? 4. What did Columbus discover: New World or a new route to the Orient? 5. What changed the history of the world? 6. When do Americans celebrate Columbus Day? 7. How do they celebrate this holiday? 8. How do Americans honour Columbus?

Traditional Russian Holidays and Celebrations

Every country has its own national holidays, but there are holidays that are common for many countries. People all over the world know New Year's Day, Christmas and Easter. In Russia New Year's Day is the most popular holiday, but in the West people pay more attention to Christmas.

New Year's Day is a family event in Russia. People begin to prepare for this holiday beforehand. Everything is rush and bustle. There is a great air of expectation. People decorate their New Year trees with tinsel, various baubles and coloured lights. They usually put their presents under the tree. When the Kremlin clock strikes 12, they see the New Year in.

There are dates and events in our country that are memorable to Russian people. They are the Victory Day, the Women's Day, the Day of Spring and Labour, the Independence Day, the Country Defendant's Day, the Constitution Day, Maslenitsa. Besides, there are many professional days in our country: Teacher's Day, Miner's Day, etc.

Christmas in Russia is celebrated on January 7th. It is celebrated with all-night services in churches. The Country Defendant's Day is celebrated on February 23rd. This holiday is devoted to soldiers and officers and everyone else who defended the country or is in the Army. The Mother's Day is celebrated on March 8th. It is a day off. Men and boys try to please their mothers, sisters and wives by giving presents and flowers.

Maslenitsa marks the end of winter and the beginning of spring and Lent. During this festival people make pancakes, sing and dance traditional songs and dances and visit each other. Maslenitsa and Easter are movable holidays. Easter is the main Orthodox festival. People colour eggs and enjoy traditional Russian dishes. Churches hold special services on this day.

The Day of Spring and Labour is celebrated on May 1st. On this day people prefer to go outdoors and take part in all kinds of outdoor activities. The Victory Day is celebrated on May 9th. It celebrates the end of the Soviet Union's participation in World War II in Europe. People put flowers at the tombs of the soldiers

who were killed during the war. The main ceremony is held in Moscow. People lay flowers in Moscow's Victory Park and at the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier.

The Independence Day is celebrated on June 12th. On this day Russia became an independent country after the break up of the Soviet Union in 1991. This is an official holiday. Some years ago people in Russia celebrated the Day of Reconciliation and Harmony on November 7th. Nowadays they celebrate the Day of National Unity on November 4th. It is an official holiday and a day off. November 7th is celebrated nowadays too, but it is not a public holiday. The Constitution Day is marked on December 12th in honour of the new Constitution of 1993. It is not a day off nowadays.

Vocabulary

common — общий

tinsel — мишура

bauble — шар

Easter — Пасха

Country Defendant's Day — День защитника Отечества

professional — профессиональный

all-night services — ночные службы

to devote — посвящать

to defend — защищать

Lent — Пост

pancake — блин

Orthodox — православный

service — служба

movable holiday — переходящий праздник (*без постоянной даты*)

Orthodox — православный

service — служба

Day of Spring and Labour — День весны и труда

Victory Day — День Победы

participation — участие

Independence Day — День независимости

anniversary — годовщина

the Day of Reconciliation and

Harmony — День согласия и примирения

the Day of the National Unity — День народного единства

Questions

1. What holidays are common for many countries? 2. What is the most popular holiday in Russia? 3. What professional holidays in Russia do you know? 4. How is New Year celebrated in your family? 5. How and when is Christmas celebrated in Russia? 6. What do you know about the Victory Day in Russia? 7. What is your favourite holiday? 8. How do you celebrate it?

My Favourite Holidays and Celebrations

Every country has its own national festivals that are associated with its history. But there are also holidays that are common for many countries. People all over the world celebrate New Year's Day, Christmas and Easter. Yet, these holidays are different in different countries. For example, in Europe Christmas is celebrated on the 25th of December whereas in Russia this holiday is marked on the 7th of January. Moreover, in the West Christmas is the most popular holiday while in our country it is a renewed holiday and is not as popular as New Year's Day.

In my opinion, it is very important that traditions survived in our country. That's why a lot of people try to follow old traditions and celebrate traditional Russian holidays.

For example, many people mark the end of winter and the beginning of spring by burning straw scarecrows of winter on bonfires. This holiday is called "Shrovetide (Maslenitsa)" and it lasts for a week. During "Maslenitsa week" people always invite guests and cook pancakes. They eat them with caviar, honey, sour cream or butter. This long-standing tradition is still alive in many places in Russia.

However, there are a lot of traditional holidays that are almost forgotten nowadays. One of them is Ivan Cupala's Night. This spring festival dates back to pagan times in Russia and is associated with the sun, water and fire. People jumped over tall bonfires, which were the common symbols of the festival. They also bathed in rivers and collected herbs which held magic powers and protected against different diseases.

Personally I enjoy celebrating holidays. I think it's a good way to bring the family together. Besides, it's a good chance to meet all your friends and relatives. My favourite holiday is, of course, New Year, because I always get a lot of presents and I like the atmosphere of this holiday. Traditionally, on the 31st of December we decorate a fir-tree and put presents under it. The family meal is a central part of our celebration. When the Kremlin clock strikes twelve, we wish each other "Happy New Year". It's a great time of the year.

The holiday that makes me especially proud is the Victory Day. It commemorates the victory of our country in World War II. On this day people usually put flowers at the tombs of soldiers and honour the memory of their grandmothers or grandfathers who died to defend our Motherland. I think it's the most important tradition in our country.

To sum up, I think that holidays are a part of our culture and we should try to keep up these traditions.

Vocabulary

to associate — ассоциировать

whereas — в то время как

renewed — возобновленный,
восстановленный

to survive — выживать

to follow — соблюдать, следовать

to burn straw scarecrow —

сжигать соломенное чучело

bonfire — большой костер

caviar — икра

sour cream — сметана

alive — живой

Ivan Cupala's Night — ночь
Ивана Купалы

pagan times — времена языче-
ства

herb — трава

disease — болезнь

to strike — бить, ударять

tomb — могила

to keep up — хранить

Questions

1. What traditions do Russian people try to keep up? 2. What traditions are kept up in your family? 3. What is your favourite holiday and why? 4. How do you celebrate this holiday? 5. How do Russian people follow their traditions? 6. Do you enjoy celebrating holidays? 7. What celebrations in Russia date back to pagan times? 8. Do you and your family follow Russian traditions?

Christmas in Australia

Christmas in Australia is not like anywhere else. Everything is topsy turvy as December is one of the hottest months of the year. But the Australians have a great time anyway. Those who live near the coast go to the beach on Christmas Day. They swim, play cricket or volleyball, surf or just sit around with family and

friends enjoying Christmas dinner. Santa Claus arrives at Australian beaches on a surfboard — quite a change from sliding down a chimney! And since the weather is hot, he often wears a swimsuit or funny baggy shorts.

Christmas is a great time for kids and students — it's the beginning of their summer holidays, and this means fun, sun and surf! Many Christmas decorations and symbols are the same as in Great Britain or the USA: Christmas trees (usually plastic), images of turkeys and plum puddings, snow scenes. But among the decorations you can also see toy kangaroos and koala bears stifling in Santa hats or red scarves. And instead of holly and mistletoe the Australians often use local plants — Christmas bush and Christmas bell.

As with Christmas anywhere, families have their own traditions. In spite of the heat many Australians still have traditional hot Christmas meal. This usually includes roast turkey and a flaming Christmas pudding with a tasty brandy sauce. Others prefer a more sensible meal of seafood or cold ham, turkey and salads. Ice cream Christmas pudding (vanilla ice cream with nuts and fruit and choc bits) is one way round the traditions and the heat. One unique and excellent Australian dessert is the Pavlova — a cake made of meringue, cream and fruit. (They say it was invented to celebrate Anna Pavlova's visit to Australia.) For tourists with a taste for the unusual, roast emu, crocodile, kangaroo and possum can be found in some Australian restaurants.

Australia is also the home of Carols by Candlelight, a tradition started by Norman Banks, a radio announcer, in 1937. One day Banks saw a lonely woman listening to a Christmas carol by candlelight. He decided to do something to relieve the loneliness some people felt during the holidays.

Today Carols by Candlelight is held each Christmas Eve and involves tens of thousands of people. They spread blankets on the ground, light their candles and sing Christmas songs together. The view is amazing with thousands of candles waving in the dark!

Christmas in Australia is also celebrated in a fun way on the 25th of July. This "cold Christmas" is usually just another excuse for a get-together with friends and family, but it's becoming more and more popular!

Vocabulary

topsy turvy — перевернутый, вверх тормашками
to slide down — скользить
chimney — труба, дымоход
baggy — мешковатый
image — образ, изображение
pudding — пудинг
kangaroo — кенгуру
koala — коала
to stifle — задыхаться
holly — остролист
mistletoe — омела
heat — жара
flaming — горящий
brandy sauce — коньячный соус
sensible — разумный
seafood — морепродукты
unique — уникальный

meringue — безе
Pavlova — Павлова (*русская балерина*)
emu — эму
possum — опоссум
carol — рождественская песня
candlelight — свет свечи
radio announcer — диктор
eve — канун
to involve — вовлекать, привлечь к участию
to relieve — облегчать
to spread — расстилать
blanket — одеяло
waving — колеблющийся
excuse — предлог
get-together — вечеринка, сборище

Questions

1. Why is Christmas in Australia not like anywhere else? 2. How do Australians spend Christmas? 3. How does Santa Claus arrive in Australia? 4. What does he wear? 5. Why is Christmas a great time for kids and students? 6. What are Christmas decorations and symbols in Australia? 7. What is the traditional Christmas food? 8. How do Australians sing Carols by Candlelight? 9. What do Australians celebrate on the 25th of July? 10. Why do they celebrate “cold Christmas”?

Dialogues

1.

— Hello, Susan! I like your country. I enjoy your holidays, especially Halowe'en. Can you tell me what games do you usually play on that day?

— With great pleasure. We play several games on that day. One of them is “bobbing the apple”. The players try to get an apple out of a bowl of water, but they cannot use their hands. Of course, they get wet in this game. Another game is “apples on a string”. People hang apples on pieces of string. The players try to eat an apple, but they cannot use their hands. The third game is “fortune telling”. For this game you need some apples and a knife. This is what you do: take an apple and peel it so that the peel is one long piece. Then throw the peel over your shoulder. Then look at the peel on the floor. Try to see a letter of the alphabet. This letter is the first letter of a name: the name of the person you are going to marry.

— Oh, all these games are very interesting. I’ll tell my friends about them, and we’ll try to play all these games. It’ll be very funny. Thank you very much. Bye.

— You’re welcome. Bye-bye.

2.

— Are there many holidays in your country?

— You see, in Britain there are fewer public holidays than in other countries, but there are a lot of festivals. Of course, the most popular holiday in Britain is Christmas. Indeed, the “commercialization” of Christmas has itself become a part of the tradition. Every November in Oxford Street (one of the main shopping centres in London) a famous personality ceremoniously switches on the Christmas lights thus officially marking the start of the period of Christmas shopping. Between that time and the middle of January most shops do nearly half of their business for the year.

— Yes, the same is the USA. That period of shopping is really fantastic. Most people buy presents for the other members of their families and also for other relatives. Most shops have “sales” in early January when prices are reduced.

— And do you usually congratulate your nearest and dearest?

— Sure. I usually buy something interesting and unusual for them and put all my presents under the Christmas tree. And I send Christmas cards to my relatives who live in other places.

— And what about other holidays?

— Easter is far less important than Christmas to me. Although it involves a four-day “weekend”, there are very few customs and

habits associated generally with it. To my mind I like eating hot cross buns and chocolate Easter eggs.

— As for me, I prefer going away on holiday at that time.

— OK. Bye. See you after your holiday.

— Bye. See you soon.

3.

— We have been back at work now.

— It seems years since the morning I had that grand breakfast at Victoria Station.

— The best Christmas Day I have had for many years. And I have had already two letters from my mother since the day we came away. And what did you do at Christmas, Ann?

— I went to Paris for four days. I had not been to Paris since last Easter. And then I came back to London.

— Did you have much trouble with your French when you were there?

— No, I didn't have much trouble, but my son did. And what did you do in London, Ann?

— I went to the Opera and the theatre. Then I had dinner at the most expensive restaurant. I hadn't been there for 8 months since last Christmas. And I had to write home for some more money.

— And what did your husband answer?

— He answered: "As you were so anxious to get back your letter asking for money, you'll be pleased to know that I didn't receive it." However he, put a five-pound note in the envelope.

4.

— Do you think that Great Britain is the country of traditions?

— Sure. There are a lot of traditions and customs in Britain. I've just read a book about British traditions, and I'd like to tell you about some of them. Have you heard about the Trooping of the colour?

— No, and what is it?

— The Queen of Britain was born on the 21st of April. But officially she celebrates her birthday on the second Saturday in June. This ceremony is called the Trooping of the Colour. It's a big parade

with brass bands and hundreds of soldiers at Horse Guards' Parade in London. At the front of the parade there is the flag or "colour".

— Oh, it's very interesting. And I know about the other tradition — Swan-Upping. There are a lot of beautiful swans on the Thames belonging to the King or Queen. In July the young swans are about two months old. Then the Queen's swan keeper goes in a boat from London Bridge to Henley. He looks at all the young swans and marks the royal ones. The name of this custom is Swan-Upping.

— Yes, I can name some other traditions and customs in Britain, such as Highland Games, the State Opening of Parliament, Up-Helly-Aa and others. All of them are very interesting and picturesque.

Writing

1.

25 April

Dear Aunt Susan,

Thank you very much for your letter. It was interesting to learn about your family traditions.

My birthday is on April 19th. It is spring time, and we usually go to the countryside to have a picnic. We play different games, make a fire and enjoy our time.

On my last birthday we didn't go anywhere. My parents prepared a surprise party to me. When I came home from school, the house was full of guests. There was a lot of music, delicious food and hundreds of presents. It was a special day for me as I had my sixteenth birthday on that day.

Do you have special holidays?

Hope to hear from you soon,

Kate

2.

27 March

Dear friend,

Thank you for your letter. I was very glad to read it. It was really interesting to learn about holidays in your country.

Now I'd like to tell you about one very funny holiday in Britain — Red Nose Day. It is celebrated every two years on March 14th. The symbol of this holiday is the clown red nose. A nose costs 1 pound and at least 70p goes for charity. I also bought a red nose and a wig with bright red hair. So it was very interesting, unusual and funny. I wish you had been there.

Is there such a holiday in your country?

Write back,

David

UNIT 17

FAMOUS PEOPLE

Famous People

Each country is proud of its famous people, and Russia is among them. I'd like to tell you about Russian famous writers, poets and musicians because I'm fond of literature and music. A. Pushkin is the most important Russian writer and poet of all the time. He is like Shakespeare in England. He provided the standards for Russian arts and literature in the 19th century. In 1823 Pushkin began writing his masterpiece *Eugene Onegin*. It became his linguistic and literary standard. It is a commentary on the life of the early 19th-century Russia. Pushkin also wrote a lot of other poems and created masterpieces in drama and prose. All Russian people know Pushkin. Galleries and museums were named after him. In the centre of Moscow there is a monument to Pushkin built by famous Russian architect Opekunshin in 1880. Pushkin's memorial museums in different cities attract many visitors.

One of the other famous poets and writers in Russia was M. Lermontov. He won fame as a poet after his poem on Pushkin's death had been published. Lermontov's poems *Demon*, *Mtsyri*, his great novel *A Hero of Our Time* and his play *Masquerade* are masterpieces of Russian literature.

As for me, I like reading F. Dostoevsky and L. Tolstoy. They are famous Russian writers. I like M. Bulgakov. *Master and Margarita* is one of the world's masterpieces. I often go to Patriarch's Pond where the book began. It's a very atmospheric place even now. I go there to be inspired. I like reading poetry, and Anna Akhmatova is my favourite.

Russian famous musicians and composers such as Sergei Rachmaninov and Peter Tchaikovsky are recognized all over the world. Tchaikovsky composed a lot of symphonies and created beautiful music for operas and ballets. His famous operas *Eugene Onegin*, *Iolanta* and his famous ballets *The Swan Lake*, *The Sleeping Beauty* are masterpieces. His memorial museum was opened in 1894

in Klin not far from Moscow. And the International Tchaikovsky Music Competition started in 1958 in Moscow.

S. Rachmaninov was an outstanding Russian composer and pianist. He became famous with audience around the world for his piano performances. I'm fond of his music very much.

Great Britain is also proud of its famous people. And I'd like to tell you about one of its famous writers A. Conan Doyle. He invented Sherlock Holmes, one of the famous characters and detectives. Arthur Conan Doyle was born in Scotland. He was a doctor. In 1882 he moved to England to set up a practice. One of the doctors he worked for was the model for Dr. Watson. Conan Doyle's medical knowledge was a great help in his detective stories. He started the fashion of the detective stories. And nowadays I don't know a person who doesn't like detective stories. We know a lot about Sherlock Holmes. We even know his address — 221 "B" Baker Street in London. When Conan Doyle began to get tired of writing detective stories, he "killed" Holmes in one of his stories. But the public didn't like it. Conan Doyle had to write another story in which Holmes came back.

In the history of the United States there are a lot of famous names. There are many people that have influenced life in America, and each of them is well-known in a certain field of activity.

To many people the name of Walt Disney means the world of funny cartoons. He developed the family-entertainment park Disneyland in California, the place to return to the world of childhood.

Many outstanding writers lived and worked in America. For example, Jack London who went to Alaska to find gold. Instead, he found ideas for his stories there. He is best-known for his books *The Call of the Wild* and *Martin Eden*.

Mark Twain (the real name is Samuel Clemens) wrote his masterpiece *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*. Because of his sense of humour and the style with which he wrote, his books are considered to mark the beginning of modern American literature. O'Henry is a well-known American short-story writer. Ernest Hemingway was one of the Hollywood's favourite authors. *The Old Man and the Sea*, *A Farewell to Arms* made him famous. Another famous American novelist is Theodore Dreiser. He wrote such novels as *Sister Carrie*, *Financier*, *Titanic*. Ray Bradbury is the author of many imaginative science-fiction stories and novels.

Many talented people played their role in shaping American life and culture. The whole world knows the names of great inventors, because their inventions, such as a car, aeroplane, electric lamp and telephone, have changed our life significantly: Henry Ford, Thomas Edison, Alexander Bell and many others.

Edison believed that only work could bring success. So did the greatest American architect Frank Lloyd Write. He made an important contribution to the modern movement in architecture. He designed homes which were less crowded and had more space.

We can't imagine America without the name of M. Jackson. Elvis Presley is known as a king of rock-and-roll. He brought together the musical sounds of the blacks in America and of country people.

Louis Armstrong was the first jazz soloist to receive world-wide recognition. He was a singer and a wonderful trumpet player.

American centre of movie industry — Hollywood has produced a galaxy of brilliant actors and actresses: M. Monro, E. Taylor, M. Duglas, B. Streisand, S. Stallone, L. DiCaprio, J. Roberts and others.

Everybody knows the name of Neil Armstrong — the first man on the Moon.

Among the most famous people, that are greatly honoured by their compatriots, are well-known statesmen G. Washington, A. Lincoln and B. Franklin.

Vocabulary

to provide — устанавливать

masterpiece — шедевр

fame — слава

Patriarch's Pond — Патриарший

пруд

to inspire — вдохновлять,

воодушевлять

to invent — изобретать

fashion — мода

entertainment — развлечение

to shape — формировать

architect — архитектор

contribution — вклад

to design — конструировать

compatriot — соотечественник

statesman — государственный деятель

Questions

1. What famous writers and poets from Russia do you admire and why? 2. What famous musicians from Russia are recognized

all over the world? 3. What other outstanding people from Russia do you know? 4. Why are Russian people proud of their outstanding people? 5. How are famous people honoured in Russia? 6. What famous people in the United Kingdom do you know? 7. How are famous people honoured in the UK? 8. What famous people in the USA do you know? 9. How are they honoured in the USA? 10. Is it important to have outstanding people in the countries and why?

George Washington

On April 30, 1789, George Washington, standing on the balcony of Federal Hall on Wall Street in New York, took his oath as the first President of the United States. "As the first of every thing in our situation will serve to establish a precedent," he wrote in one of the letters, "it is devoutly wished on my part, that these precedents may be fixed on true principles."

Born in 1732 into a Virginia planter's family, he learned the morals, manners and body of knowledge requisite for an 18th-century Virginia gentleman.

He pursued two intertwined interests: military arts and western expansion. At the age of 16 he began his military career. In 1755 he escaped injury although four bullets ripped his coat and two horses were shot from under him.

From 1759 to the outbreak of the American Revolution, Washington managed his lands around Mount Vernon. Married to a widow, Martha Dandridge Cutis, he devoted himself to a busy and happy life. But like his fellow planters, Washington felt himself exploited by British merchants and hampered by British regulations. As the quarrel with the mother country grew acute, he moderately but firmly voiced his resistance to the restrictions.

When the Second Continental Congress assembled in Philadelphia in May 1775, Washington, one of the Virginia delegates, was elected Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army. On July 3, 1775, at Cambridge, Massachusetts, he took command of his ill-trained troops and embarked upon a war that was to last six grueling years.

He realized early that the best strategy was to harass the British. He reported to Congress, "We should on all Occasions avoid a

general Action, or put anything to the Risk, unless compelled by a necessity, into which we ought never to be drawn.” Ensuing battles saw him fall back slowly, then strike unexpectedly. Finally in 1781, with the aid of French allies, he forced the surrender of the British troops at Yorktown.

Washington longed to retire to his fields at Mount Vernon. But he soon realized that the Nation under its Articles of Confederation was not functioning well, so he became a prime mover in the steps leading to the Constitutional Convention at Philadelphia in 1787. When the new Constitution was ratified, the Electoral College unanimously elected Washington President.

He did not infringe upon the policy-making powers that he felt the Constitution gave Congress. But the determination of foreign policy became predominantly a Presidential concern. At the time of a major war between France and England, Washington refused to accept entirely the recommendations of either his Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson, who was pro-French, or his Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton, who was pro-British. Rather, he insisted upon a neutral course until the United States could grow stronger.

To his disappointment, two parties were developing by the end of his first term. Wearied of politics, feeling old, he retired at the end of his second term. In his Farewell Address he urged his countrymen to forswear excessive party spirit and geographical distinctions. In foreign affairs he warned against long-term alliances.

Washington enjoyed less than three years of retirement at Mount Vernon, for he died of a throat infection on December 14, 1799. Four months the Nation mourned him.

George Washington’s integrity set a pattern for all other Presidents to follow.

Vocabulary

oath — клятва

devoutly — искренне

intertwined — взаимосвязанный,
взаимозависимый

to rip — проникать, вонзаться

to hamper — мешать, затруд-
нять

acute — сильный, острый,
резкий

resistance — сопротивление

to embark upon — вступать в

grueling — изнурительный

Secretary of the Treasury —
министр финансов

Farewell Address — прощальная
речь
to urge — убеждать, настаивать
to put to the risk — подвергать
рisku
to compel — вынуждать
ensuing — следующие друг за
другом
to fall back — отступать

aid — помощь
ally — союзник
surrender — сдача, капитуляция
to infringe upon — вмешиваться в
to forswear — отречься
alliance — союз
to mourn — горевать, оплакивать
integrity — честность, непод-
купность

Questions

1. When was George Washington born? 2. When did George Washington take his oath as the first President of the US? 3. When was Washington elected Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army? 4. Was Washington interested both in military arts and politics? 5. Did he want to be involved in any military affairs? 6. What was his dream? 7. Was he admired by his people? 8. What do you know about his last years? 9. What monument in Washington, DC is dedicated to George Washington?

Franklin D. Roosevelt

Assuming the Presidency at the depth of the Great Depression, Franklin Delano Roosevelt helped the American people to regain faith in themselves. He brought hope, vigorous action and assertion in his Inaugural Address, “the only thing we have to fear is fear itself”.

Born in 1882 at Hyde Park, New York — now a national historic site — he attended Harvard University and Columbia Law School. On St. Patrick’s Day, 1905, he married Eleanor Roosevelt.

Following the example of his fifth cousin, President Theodore Roosevelt, whom he greatly admired, Franklin D. Roosevelt entered public service through politics, but as a Democrat. He won election to the New York Senate in 1910, and he was the Democratic nominee for Vice President in 1920.

In the summer of 1921, when he was 39, disaster hit — he was stricken with poliomyelitis. Demonstrating indomitable courage,

he fought to regain the use of his legs, particularly through swimming. At the 1924 Democratic Convention he dramatically appeared on crutches. In 1928 Roosevelt became Governor of New York.

He was elected President in November 1932, to the first of four terms. By March there were 13 million unemployed, and almost every bank was closed. In his first “hundred days”, he proposed, and Congress enacted, a sweeping program to bring recovery to business and agriculture, relief to the unemployed and to those in danger of losing farms and homes, and reform, especially through the establishment of the Tennessee Valley Authority.

By 1935 the Nation had achieved some measure of recovery, but businessmen and bankers were turning more and more against Roosevelt’s New Deal program. They feared his experiments, were appalled because he had taken the Nation off the gold standard and allowed deficits in the budget, and disliked the concessions to labor. Roosevelt responded with a new program of reform: Social Security, heavier taxes on the wealthy, new controls over banks and public utilities, and an enormous work relief program for the unemployed. In 1936 he was re-elected by a top-heavy margin. Feeling he was armed with a popular mandate, he sought legislation to enlarge the Supreme Court, which had been invalidating key New Deal measures. Roosevelt lost the Supreme Court battle, but a revolution in constitutional law took place. Thereafter the Government could legally regulate the economy.

Roosevelt had pledged the United States to the “good neighbor” policy. He also sought through neutrality legislation to keep the United States out of the war in Europe. But when the Japanese attacked Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941, Roosevelt directed organization of the Nation’s manpower and resources for global war.

Feeling that the future peace of the world would depend upon relations between the United States and Russia, he devoted much thought to the planning of the United Nations, in which, he hoped, international difficulties could be settled.

As the war drew to a close, Roosevelt’s health deteriorated, and on April 12, 1945, while at Warm Springs, Georgia, he died of a cerebral hemorrhage.

Vocabulary

to assume — принимать

Great Depression — Великая депрессия

depth — глубина

to regain — отвоевывать, возвращать

faith — вера, доверие

vigorous — решительный

assertion — утверждение

to fear — бояться

prompt — проворный, быстрый

indomitable — неукротимый, упрямый

to be stricken — быть сраженным

crutch — костыль

to enact — принимать закон, утверждать

sweeping program — поворотная программа

to recover — оздоравливать

relief — облегчение

establishment — установление

to appall — ужасать, устрашать

public utilities — коммунальные сооружения, предприятия

to take off — выводить, избавлять

margin — перевес

sought — (*прошедшее время от to seek*) искал

to enlarge — увеличивать

to invalidate — препятствовать

key — ключевой

sweeping — широкий, с большим охватом

manpower — рабочая сила

to pledge — поручать

to deteriorate — ухудшаться

cerebral hemorrhage — кровоизлияние в мозг

Questions

1. When and where was Roosevelt born? 2. What do you know about his childhood? 3. What happened in the summer of 1921? 4. How did Roosevelt cope with his problem? 5. When was he elected President? 6. What did he do for America and its people? 7. What can you say about Roosevelt's character? 8. Was he among organizers of the United Nations? 9. When did he die?

Martin Luther King

Martin Luther King was the son of a black Baptist pastor. His mother was a schoolteacher. Young Martin spent his childhood in Atlanta, Georgia. After high school he went to college and studied to be a pastor. Nobody could have guessed in those days the place in history of Martin Luther King.

It all started in Montgomery, Alabama in December 1955. The buses in Montgomery were segregated. Black people had to sit in the back of the bus, or to stand, if the back was full. One day a black woman, Rosa Parks, sat in the front of the bus, and then refused to give up her seat to a white passenger who got on the bus after her. Rosa Parks was arrested, and the black community of Montgomery was outraged.

Martin Luther King persuaded the black citizens to protest peacefully. He organized a boycott of the bus service. For 381 days the buses of Montgomery rolled back and forth on their routes, virtually empty. It was not easy for the blacks to give up riding the buses. For most of them the buses were their only means of transportation. But they supported the boycott. They walked, hitchhiked — and the buses stayed empty. King and his supporters were threatened. King's house was destroyed by a bomb. But still, the buses rolled on empty. At last the bus company gave in. The law was changed. Martin Luther King had won his first protest against injustice — peacefully. King's name became synonymous with non-violent demonstrations.

Martin Luther King led protests and demonstrations all over the country during the next few years. Everywhere he went, he preached love, patience, and most of all, non-violence. He believed that blacks could win their struggle for equal rights without violence. Millions of people all over the world knew about King and his beliefs. He was both admired and ridiculed, loved and hated.

In 1964 King won the Nobel Peace Prize. He was only thirty-four years old — the youngest man to receive this high honor. However, real change, for most black people, was very slow. Some of the King's supporters began to question his belief in peaceful protests. They were tired of waiting. They wanted to change everything immediately. Suddenly there was a period of terrible violence and hatred between blacks and whites. The nation was divided by fear, hatred and violence.

In April of 1968 King was in Memphis, Tennessee. He had gone there to help garbage workers strike peacefully for better pay and working conditions. The strike had not been peaceful, however, and King pleaded with both sides to be patient and calm.

In the last speech he made, he also talked of death. He had been threatened many times, but he said: "I'm not afraid anymore.

I've been to the mountaintop ... And I've looked over, and I've seen the Promised Land. I'm not fearing any man ...”

He stayed in his hotel most of the next day, talking to friends and supporters. About dinner time King was on the balcony outside his room. He was chatting with his friend Jesse Jackson about the meeting that night.

It was time to leave. Suddenly there was a rifle shot. King fell backwards, shot in the neck. He didn't move. Martin Luther King, a man of peace, had been killed by an assassin's bullet.

Today King is acknowledged as an American hero, and in 1983 Congress made his birthday, January 15th, a national holiday in his honor.

Vocabulary

to be segregated — быть разделенным по расовому признаку

in the back — сзади

to refuse — отказываться

to be outraged — подвергаться насилию, оскорблению

to persuade — убеждать

to roll back and forth — курсировать туда и обратно

to give up — сдаваться

non-violent — без применения силы

to preach — проповедовать

violence — насилие

to be ridiculed — быть осмеянным

hatred — ненависть

to threaten — угрожать

garbage — мусор

to plead — просить, обращаться с просьбой

to chat — болтать, разговаривать

rifle shot — выстрел из винтовки

assassin's bullet — пуля убийцы

to be acknowledged — признаваться, награждаться

Questions

1. What do you know about the childhood of Martin Luther King? 2. Why was the black community of Montgomery outraged? 3. Why did Martin Luther King persuade the black citizens to protest peacefully? 4. What did he organize? 5. What was the result of this boycott? 6. When did King win the Nobel Peace Prize? 7. Why was King in Memphis in 1968? 8. Why had Luther King been threatened many times? 9. How was he killed? 10. What national holiday do American people celebrate on the 15th of January?

Charles Dickens

Charles Dickens is still as popular today as when his first work appeared, over 150 years ago. Charles Dickens was born in 1812 near Portsmouth on the southern coast of England. His father was a clerk at the office of a large naval station, and the family lived on his small salary. They belonged to the lower middle class. The father was often transferred from place to place, and there was always talk between the parents about money, bills and debts.

Charles's first teacher was a kind young man from Oxford, under whose influence Charles grew fond of books. At ten he read Defoe, Fielding, Goldsmith and translations of some European and other authors. His favourite books were *Don Quixote* and the *Arabian Nights*.

Charles had to leave school when he was twelve, but later he got another chance to study. He continued his education by himself in a lawyer's office, then in the British Museum reading room. In 1832 Dickens became a parliamentary reporter.

Dickens's first efforts at writing were little stories about the ordinary Londoners he saw. The stories were comical street sketches that appeared in many magazines as *Sketches by Boz* (1833–36). In the preface to this work he wrote that his aim was to show "everyday life and everyday people". He lived for those people. It was said of Dickens that he "never talked down to the people, he talked up to the people".

The London house in Doughty Street, where Dickens lived for two years, is now a museum. He completed the *Pickwick Papers* (1837) and wrote *Oliver Twist* (1838) and *Nicholas Nickleby* (1839) there.

No one has conveyed the spirit of the 19th-century English life better than Dickens. He is remembered as the writer who has invented the theatre for one actor. With great success he read some of his Christmas stories. These were *The Cricket on the Hearth* and *A Christmas Carol*. In his *Christmas Books* (1843–48) Dickens wished to awaken kind and loving feelings in the hearts of the people.

The Christmas tales brought comfort to the reader. He believed that conscience of evil and selfish men would be touched when they realized the sufferings of the poor. All these stories have a happy

ending: Dickens put all his hopes in the good qualities of human nature.

The most famous works written by Charles Dickens (apart from those that have been mentioned above) are: *The Old Curiosity Shop* (1841), *Dombey and Son* (1846–48), *Bleak House* (1853), *Hard Times* (1854), *Little Dorrit* (1857), *A Tale of Two Cities* (1859), *Great Expectations* (1861), etc.

Charles Dickens died on the 9th of June, 1870 and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

Vocabulary

Portsmouth — г. Портсмут, Англия
naval — морской

salary — жалование, оклад

They belonged to the lower middle class. — Они принадлежали к почти бедным слоям населения.

Daniel Defo — Даниэль Дефо (1660–1731) (*английский романист и журналист, автор романа «Робинзон Крузо» (1719)*)

Henry Fielding — Генри Филдинг (1707–1754) (*английский романист*)

Oliver Goldsmith — Оливер Голдсмит (1728–1774) (*англо-ирландский литератор*)

Don Quixote — «Дон Кихот» (*сатирический роман испанского писателя Сервантеса (1547–1616)*)

the Arabian Nights — «Сказки тысячи и одной ночи»

lawyer's office — юридическая контора

parliamentary reporter — парламентский корреспондент

street sketches — очерки о происходящем вокруг

Sketches by Boz — Очерки Боза (*Боз — прозвище, данное Чарльзу Диккенсу его младшим братом*)

preface — предисловие, вводная часть

never talked down to the people, talked up to the people — никогда не считал себя выше других людей, относился к людям с почтением

Pickwick Papers — «Записки Пиквикского клуба»

Oliver Twist — «Приключения Оливера Твиста»

Nicholas Nickleby — «Жизнь и приключения Николаса Никклби»

to convey — передавать, отображать

to invent — изобретать, создавать
the theatre for one actor — театр одного актера

The Cricket on the Hearth — «Сверчок на печи»

A Christmas Carol — «Рождественская песнь»

conscience — совесть, сознание
evil and selfish — злой и эгоистичный

good qualities — хорошие качества

The Old Curiosity Shop — «Лавка древностей»
Dombey and Son — «Домби и сын»
Bleak House — «Холодный дом»
Hard Times — «Тяжелые времена»
Little Dorrit — «Крошка Доррит»

A Tale of Two Cities — «Сказка о двух городах»
Great Expectations — «Большие надежды»
to bury — хоронить, погребать
Westminster Abbey — Вестминстерское аббатство

Questions

1. When did Dickens's first work appear? 2. When and where was he born? 3. How did his father earn his living? 4. Under whose influence did Charles grow fond of reading? 5. What were his favourite books? 6. How old was Dickens when he had to leave school? 7. How did he continue his education? 8. Why do you think the house in Doughty Street became a museum? 9. What is Dickens famous for?

John Ronald Tolkien

The author of the famous book *The Lord of the Rings* was born in 1892 in South Africa and grew up in a village near Birmingham. He took part in the First World War. Then he became a professor of English at Oxford University.

It was while he was correcting exam papers that Tolkien wrote down a strange sentence that started: "In a hole in the ground there lived a hobbit ..."

Obviously, creative writing was more interesting than correcting papers, that's why Tolkien went on to transform this sentence into a full novel called *The Hobbit*, published in 1938. The main characters of this book later appeared in *The Lord of the Rings*.

Tolkien hated technology, he longed for England before the invention of engines (he died in 1973 and he never had a refrigerator, he never had a TV, he refused to buy an electric iron, although he bought cars for his children and grandchildren). He loved ancient myths, and for his books he borrowed characters from Anglo-Saxon, Scandinavian and other European mythology. He created his own world inhabited by wizards, elves, dwarves, goblins and certainly hobbits.

Hobbits are Tolkien's own invention. The word is a combination of Homo (man) and rabbit. Hobbits are rather short (about 1 metre) creatures with furry legs. They are peaceful, home-loving race, fond of their gardens and their cosy underground homes. They don't like adventures, but the main character of *The Hobbit*, *Bilbo Baggins* is forced to take part in a long and dangerous journey full of risk and extraordinary adventures.

In *The Lord of the Rings* Bilbo's nephew, Frodo Baggins, is given a dangerous task. He must destroy the magic ring which gives its owner great power. The Ring was made by Sauron the Dark Lord, but then it was lost and found by Bilbo, who didn't know about its magic power. If the Ring falls into the hands of Sauron, he and his dark forces will rule the world. So Frodo has to take the Ring to Mordor, the Dark Lord's own territory and throw it into the fires of Mount Doom.

The book was an immediate success. Tolkien's magic world caught reader's imagination. For almost fifty years people are not only reading his books — many try to live in his world. Tolkien sold the film rights to *The Lord of the Rings* in 1969, but he didn't believe that a film would ever be made. But he was wrong. It took filmmakers 50 years to bring the book to a big screen. At first a cartoon version was made, but nobody took the risk to make a live-action film. But finally the thing that Tolkien hated so much — technology — helped. With modern computer effects it became possible to create a realistic and exact interpretation of the book. The director Peter Jackson wanted the film to be real. He found suitable settings in his native New Zealand, and they built the set where “the hobbits” lived a year before they started shooting. They planted cabbages and carrots, grass and weeds, so after a year the whole place had grown and looked completely real.

The Lord of the Rings was published in 1954. The book took 11 years to write. The trilogy is more than 1,000 pages. 100 million copies have been sold. It has been translated into 25 languages. In 1970 the word hobbit was included in the Oxford Dictionary. The book is considered to be the champion of fantasy novels. Sometimes it is called the greatest book of the 20th century and Tolkien is called one of the greatest writers of the 20th century.

Vocabulary

The Lord of the Rings — «Властелин Колец»

obviously — очевидно

creative — творческий

to long — тосковать

invention — изобретение

engine — двигатель

wizard — волшебник, маг

elf — эльф

dwarf — гном

goblin — гоблин

creature — существо

furry — мохнатый

race — раса, народность

cosy — уютный

dark force — темные силы

live-action — игровой (*фильм*)

exact interpretation — точное переложение

suitable — подходящий, пригодный

settings — окружение, обстановка

set — съемочная площадка

shooting — съемки

weed — сорняк, трава

Questions

1. What do you know about the life of John Ronald Tolkien?
2. How did it happen that Tolkien began to write?
3. From what mythology did Tolkien borrow his characters?
4. What world did Tolkien create?
5. What is the origin of the word hobbit?
6. What do you know about hobbits?
7. What is the plot of *The Lord of the Rings*?
8. Why was the book an immediate success?
9. How long did it take Tolkien to write *The Lord of the Rings*?
10. Why was the word hobbit included in the Oxford Dictionary in 1970?

Joanne Kathleen Rowling

Once upon a time, in 1990, a young woman called Joanne Rowling was going by train from Manchester to London. The train was delayed, the journey was long, she was daydreaming, and suddenly she had the idea of a book about a boy wizard. By the time the train arrived at King's Cross Station four hours later, many of the characters and the beginning of the plot had already been invented. Ten years later her wild fantasies of wizards and witchcraft became the biggest publishing sensation of modern times.

The idea of writing a book was not quite sudden. Joanne Kathleen Rowling, born on July 31, 1965 in Bristol, England, has

always wanted to become a writer. She wrote her first book at the age of six — a story about a rabbit called Rabbit. At school she liked to tell stories to her friends — serial stories, in which they all performed heroic deeds.

Joanne's favourite subjects at school were English and Foreign Languages. She says she was a swot and a bookworm (just like Hermione, one of Harry Potter's best friends). After leaving school Joanne went to Exeter University to study French.

After graduating from the University she worked as a secretary for some time and then moved to Portugal to teach English as a second language. Joanne says she liked it. She worked afternoons and evenings, leaving the mornings free for writing. In Portugal Joanne met and married a TV journalist. The marriage didn't last long, and Rowling returned to Britain with her 4-month-old daughter and a suitcase full of Harry Potter notes.

She settled in Edinburgh, and though times were hard, she set out to finish the book. Every day she put her daughter in the pushchair and walked her around Edinburgh, and when the baby fell asleep, she would hurry to a cafe to write. In this way the first book was written.

Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone was published in June 1997 and became an immediate success. In July 1998, the second Potter book — *Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets* — shot to number one in the bestsellers list. In July 1999 *Harry Potter and the Prisoner of Azkaban* came out. It was sold like hot cakes. The fourth book — *Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire* — broke all publishing records. It was sold more than 370,000 on its first day in the UK. Today the books have been translated into 31 languages (including Russian).

Nothing like this has happened in children's literature for quite a long time. Children all over the world left their Pokemons and computer games and started reading. And not only children. Grown-ups read Harry Potter books too. In Britain a special edition of the book appeared with a more "adult" cover. It is rumoured that Joanne Rowling is writing her books with a magic wand.

Now Harry Potter has finally arrived on the big screen. Usually, films like this can never live up to the big expectations of eager fans, but — miracle of miracles — people who have already seen it, say that these films are a rare exception.

Vocabulary

to be delayed — опаздывать
to daydream — фантазировать
wizard — волшебник, маг
plot — сюжет
to invent — изобретать, придумывать
fantasy — фантазия
witchcraft — колдовство
serial — с продолжением
to perform — совершать
deed — поступок
swot — зубрила
bookworm — книжный червь
Exeter University — Экситерский университет
to graduate — оканчивать
to settle — селиться
to set out — решить(ся)
pushchair — коляска
copy — экземпляр
Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone — «Гарри Поттер и философский камень»
Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets — «Гарри Поттер и потайная комната»

Harry Potter and the Prisoner of Azkaban — «Гарри Поттер и узник Азкабана»
Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire — «Гарри Поттер и огненный кубок»
shot to number one in the bestseller list — заняла первое место среди бестселлеров
to sell like hot cakes — быть нарасхват
adult — взрослый
cover — обложка
it is rumoured — ходят слухи, что
magic wand — волшебная палочка
to live up to one's expectations — оправдывать ожидания
eager fan — восторженный поклонник
miracle of miracles — чудо из чудес
rare — редкий
exception — исключение

Questions

1. What do you know about the life of Joanne Kathleen Rowling? 2. At what age did Rowling write her first book? 3. What were her favourite subjects at school? 4. Why was Joanne a swot and a bookworm at school? 5. What did Joanne do after leaving school? 6. What did she do after graduating from the University? 7. How did she write her first book about Harry Potter? 8. Why do people speak about Harry Potter phenomenon today? 9. What is the plot of these books? 10. What do you know about the films with Harry Potter?

O. Henry

O. Henry (1862–1910) was a prolific American short-story writer, a master of surprise endings, who wrote about the life of ordinary people in New York City. A twist of plot, which turns on an ironic or coincidental circumstance, is typical of O. Henry's stories.

William Sydney Porter (O. Henry) was born in Greenboro, North Carolina. His father, Algernon Sidney Porter, was a physician. When William was three, his mother died, and he was raised by his paternal grandmother and aunt. William was an avid reader, but at the age of fifteen he left school and then worked in a drug store and on a Texas ranch. He moved to Houston, where he had a number of jobs, including that of bank clerk. After moving to Austin, Texas, in 1882, he married.

In 1884 he started a humorous weekly *The Rolling Stone*. When it failed, he joined the *Houston Post* as a reporter and columnist. In 1897 he was convicted of embezzling money, although there has been much debate over his actual guilt. In 1898 he entered a penitentiary at Columbus, Ohio.

While in prison he started to write short stories to earn money to support his daughter Margaret. His first work, *Whistling Dick's Christmas Stocking* (1899), appeared in *McClure's Magazine*. After doing three years of the five years sentence Porter emerged from the prison in 1901 and changed his name to O. Henry.

O. Henry moved to New York City in 1902 and from December 1903 to January 1906 he wrote a story a week for *The New York World*, also publishing in other magazines. Henry's first collection, *Cabbages and Kings*, appeared in 1904. The second, *The Four Million*, was published two years later and included his well-known stories *The Gift of the Magi* and *The Furnished Room*. *The Trimmed Lamp* (1907) included *The Last Leaf*. Henry's best-known work is perhaps the much anthologized *The Ransom of Red Chief*, included in the collection *Whirligigs* (1910). *The Heart of the West* (1907) presented tales of the Texas range.

O. Henry published 10 collections and over 600 short stories during his lifetime.

O. Henry's last years were shadowed by alcoholism, ill health and financial problems. He married Sara Lindsay Coleman in 1907, but the marriage was not happy, and they separated a year later. O. Henry died of cirrhosis of the liver on June 5, 1910, in New York. His other collections appeared posthumously.

Vocabulary

prolific — плодovitый
surprise ending — неожиданный
конец
twist of plot — поворот сюжета
coincidental circumstance —
неожиданное совпадение
обстоятельств
physician — врач
to be raised — быть воспитан-
ным
paternal — по отцу
avid — жадный
drug store — аптека
ranch — ранчо
to fail — провалиться, потерпеть
неудачу
columnist — составитель коло-
нок
to convict — признавать винов-
ным, осуждать

embezzling — растрачивание
чужих денег
guilt — вина
penitentiary — исправительный
дом
sentence — приговор
to emerge — выходить
cabbages — капуста
trimmed — изящный, элeгант-
ный, украшенный
to anthologize — составлять,
помещать в антологию
ransom — выкуп
whirligigs — юла, карусель,
водоворот
to shadow — омрачаться
to separate — (зд.) расставаться
cirrhosis of the liver — цирроз
печени
posthumously — посмертно

Questions

1. When and where was O. Henry born? 2. What was his real name? 3. What do you know about his family? 4. Where did he work? 5. Why was he put into prison? 6. How many short stories did he write during his lifetime? 7. Have you read any of his stories? 8. What stories did you like? Why?

Mark Twain

Mark Twain is one of America's most famous authors. He wrote many books, including *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* and *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*, and many humorous stories. Mark Twain's own life was interesting enough to be a book.

Twain was born in 1835 in the state of Missouri, near the Mississippi River. He came from a poor family. His father died when he was twelve, so he had to leave school. While he was still a boy, he worked as a riverboat pilot. He steered boats up and down the long Mississippi River.

The Civil War, which started in 1861, made traveling on the Mississippi impossible. Twain then went west to Nevada. There he worked on a newspaper. In 1864 he went to California to find gold. Twain did not have much luck as a gold miner. He left California to travel in Europe. Twain wrote a book about his trips around Europe.

But the most important influence on Twain and his books was the Mississippi River. When Twain finally settled down, he lived in a house with a porch that looked like the deck of a riverboat. In fact, even the name Mark Twain comes from the Mississippi. Mark Twain's real name was Samuel Clemens. He often heard the boatmen shout "Mark Twain!" This meant the water was twelve feet deep. When Samuel Clemens began to write, he chose for himself the name of Mark Twain. But Samuel Clemens began using the pen-name "Mark Twain" in his late 20s. Twain really began writing when he was left without work and turned to journalism.

It was England, which first recognized the true worth of Mark Twain's writings — the truth that lay beneath the humor and satire of his novels.

His first fame came with a travel book called *The Innocents Abroad*, which described the hilarious exploits of the first real wave of American tourists bent on European culture-mongering. It was not until 1876 that he returned to his childhood days, to write *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*. In 1884 he published its sequel, *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*. Neither book was immediately a success, and *Huckleberry Finn* was denounced for its coarseness and vulgarity. Vulgar it was, and remains, because it describes a world — the western frontier of the American South that was crude. But the books are funny, while at the same time touching on deep

human feelings. They remain unique contributions to American literature, set in a time and space that only Mark Twain could have described.

Vocabulary

Civil War — Гражданская война

steer — водить, управлять

miner — добытчик

porch — крыльцо

deck — палуба

to shout — кричать

pen-name — псевдоним

true worth — истинная ценность

lay — (*прошедшее время от lie* — лежать) скрывалась

beneath — под

fame — слава

satire — сатира

exploit — подвиг

wave — волна

culture-mongering — распространитель культуры

sequel — продолжение

to denounce — осуждать

coarseness and vulgarity — грубость и вульгарность

vulgar — вульгарный

western frontier — западная граница

crude — грубый

unique contribution — уникальный вклад

Questions

1. What are Mark Twain's most famous books? 2. When was he born? 3. Was his family rich? 4. What was the most important influence on Twain's books? 5. What is the real name of Mark Twain? 6. What is the origin of the name Mark Twain? 7. What books by Mark Twain have you read? 8. Which book do you like most of all?

Mark Twain's Famous Aphorisms

Mark Twain was one of the important figures in American literary history. He was not only a great writer; he was also a famous humorist, a brilliant journalist and a novelist who used laughter to fight against the tyrannies that seek to take away man's freedom.

- The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.
- Man is the only animal that blushes — or needs to.
- Don't let school interfere with your education.

- A successful man is one who makes more money than his wife can spend. A successful woman is one who can find such a man.
- Truth is the most valuable thing we have. Let us economize it.
- When I was a boy of 14, my father was so ignorant I could hardly stand to have the old man around. But when I got to be twenty-one, I was astonished at how much the old man had learnt in seven years.
- All you need in life is ignorance and confidence, then success is sure.
- Let us be thankful for the fools. But for them the rest of us could not succeed.
- When angry, count four; when very angry, swear.
- Go to Heaven for the climate, Hell for the company.
- Get your facts first, and then you can distort them as much as you please.
- The reports of my death are greatly exaggerated.
- Classic is something that everybody wants to have read and nobody wants to read.

Vocabulary

aphorism — афоризм, краткое изречение

tyrannies — тираны, деспоты

to seek — (зд.) покушаться

weapon — оружие

to blush — краснеть от стыда

to interfere with — мешать, быть помехой

valuable — ценный, дорогой

to economize — экономить

ignorance — невежество

confidence — уверенность, самоуверенность

I could hardly stand to have the old man around. — Я с трудом выносил присутствие старика.

to astonish — удивлять

but for them — если бы не они

to swear — ругаться

Heaven — небеса, рай

Hell — ад

to distort — исказить, извращать

exaggerated — преувеличенный

Questions

1. What is Mark Twain famous for? 2. Was he a famous humorist? 3. What interesting aphorisms by Mark Twain do you know? 4. What books did you like and why? 5. Can you illustrate any of his aphorisms?

Charlie Chaplin

Charlie Chaplin was the first and the greatest movie star of all time. He was born in London in 1889 in the family of two music-hall performers. His parents taught him to sing and dance, and by the age of seven he was already appearing regularly on the stage. At the age of twenty-four an American producer offered him a film contract. From the very beginning his films were successful, his popularity grew. In 1917 he was paid 1 million dollars for eight movies of 20 minutes without sound.

The absence of sound in the motion pictures of that period may have contributed to Chaplin's popularity. Since he spoke no language on the screen, people from different countries could easily watch his films.

The most significant factor in Chaplin's popularity was the character he portrayed on his films. The Little Fellow expressed the joy and sorrow, the dreams and frustrations that everyone experiences in life. Equally important was the fact that Chaplin expressed these things with humor and he made people laugh nearly every second. His best movies are *City Lights*, *Modern Times* and *The Gold Rush*.

Ironically, The Little Fellow was created quite by accident, when the director of the motion picture suggested that Chaplin come up with something that would make the movie funnier. "I thought I would dress in baggy pants, big shoes and derby hat," Chaplin explained later in his autobiography. "I wanted everything a contradiction: the pant baggy, the coat tight, the hat small, the shoes large." He wore comical false moustache and one of the most famous characters in his history of motion pictures was born — Charlie Chaplin as The Little Fellow.

Vocabulary

movie star — звезда кино

music-hall performer — исполнитель в мюзик-холле

to appear — появляться

regularly — регулярно

absence — отсутствие

sound — звук

motion picture — кинофильм

to contribute — способствовать

popularity — популярность

screen — экран

significant — важный

to portray — изображать

to express — выражать

sorrow — печаль
frustration — разочарование,
крушение надежд
to experience — испытывать,
знать по опыту
The Gold Rush — Золотая
лихорадка
ironically — иронично
to create — создавать

by accident — случайно
baggy pants — мешковатые
брюки
derby hat — котелок (*мужская
шляпа*)
autobiography — автобиография
contradiction — противоречие
tight — узкий, тесный
false moustache — фальшивые усы

Questions

1. When was Chaplin born? 2. Who taught him to sing and to dance? 3. When did Chaplin first appear on the stage? 4. When was Chaplin offered his first film contract? 5. What contributed to Chaplin's worldwide popularity? 6. Why could people from different countries see and understand his films? 7. How was the character of The Little Fellow created? 8. Can you describe Charlie's costume? 9. Have you seen films with Chaplin? 10. Did you like them? Why?

Madame Tussaud

The story of Madame Tussaud is as fascinating as that of the exhibition itself. Two things of her life are especially noteworthy. First, she spent her early years amid the turmoil of the French Revolution and came to meet many of the characters involved; second, and perhaps more unusually, she succeeded in business at a time when women were rarely involved in the world of commerce.

Madame Tussaud was born in Strasbourg in 1761 and christened Marie Grosholtz. Her father, a soldier, was killed in a battle during the Seven Years War only two months before Marie's birth. Her mother was a housekeeper for Dr. Philippe Curtius, a skilled wax sculptor. From the earliest childhood Marie learnt modelling techniques with Dr. Curtius. Just before the French Revolution they moved to Paris.

At that time Marie's talent became apparent and she was invited to the royal court to assist in the artistic education of King

Louis XVI's sister, Madame Elizabeth. Life at Versailles was in vivid contrast to Marie's previous existence. The capital became a centre of chaotic activity; no one was safe, and at one time both Marie and her mother were imprisoned. But they were not executed, and nobody knew why. Long before Marie was asked to prepare the death masks of many of her former employers after they had been executed — among them Marie Antoinette, Louis XVI, Jean Paul Marat, the philosopher and revolutionary. This portrait, along with many others modelled by Marie, is still on display today.

In 1794 Curtius died, and Marie inherited the business, which had grown under her influence. In the following year she married a French engineer, Francois Tussaud, and gave birth to three children: a daughter, who died, and two sons.

France was still suffering enormous deprivation, and Marie's exhibition was struggling to survive. In 1802 Marie made a monumental decision. She would leave her husband and her baby son, Francis, in Paris, while she and her elder son, Joseph, would tour the exhibition round the British Isles.

Marie was to see neither France nor her husband again. She spent the next 33 years travelling around the British Isles, exhibiting her growing collection of figures to crowds of curious and intrigued spectators. Joseph (her elder son) accompanied her, taking a keen interest in the craft of making wax figures. Soon his brother Francis joined them.

In the days before television, cinema and radio Madame Tussaud's figures were a sensation. Week after week the figures of Lord Byron, the murderers Burke and Hare, King George IV, Queen Caroline of Brunswick, Shakespeare and the death mask of the Emperor Napoleon — among many others — were packed and unpacked to be shown to an admiring public.

The travels ended in 1835, when Madame Tussaud's exhibition found a permanent home. It was in London, not far from today's exhibition.

Another interesting development of the period was the establishment of what was to become the Chamber of Horrors. Madam Tussaud's collection of the victims and perpetrators of violent punishment and murderers and miscreants was an unquestionable success.

Madam Tussaud was actively involved in the exhibition almost to the end of her life. This would be a remarkable feat even now, and was particularly unusual for a woman in the 19th century. In April 1850, at the age of 89, she died. Her final work — a remarkable self-portrait modelled eight years before her death — can still be seen today.

There are some interesting facts about her museum. In 1925 an electrical fault sparked a fire, which, despite the efforts of Madame Tussaud's own firefighters and the London Fire Brigade, soon raged out of the control. Many of the figures were destroyed. But by 1928 the interior had been reconstructed, this time with the addition of a cinema and restaurant.

With the outbreak of the Second World War, in 1939, all of Britain was threatened by enemy action — not least London. During the night of the 8th of September 1940, Madame Tussaud's was struck by a heavy bomb, which inflicted significant damage. Some 352 head moulds were damaged beyond repair and the cinema was completely destroyed — although, thankfully, no lives were lost. In December of that same year the exhibition again opened its doors to the public.

So the story of Madame Tussaud and the history of her museum are really fascinating. She was a remarkable character in so many ways; she was a shrewd businesswoman, as well as a craftswoman. Madame Tussaud's has a reputation which cannot be destroyed as long as the workers, who guided by her spirit, do everything they can to protect the history of perfection which Madame Tussaud's stands for today.

Vocabulary

noteworthy — заслуживающий
внимания
amid — среди
turmoil — беспорядок
to involve — включать
to succeed — иметь успех
skilled — опытный
wax — воск
modelling techniques — техноло-
гия моделирования

to patronize — патронировать
apparent — очевидный
court — суд
chaotic — хаотичный
to assist — помогать, принимать
участие
to imprison — заключать
в тюрьму
to execute — казнить
to inherit — наследовать

enormous — огромный
deprivation — лишение, потеря
to survive — выживать
the length and breadth — вдоль
и поперек
craft — ремесло
wax figure — восковая фигура
murderer — убийца
to pack — упаковывать
to unpack — распаковывать
admiring — восхищающийся
Chamber of Horrors — Камера
ужасов
perpetrator — преступник
violent punishment — жестокое
наказание
miscreant — негодяй

feat — подвиг
self-portrait — автопортрет
electrical fault — электрическая
неисправность
to spark — давать искру, вспы-
хивать
firefighter — пожарный
to range out of the control —
выходить из-под контроля
interior — интерьер
to threaten — угрожать
to strike — ударять
to inflict — причинять
damage — повреждение
shrewd — умный, практичный
to guide — руководить
perfection — совершенство

Questions

1. What is Madam Tussaud famous for? 2. In what country was she born? 3. What was her mother? 4. Who taught her modelling techniques? 5. Why did she leave France? 6. What do you know about her family? 7. What did she do in Britain? 8. Why were Madam Tussaud's figures a sensation? 9. What interesting facts about her museum do you know? 10. What do you know about the Chamber of Horrors?

Dialogues

1.

— Do you like history?

— Sure. As for me, I'm fond of British history.

— Oh, last year I read a very interesting book about King Henry VIII. It was really very informative.

— Yes. Have you heard that Henry VIII loved music very much?

— Of course, I know about it. He was a keen musician, a composer and a singer. It is said that he owned 10 trombones, 14 trumpets, 5 bagpipes and 78 flutes!

— Moreover, he composed many pieces of music. He was a very well-educated person.

— I read that he spoke 4 languages, wrote poetry and knew a lot about religion.

— It's true. But why did he have so many wives?

— Yes, he had 6 wives. And the usual answer was that he wanted a son to be his heir. But actually he had plenty of sons, sadly most of them died, but one survived, born to his third wife. So why he had another three wives after that is unknown.

— OK. Our talk was very interesting. Thank you. Bye-bye.

— Bye-bye. See you tomorrow, and we'll continue our discussion.

2.

— Hi!

— Hello! I haven't seen you for ages. Last time I saw you we spoke about King Henry VIII.

— Yes, but we talked only about his positive features, and he was a terrible and cruel king.

— I know that he executed anyone who disagreed with him, including his two wives.

— When he became King, the country was catholic and was controlled by the Pope in Rome. When the Pope didn't let Henry get divorced from his first wife, Henry made himself head of the church in England and gave himself the divorce he wanted.

— And then he closed all the monasteries and nunneries in England and took all the money from the monks and nuns. He threw all of them out onto the streets to beg and gave their monasteries to his friends for fine houses.

— And this time in Britain was called the Reformation!

— It's a pity! Let's hope that such things won't be repeated.

— Let's hope for the best. Bye.

— Bye-bye.

3.

— Hi. Let's have a talk about Soviet women pilots. What do you know about them?

— I read a lot about Marina Raskova, Natalya Meklin and Marina Smirnova.

— Can you tell me about their battles during the Second World War?

— Sure. When Germany invaded the Soviet Union, Major Marina Raskova, a famous Soviet pilot, went to Stalin to convince him to set up three women's fighter and bomber regiments. Stalin agreed, and a special training centre for women was set up in Engels, a small town not far from Stalingrad.

— I know that the girls' regiments fought at Stalingrad in the winter of 1942–43 and in every battle including the Battle for Berlin in 1945.

— They learned to fly at night with their engines switched off and attacked the enemy unexpectedly. The Germans feared them and called them the “night witches”.

— Many women pilots were awarded a Gold Star of a Hero. But unfortunately some of them were killed during battles.

— So it is very important to remember and appreciate what those amazing women did for us.

4.

— Do you like geography?

— Of course, I do. And why?

— I'd like to talk about the discovery of America. I know that Columbus discovered America. Then why is it called America, not Columbia?

— American people remember Columbus. Several cities in the US are named after him, one of the chief rivers is called the Columbia River, one of the city is called Washington, DC, with the initials standing for District of Columbia. However, the two continents are named after Amerigo Vespucci, another Italian explorer.

— He made at least two or four voyages there. The second voyage convinced Vespucci that he had reached a new continent. He was the first person to claim this.

— In 1507, a German mapmaker who read Vespucci's writings used the name America to describe the area that Columbus and Vespucci had explored.

— But I know that Columbus had reached the Western Hemisphere before him. But it is appropriate that Amerigo Vespucci is the forgotten explorer, while Columbus is honoured annually in many countries.

Writing

1.

22 July 2005

Dear Nancy,

Thank you for your letter. It was very interesting to know about the book you are reading.

And I've just seen the film about James Bond. It was great! And I'd like to tell you about the person who invented James Bond. Have you heard about Jan Fleming? I've read that he himself worked for British Naval Intelligence. He even had a code name. It was not 007, however, but 17F.

I think that we'll read about Jan Fleming together when you come to see me.

See you soon,

Liz

2.

25 January

Dear Michael,

I was greatly pleased to hear from you. Thank you for your telephone call. Unfortunately, we didn't have enough time to discuss all the news. That's why I'd like to tell you about the book I'm reading now.

It's very interesting and unusual. It contains stories about Winston Churchill's life and his famous quotes. When I read them, I understand that Churchill was not only a great politician, but also a great humourist and philosopher. It's a pity you haven't read them. When we meet, I'll quote you some of them.

That's all for now. Write soon,

Luke

UNIT 18

SPORTS AND HEALTH

Sports in Britain

The Englishmen are known to be great sports-lovers. One of the most popular British games is cricket, which foreigners can hardly understand. Cricket is played by two teams of 11 men. Players usually wear white clothes. Cricket is a very slow game. Matches last from one to five days. It is played all over the country in summer. To many Englishmen cricket is both a game and a standard of behaviour. When they consider anything unfair, they say "That's not cricket."

Another game which attracts the greatest attention is soccer. There are plenty of soccer clubs in every town. The Cup Final played in London is the main event of the football season. Rugby football is also very popular, but it is played mainly by amateurs. It's a kind of English football in which the players use their hands for carrying the ball. This game is played by teams of 15 men with an oval ball.

Golf began to develop in Scotland and now is widely spread all over Britain. A great number of people play and watch tennis. The most famous tennis tournament is the one in Wimbledon. Horse racing is also extremely popular in Great Britain. The racing season includes five races. The Derby is one of the most famous sporting events in the whole world. The English also like playing golf, baseball, basketball and bowling. Athletic sports such as running, jumping, rowing, swimming, boxing and gymnastics are practised at schools and colleges. The annual Oxford-Cambridge boat race on the river Thames attracts lots of people and is very popular. In Scotland where there are good conditions for winter sports skiing is very popular.

Sport probably plays a more important part in people's lives in Britain than it does in most other countries. Millions of people take part in some kind of sport at least once a week. Many millions more are regular spectators and follow one or more sports. There

are hours of televised sport each week. Every newspaper devotes several pages entirely to sport. Indeed, sport in one form or another is an essential part of daily life in Britain.

Vocabulary

hardly — едва, с трудом
to attract attention — привлекать внимание
amateur — любительский
to develop — развиваться
widely spread — широко распространенный
tournament — турнир, спортивное соревнование
horse racing — конские бега, скачки
extremely — чрезвычайно

race — гонка; **aces** — скачки, бега
event — событие
rowing — гребля, гребной спорт
conditions — условия
probably — вероятно
at least — по крайней мере
to devote — посвящать
entirely — целиком, полностью
indeed — действительно, в самом деле
essential — существенный, неотъемлемый

Questions

1. What popular British sports do you know? 2. What sports were invented in the UK? 3. What sports are especially associated with Britain? 4. What do you know about cricket? 5. What kinds of racing are popular in Britain? 6. Why do many sports games have English names? 7. What famous sporting events in Britain do you know? 8. What are the most popular teenager's sports in the UK? 9. Do you know any outstanding British sportsmen/women? 10. Does sport play an important part in the life of British people? Can you prove it?

Sports in America

Americans are very fond of sport. The most popular sports in the USA are football, which is played from April to October, baseball, played from September to December, basketball, played from October to April and ice hockey, played in most northern cities from October to March.

American football derives from the English game of rugby. It was started at Harvard University in 1870s. It is a game for the two teams of 11 men on the field. The object of the game is to have control of the ball and to score points by carrying it across the goal-line.

Baseball is a team game derived from the English game of cricket. It is played with a bat and a ball by two teams of 9 players each on a field with 4 bases. Baseball is the national game of the USA and it is very popular in Canada too.

Basketball is a game which nowadays is popular all over the world. It was invented in 1891. During the 1920s the first US league championship was organized. In the 1970s the American Championship was divided into two leagues: the ABA (American Basketball Association), which does not exist any longer, and the NBA (National Basketball Association).

There are a lot of activities which Americans take part in, such as golf, swimming, tennis, aerobics, wrestling, etc.

Americans' interest in sports seems excessive to many foreign visitors. Television networks spend millions of dollars arranging to telecast sports events. Publications about sports are sold widely. In the US professional athletes can become national heroes.

Sports are also associated with educational institutions. High schools have coaches as faculty members, and school teams compete with each other.

Nowhere else in the world are sports associated with colleges and universities in the way they are in the United States. College sports, especially football, are conducted in an atmosphere of intense excitement. Games between teams attract nationwide television audiences.

Sports play such an important role in American life that the sociology of sports, sports medicine and sports psychology have become respectable specializations.

Many Americans jog every day or play tennis two or three times a week. They go on ski trips and hunting expeditions that require weeks of planning and organizing. In the Americans' view, all these activities are worth the discomfort they may cause because they contribute to health and physical fitness. That is probably why Americans are known as a healthy nation.

Vocabulary

to derive — происходить

field — поле

to score points — выигрывать,
набирать очки

goal-line — линия ворот

bat — бита

to invent — изобретать

to exist — существовать

wrestling — борьба

excessive — чрезмерный

network — сеть

to arrange — устроить,
организовывать

to telecast — транслировать

event — событие

publication — публикация

to associate — ассоцииро-
ваться

coach — тренер

faculty — преподавательский
состав

to compete — соревноваться

especially — особенно

to conduct — проводить

intense — интенсивный, силь-
ный, значительный

excitement — волнение, возбуж-
дение

to attract — привлекать

respectable — уважаемый,
респектабельный

to jog — бегать трусцой

hunting — охотничий

to require — требовать, нуж-
даться

to be worth — стоить

to cause — вызывать

to contribute — способствовать

Questions

1. Are Americans interested in sports? 2. What are the most popular sports in the USA? 3. What sports are especially associated with this country? 4. When are they played? 5. What other sports activities are popular in the USA? 6. Are there sports teams in American high schools? 7. What specializations have become respectable thanks to the development of sports? 8. Why do Americans spend so much time on sports activities? 9. Do you know any outstanding American sportsmen/women? 10. Why are Americans known as healthy nation?

Olympic Games

The Olympic Games are an international sports festival that began in Ancient Greece 2,800 years ago. The original Greek games took place every fourth year for several hundred years.

Today's Olympic Games are very different from the first ones. Women couldn't play; they weren't even allowed to watch. Ancient athletes competed without any clothes on!

The early events were footraces. Later wrestling, javelin, discus, jumping and other events were added. Athletes became stars in those days too. The winners of the Games were highly praised and honoured for their results. There was no TV, but winners' images often appeared on coins or as statues after their victories. In 394 a Roman Emperor ended the ancient Olympics, and they weren't renewed until many centuries later.

In 1894 Baron Pierre de Coubertin, a young French nobleman, began working to bring the Olympics back to life. He hoped that the Games would help to promote peace among nations.

Two years later the first modern Olympics took place. Of course, they were held in Greece to symbolize the continuation of the centuries-old tradition.

The Olympics have changed with the times. The first events for women were held in 1900. In 2000 in Sydney, for the first time, women competed in the same number of team sports as men. Many sports have been added. Beginning in 1926 Winter Olympics were included. They were held in the same year as the Summer Games, but starting in 1994, the Winter Games are held two years after the Summer Games.

Russia joined the Olympic movement in 1952. Since then Soviet sportsmen have won a lot of gold, silver and bronze medals. Hundreds of athletes have become record-setters, a number of them more than once. In 1980 Moscow hosted the 22nd Olympic Games.

The opening and the closing of the Games are very spectacular ceremonies. One of the most famous Olympic traditions is the lighting of the Olympic flame. It is brought from Greece to the capital of the Games by relay. The Olympic flag has five coloured interlaced rings, representing the five parts of the world, on a white background. The motto of the Olympic Games is "Citius, Altius, Fortius" that means "Faster, Higher, Stronger".

The Olympic Games aren't just about winning. The real thrill is competing against the best players on earth. In the words of US sportsman Dot Richardson, "every athlete wants to face an opponent who's having the performance of a lifetime. That is when you truly find that you are the best."

Not only athletes usually wait for the Olympics, all sports fans are impatient too. When the Games begin, television broadcasts the ceremonies and the events to millions of people. They are able to support their favourite teams and sportsmen. And of course, they are proud when the sportsmen from their native country win bronze, silver or gold medals.

Vocabulary

Olympic Games — Олимпийские игры
ancient — древний
to take place — происходить
several — несколько
to allow — разрешать
to compete — соревноваться
event — соревнование
footrace — состязание по ходьбе
later — позднее
wrestling — борьба
javelin — метание копья
discus — метание диска
to add — добавлять
to praise — хвалить
to honour — почитать, чествовать
to appear — появляться
coin — монета
emperor — император
to renew — возобновлять
Baron Pierre de Coubertin — барон Пьер де Кубертен
to promote — способствовать, содействовать

nobleman — дворянин
to be held — проводиться
continuation — продолжение
team — команда
spectacular — эффектный, зрелищный
to host the Olympic Games — принимать Олимпийские игры
Olympic flame — олимпийский огонь
relay — эстафета
interlaced — переплетенный
to represent — представлять
background — фон
motto — девиз
to mean — означать
thrill — острое ощущение, незабываемая минута
impatient — нетерпеливый
to broadcast — транслировать
to support — поддерживать, болеть за кого-л.
to be proud of — гордиться
native — родной

Questions

1. What is the history of the ancient Olympic Games? 2. How and when were the Olympic Games renewed? 3. When were the Winter Games introduced? 4. Are Summer and Winter Games held separately? 5. What sports are included into the Olympic Games? 6. What is the most famous Olympic tradition? 7. What does the

motto of the Olympic Games mean? 8. When did Russia join the Olympic movement? 9. What part does Russia play in the Olympic Games? 10. Where were the latest Summer and Winter Olympic Games held?

Sports in Russia

It's very important for people to have some regular exercise. In Russia a lot of people go in for sports. We can say that Russia is a nation of sport-lovers. Many sports are popular in our country. They are football, hockey, basketball, volleyball, tennis, skiing, figure skating, wrestling, shooting and many others. All water sports are widely spread in our country, including swimming, diving, sailing and water skiing. Some people are fond of extreme sports such as rock climbing, potholing or white-water rafting.

Russia's ethnic minorities also have their own traditional forms of exercise. The Yakuts of central Siberia are skilled reindeer-sled racers. Archery is popular with the Buryats of eastern Siberia. On the Amur River in southeastern Russia canoeing is also a popular sport.

Sports in Russia have traditionally been divided into amateur and professional. That's why there are different sports club in the country. A lot of sportsmen take part in international competitions and win medals. A great number of sportsmen take part in the Olympic Games and show excellent results. Hundreds of athletes have become Olympic medalists and record-setters. The names of Irina Rodnina, Vyacheslav Fetisov, Evgenii Kafelnikov, Marat Safin are famous all over the world.

Sporting activities are a part of daily life in Russia. In every school there is a gym and a sports ground. Sport is an important subject at schools and universities. A lot of pupils are trained in sports schools which are run by the major sports clubs.

During the last years there was a great increase in keeping fit and staying healthy in Russia. A lot of people started jogging and going to fitness clubs in their spare time. Aerobics classes and fitness clubs were opened in every town, and the number of recreation centres greatly increased. Indoor pools, with their wave-making machines, water slides and tropical vegetation have become very

popular in Russia. Doing sports prevents us from getting too fat and helps to stay healthy.

But despite the increase in the number of people participating in sports, the majority of them still prefer to be spectators. Thousands of people go to the stadiums to support their favourite teams and sportsmen. Most of the important competitions are televised and people enjoy watching sports programmes on TV. But certainly watching sports events and going in for sports are two different things.

Vocabulary

to go in for — заниматься
skiing — лыжный спорт
figure skating — фигурное катание
wrestling — борьба
shooting — стрельба
widely spread — широко распространенный
to include — включать
diving — прыжки в воду
sailing — парусный спорт
rock climbing — скалолазание
potholing — спелеология
white-water rafting — рафтинг
(*сплав по горной реке*)
minority — меньшинство
skilled — искусный
reindeer-sled racer — гонщик на оленях
archery — стрельба из лука
canoeing — гребля на каяках или байдарках
to divide — делить
amateur — любительский
to take part in — принимать участие в
competition — соревнование
to win — выигрывать
excellent — отличный
record-setter — рекордсмен

gym — спортивный зал
sports ground — спортивная площадка
to run — руководить
increase — увеличение, рост; увеличивать
to keep fit — поддерживать спортивную форму
to stay healthy — оставаться здоровым
jogging — бегать трусцой
spare time — свободное время
recreation centre — центр отдыха и развлечений
indoor pool — крытый бассейн
wave-making machines — устройства, создающие волны
water slides — водные горки
vegetation — растительность
to prevent from — препятствовать, не давать что-л. сделать
despite — несмотря на
to participate — принимать участие
majority — большинство
spectator — зритель
to support — болеть (*за спортивную команду*)
team — команда

Questions

1. Why do people go in for sports? 2. What winter sports are popular in Russia? 3. What summer sports are popular in Russia? 4. What sports are practised among Russia's ethnic minorities? 5. What is the difference between amateur and professional sports? 6. Do you know any outstanding Russian sportsmen/women? 7. What other sports activities are popular in Russia? 8. Why is it necessary to have PE at schools and universities? 9. What sports facilities are there in your native town? 10. Do you go in for sports or do you watch sports events on TV?

To Watch or to Participate?

The modern way of life, when people have little physical activity, use cars instead of walking, watch television for many hours and work on computers, is turning them into legless creatures. Although a lot of people are interested in staying healthy, not many people do very much about it.

The majority of people live in towns and cities, where space for team sports is limited. To keep fit, most people take part in individual sports. They usually go walking, swimming, cycling or do aerobics. If they do aerobics or go swimming, they usually go to the sports centre; but not many people join a sports club.

Some people argue that sport is not very useful. It takes a lot of energy and time. As a result of going in for sports, people have broken legs and arms and other injuries. Besides, it makes you unhappy when you lose. A lot of people prefer to watch sports competitions rather than take part in sports. Thousands of people go to the stadiums to support their favourite teams and sportsmen. The most popular spectator sports are football, hockey and figure skating. Most of the important competitions are televised, and people enjoy watching sports programmes on TV. They needn't buy tickets and go to a stadium, especially in cold and rainy weather. But certainly watching sports events and going in for sports are two different things.

In my opinion, people can't do without sport. Sport plays an important role in our lives. I think sport helps us in different ways.

First of all, it helps us to stay in good shape, to keep fit and to be healthy. It makes people strong, fast and agile. What is more, sport builds character; it teaches us to win and to lose. It makes us more organized and better disciplined in our daily activities. Besides, it is a good way to meet people and to make new friends.

Sport is an essential part of our everyday life. To have a healthy mind, you must have a healthy body. But to be healthy, it is not necessary to become a professional sportsman. You may go in for sports just for pleasure, when you have free time. Some people jog every morning, some follow fitness classes shown on TV. Young people usually put on their roller-skates and skate in the streets and parks. A lot of young people spend their holidays hiking. It doesn't cost much and it is a really good way of getting away from crowds.

Physical education is an important subject at school. It helps pupils to keep fit and to relax after a hard working day. Each school has sports facilities. A lot of different competitions are usually held at school and a great number of pupils take part in it. That's why I think sport is so popular in our country.

Vocabulary

instead — вместо
legless — безногий
creature — создание, существо
to keep fit — поддерживать форму
cycling — велосипедный спорт
to argue — утверждать, спорить
broken — сломанный
injury — травма
to lose — проигрывать
spectator — зритель
competition — соревнование

especially — особенно
agile — ловкий
to win — выигрывать, побеждать
disciplined — дисциплинированный
essential — неотъемлемый
for pleasure — для удовольствия
to jog — бегать трусцой
to hike — ходить в походы
crowd — толпа
sports facilities — условия для занятий спортом

Questions

1. What kinds of sport are popular in Russia? 2. Are you against or for sports? 3. What are the advantages of going in for sports? 4. What are the disadvantages of going in for sports? 5. Is sport important to you? Why? 6. Do you go in for sports? Why? 7. What

is your favourite kind of sport? 8. Do you like to watch sports competitions? What competitions do you like to watch? 9. What outstanding sportsmen/women do you know? 10. Which do you prefer: to take part in sports or to watch it on TV? Why? 11. Why do some people prefer to watch sports competition and not to go in for sports?

Sports: For and Against

We can say that Russia is a nation of sport-lovers. Many sports are popular in our country such as hockey, skiing, figure skating, swimming, track and field, basketball, volleyball and others. But the most popular sport in our country is, of course, football. A lot of people are interested in this kind of sport and a lot of people play it.

Sports are traditionally divided into amateur and professional. For many people professional sport is a possibility to become famous. It's a chance to see the whole world and to acquire a lot of friends. Besides, it helps sportsmen earn a lot of money. What is more, professional athletes represent their country and provide a role model for a healthy lifestyle.

On the other hand, professional sport is very serious. Sportsmen train all day long and they have to follow a diet. Besides, they aren't allowed to do other sports because of the possibility of injury. Moreover, professional sport is often unfair. Many sportsmen buy their victory. That's why I don't like professional sport and I don't want to go in for sports professionally. For me sport is a hobby.

But it cannot be denied that sport increases your fitness and helps you to stay healthy. Other benefits include weight control and the increased sense of individuality. It goes without saying that sport gives you real pleasure. It also gives you a chance to acquire self-confidence. Moreover, it helps you to overcome difficulties.

As for me, I'm not much of a sportsman, but I'm fond of downhill skiing. This kind of sport allows me to stay in good shape. Moreover, it gives me real pleasure and helps me make new friends.

Some people think that downhill skiing is an extreme sport like rock climbing or white-water rafting. Of course, there is always a possibility of injury, but if you don't go to extremes, it's rather safe. Well, I can understand people who are addicted to risky sports. But personally I am not a risk taker and I never take things to the edge.

In my opinion, sport plays a very important role in our lives. And I can't imagine a person who doesn't go in for sports or isn't interested in it.

Vocabulary

skiing — лыжный спорт
figure skating — фигурное катание
track and field — легкая атлетика
amateur — любительский
possibility — возможность
to acquire — приобретать
to earn — зарабатывать
to represent — представлять
to provide — предоставлять, обеспечивать
role model — эталон, образец для подражания
to follow a diet — соблюдать диету
to allow — позволять, разрешать
injury — травма
moreover — более того
unfair — несправедливый
to deny — отрицать
to increase — увеличивать

benefit — преимущество
to include — включать
weight — вес
it goes without saying — само собой разумеется
self-confidence — уверенность в своих силах
to overcome difficulties — преодолевать трудности
downhill skiing — горнолыжный спорт
shape — форма
rock climbing — скалолазание
white-water rafting — рафтинг (*сплав по горной реке*)
rather — довольно
safe — безопасный
addicted — пристрастившийся
to take things to the edge — доходить до грани возможного
to imagine — представлять

Questions

1. Is sport popular in Russia? Why? 2. What is your attitude towards professional sport? 3. Is professional sport always fair? Why? 4. Should professional sport be prohibited? 5. Why is it good/bad to do sports? 6. What attracts people to extreme sports? 7. What do you think about risk taking? 8. Is sport important to you? Why? 9. Do you go in for sports? 10. What is your favourite kind of sports?

My Favourite Sport

I enjoy many sports, but best of all I love swimming. I started to learn it when I was about seven years old. I think that swimming is something like music or languages. That's why it's very good to start swimming as early as possible if you want to be good at it.

When I was younger, I used to go swimming three or four times a week. Now I have less free time, but a week never goes by without my visiting the pool at least once. Swimming helps me to stay in good shape, to keep fit and to be healthy. Besides, it helps me to work off my extra energy. My parents also go to the swimming pool, but they began going in for swimming when they were grown-ups.

Swimming is an inexpensive and simple sport. You do not need any complicated equipment. You just need a swimming costume or trunks and, perhaps, a cap. You can swim in the sea or a river or you can go to a special swimming pool.

The first thing you need to learn is how to float in the water. You can help yourself do this by wearing a ring or by putting water wings on your arms. As soon as you can float, you are ready to learn some basic swimming strokes like breast-stroke, back-stroke and crawl. A big step forward in swimming is when you learn to dive. This is a way of jumping into the water arms and head — rather than feet — first. It is hard at first, but diving smoothly into the water is a marvellous feeling.

I love swimming because it is a very good exercise for the whole body. I would recommend it because it is so convenient to do: you can do it when you like and for as long as you like.

However, there are some sports which I haven't had the chance to experience but would really like to. They're mostly non-competitive sports. I love the water very much and I'd really like to try some more water sports. For instance, being pulled by a boat while wearing water skis would, I'm sure, be a fantastic experience. And I'd also like to try surfing. I think there's no greater feeling on earth than riding on the top of a wave on a surfboard. I'd like to try it just to see.

My parents and I are great fans. We subscribe to a sports newspaper and enjoy watching sports on TV. We read the newspaper from cover to cover and lie on the sofa watching sports competitions on TV on Sundays, so my family is a little bit a couch potato.

Vocabulary

at least — по крайней мере
to stay in good shape — оставаться в хорошей форме
grown-up — взрослый
inexpensive — недорогой
complicated equipment — сложное оборудование
trunks — плавки
to float — держаться на поверхности
ring — спасательный круг
water wings — надувные плавники
stroke — стиль плавания
breast-stroke — брасс (*стиль плавания*)
back-stroke — плавание на спине
crawl — кроль (*стиль плавания*)

step forward — шаг вперед
to dive — нырять
marvellous — изумительный, удивительный
convenient — удобный
to experience — испытывать, пробовать
competitive — соревновательный
to try — пробовать
for instance — например
water skis — водные лыжи
wave — волна
couch potato — человек, проводящий много времени перед телевизором
to subscribe — подписываться (*на газету*)

Questions

1. When did you start to go in for swimming? 2. When is the best time to start swimming? 3. Do your parents go in for swimming? 4. What do you need for swimming? 5. What swimming strokes do you know? 6. What are the benefits of going in for swimming? 7. Have you ever tried some other water sports? 8. What kinds of sport would you like to try? 9. Do you watch sports competitions on TV? 10. Do you subscribe to any sports newspaper?

Healthy Way of Life

People nowadays are more health-conscious than they used to be. They understand that good health is above wealth.

To be healthy we should avoid different bad habits that can affect our health. In my opinion, smoking and drinking too much alcohol are the worst ones. It's common knowledge that smoking and drinking can shorten our lives dramatically. Smoking, for example, causes a number of heart and lung diseases such as pneumonia, cough and cancer. Besides, it makes your teeth yellow and skin

unhealthy. Fortunately, in recent years smoking has received a lot of bad publicity, and fewer people smoke nowadays. Some companies don't employ people who are smokers. Smoking has been banned in most public places, because everyone agrees it does harm to our health. As for me, I don't smoke, because I don't want to have unhealthy skin and teeth.

Smoking and drinking are joined by less dangerous habits such as skipping meals, eating unhealthy food or even overeating. Of course, they are not quite as deadly as smoking or drinking alcohol, but they affect our health.

If we eat too much, we'll become obese, and obesity leads to serious diseases. A lot of people like drinking coca cola and coffee and enjoy pizzas and hamburgers. But what is tasty is not always healthy. Fast food makes you fat, that is why Americans are the fattest people in the world.

In recent years eating habits have undergone a change. People are encouraged to eat less fat and more fibre. Fat is believed to be one of the major causes of obesity and heart disease. High fibre foods and low fat foods can now be found in all shops and supermarkets. Salads, beans and fruit have taken the place of steak and ice cream. The fashion for healthy food is growing all the time.

Many people feel they are too fat, even if their doctors disagree. And a lot of people try to improve their fitness. There are a lot of ways to lose weight and avoid gaining it. Perhaps, the most popular of them is following a diet. If you want to lose weight, you should cut out snacks and desserts and cut down on fat. People have also become more aware of calories, the energy value of food. Some people count the number of calories they eat every day, so that they can try to take in fewer calories and lose weight. This is called a calorie-controlled diet. Manufacturers are increasingly producing special foods with fewer calories for slimmers.

But excessive dieting may be dangerous as well. Some people refuse to eat meat as they consider it harmful. They say a vegetarian diet reduces the risk of cancer and vegetarians live longer than others. I can't agree with them, because meat is an excellent source of good nutrition. In my opinion, it's wrong to put down a food simply because excessive amounts can cause health problems. Consumed in moderate amounts, meat is perfectly good for our health.

To my mind, the only way to stay healthy and to keep fit is going in for sports. Among the benefits of regular exercise are a healthier heart, stronger bones, quicker reaction times and less susceptibility to various illnesses. Besides, you can eat and drink as much as you want because you are burning it all off.

To be healthy, it is also very important to spend a lot of time in the open air. It is useful to go for a walk before going to bed or to air the room.

I think it is very important to be fit and healthy, and it is necessary to take care of your health. Being fat, in fact, can cause real problems. It is harder for fat people to get a good job or even to make friends. If you want to do well, you must be thin. That's why I go in for sports on a regular basis. I have been doing aerobics for three years, and I feel great. I am not enthusiastic about strict dieting, but I try to eat only low-fat food, fruit and vegetables, which are rich in vitamins.

Personally I believe that regularity in life promotes our health. Sleeping eight or nine hours, getting up early, regular meals, a healthy diet and going in for sports are really a good way to live.

Vocabulary

health-conscious — заботящийся

о своем здоровье

health — здоровье

healthy — здоровый

wealth — богатство

to avoid — избегать

to affect — влиять

it's common knowledge — обще-
известно

to shorten — сокращать, укора-
чивать

dramatically — резко

to cause — вызывать, быть
причиной

heart disease — болезнь сердца

lung disease — болезнь легких

pneumonia — пневмония,
воспаление легких

cough — кашель

cancer — рак

teeth — зубы

skin — кожа

fortunately — к счастью

publicity — реклама

to employ — нанимать на работу

to ban — запрещать

to do harm — причинять вред

to skip meals — пропускать
прием пищи

overeating — переедание

obese — тучный, полный

obesity — тучность, полнота,
ожирение

to lead — вести, приводить

tasty — вкусный

fast food — еда быстрого
приготовления

fat — тучный, полный; жир

to undergo — подвергаться, претерпевать (*изменения*)
to encourage — поощрять
fibre — клетчатка
to believe — считать, полагать
cause — причина
steak — бифштекс
fashion — мода
to improve — улучшать
fitness — спортивная форма
to lose weight — терять вес, худеть
to gain weight — набирать вес
to cut out — исключать
to cut down — снижать потребление
aware — осведомленный
energy value — энергетическая ценность
to count — считать
manufacturer — производитель
increasingly — все более, все в большей степени
to produce — производить

slimmer — худеющий (человек), человек на голодной диете
excessive — чрезмерный
dangerous — опасный
to refuse — отказываться
to consider — считать
to reduce — уменьшать
nutrition — питание
to put down — сокращать (*потребление*)
amount — количество
to consume — потреблять, съедать
moderate — умеренный
benefit — выгода, польза
bone — кость
susceptibility — подверженность, восприимчивость
various — различный
to take care of — заботиться
thin — худой, стройный
strict — строгий
to promote — поддерживать, укреплять

Questions

1. What good and bad health habits can people have? 2. In what way do bad habits affect people? 3. Are there any changes in health habits? 4. What is a healthy way of life? 5. What should you do to keep fit? 6. How does sport help you to stay healthy? 7. What are the most popular ways to avoid gaining weight? 8. What is a calorie-controlled diet? 9. What are your health habits? 10. What is your personal attitude towards health? 11. Do you have any health problems? Why do you think you have/don't have them?

Dialogues

1.

— What are the most popular games in Britain today?
— Well, I suppose football and cricket.

— Are there any other outdoor games?

— Oh, there is tennis, golf, baseball and so on. Tennis is played all year round — on hard courts or grass courts in summer and on hard or covered courts in winter.

— What about horse racing?

— Oh, it's one of the most popular sports in Great Britain. Then there are, of course, walking races, running, swimming, boat races and boxing.

— I know that there are no winter sports in England. Is that true?

— Well, you see, the English winter isn't very severe as a rule, and we don't often have the chance of skiing, skating or tobogganing, but winter is the great time for hunting.

— Is there any golf links near London?

— Oh, yes, a great amount. There are dozens of good golf links within an hour or so of London. You ought to join a golf club if you're keen on the game.

— I think I shall if I get the chance. What about indoor games?

— Well, there is table tennis, chess, billiards and so on. By the way, do you play chess?

— Well, I do, but I'm not a professional, just an ordinary amateur.

2.

— What kind of sports facilities have you got at schools in Russia, Mike?

— Well, in my school there is a large gym. There are also courts for badminton, basketball, football and tennis.

— I think sports facilities are alike in our countries. In my school we also have courts for tennis, volleyball and indoor cricket. But in many schools in Britain you are provided with accommodation for other indoor sports activities like archery, fencing, judo or boxing.

— I find boxing rude. Fencing is much more romantic.

— Well, boxing is a national sport in England though it is criticized by some people. And in some countries there is women's boxing.

— Yes, a team of women's boxing has been recently formed in Russia. But I don't think it's a good sport for women. It contradicts women's nature.

— I feel the same. And what do you think about that new craze — jet ski?

— Jet ski? What is it?

— They can be seen now on many beaches of Europe. They are a kind of water motorbikes.

— Are they available for teenagers?

— Yes, you can begin jet ski at about fourteen years of age. In fact, teenagers have an advantage as they are smaller and lighter than adults and can go faster.

— Anyway, I would like to try it. I think it would be a fantastic experience!

3.

— Do you like playing sports?

— No, I don't. It takes a lot of time and energy. Going in for sports only means to work and to work hard.

— I wouldn't say that. It is not necessary to become a professional sportsman. You may go in for sports when you have free time. You can swim in summer and go skiing or skating in winter. Sport is very important for our health.

— Why are you so sure? As a result of sport people have broken legs and arms and other injuries. Some kinds of sport are really dangerous, for example, rock climbing or parachuting. Besides, sport makes me unhappy when I lose.

— On the contrary, sport can be fun as well. I particularly enjoy playing football with my classmates after classes. There is a sports ground outside our school and we usually go in for sports in the open air. And at our PE lessons we usually play volleyball and basketball.

— I can't stand taking part in school contests. To be a good sportsman doesn't suit everyone. If everybody takes part in competitions, who will have fun? As for me, I prefer to watch sports programmes on TV. I am a viewer rather than a participant.

— Really? Which sports do you like watching?

— I enjoy watching team sports such as football and hockey. The matches are always exciting. Sometimes I go to the stadium with my friends to support my favourite teams.

— I also like to watch sports programmes on TV. But watching sports events and going in for sports are two different

things. Sport helps us to stay in good shape, to keep fit and to be healthy. It makes us more organized and better disciplined in our daily activities. Besides, it is a good way to meet people and to make new friends.

— Do you go in for sports on a regular basis? What is your favourite sport?

— My favourite sport is swimming. I have already been swimming for 5 years and I go to the swimming pool twice a week. It helps me to keep fit and to stay healthy. I hardly ever catch a cold and I never suffer from anything.

4.

— Hello! How are you?

— Hi! I'm fine, thanks, and you?

— I'm fine too. Did you watch a basketball match yesterday? Who was a winner?

— Of course, the American team!

— Americans are really good at basketball! They are fond of sports, aren't they?

— Of course, they are. The most popular sports in America are football, basketball and baseball.

— Everybody knows that sport makes people more organized and better disciplined. Besides, it helps us stay in good shape and keep fit. I'm sure to be healthy we should go in for sports.

— But to be healthy we should first of all eat healthy food, for example, fruit and vegetables and dairy products.

— I completely agree with you, but today a majority of people eat fast food, which is fattening.

— You are right. More than that, a lot of people smoke and drink now.

— Well, I can't but agree that people should take care of their health. I mean they should sleep seven or eight hours, eat low-fat food, have breakfast, have regular meals and go in for sports. They mustn't smoke, drink and take drugs because bad habits shorten our lives.

— I completely agree with you.

— OK. Bye!

— Bye!

Writing

1.

Kate Hampton
115 Parklane Drive
Norwich

15 October 2005

Dear Kate,
Congratulations on winning the first prize in tennis competitions. We were really happy to hear the good news.
With best wishes from all of us.
Your friends,
Nick and Jane

2.

17 June 2005

Dear Pat,
Thanks for the letter. You should write more often! Anyway, how are things? I hope everything is OK at school.
It's great that you've started to take care of your health! As for keeping fit, I'd say that above all you need patience! Keeping fit is something you should do regularly and try and keep it up over a long time. If you don't, it won't have any effect.
First of all, start gently. Begin by walking — you can walk to school, use the stairs (not the lift) and then go for longer walks in the park. Then you should think about taking up a sport. They say the best sport for keeping fit and healthy is swimming. I agree. If you can't go to the beach, go to your local swimming pool.
Finally, watch your diet. You can eat more things, but not too much of anything. If I were you, I'd try and eat fruit and vegetables every day.
That's all for now. Hope you find my advice useful.
Write soon.
Best wishes,
Gloria

UNIT 19

**MASS MEDIA
AND INFORMATION TECHNOLOGIES**

British Television

Television viewing is Britain's most popular leisure pastime: 95 per cent of households have a colour television set. The British also call it "watching the box" or "the telly". The average viewing time per person is over 25 hours a week.

Britain is one of the world's foremost exporters of TV productions, which continue to win large numbers of international awards, especially for documentaries, nature programmes and drama serials.

There are four TV channels in Britain: BBC1, BBC2, ITV and Channel 4. BBC1 and BBC2, the two state channels, do not show adverts. ITV and Channel 4, the two independent channels, do show adverts. They get most of their money from advertising. Advertisements are shown every 15–30 minutes.

BBC1 and ITV tend to broadcast popular programmes. They specialize in general interest programmes, sports programmes, recent films, current affairs, game shows, children's programmes and soaps. Soaps are broadcast either three or four times a week and each episode lasts about half an hour. The most popular soaps are *Coronation Street*, which is set in a working-class area near Manchester, and *East Enders*, which is set in a working-class area of London. They depict ordinary lives in relatively ordinary circumstances. So the viewers can see themselves and other people they know in the characters and in the things that happen to these characters.

The two Australian soaps, *Neighbours* and *Home and Away*, are shown five days a week and children watch them when they come in from school. They are the favourite programmes of both 12- and 15-year-olds.

BBC2 and Channel 4 show programmes that usually attract much smaller audiences: TV plays, classical concerts, foreign films,

travel and educational programmes. BBC2 is used by the Open University to broadcast educational programmes. These programmes are shown early in the morning or late at night and they allow many thousands of students to study at home.

These are the channels, which all viewers in the country receive. British people can also connect to cable or satellite TV. These channels are fee-paying, and so only about a fifth of households receive satellite and/or cable TV.

In general, British people think that the programmes shown on British TV are of a very high standard. However, many people are worried about the amount of violence on TV, and the effect this may have on young people.

Vocabulary

leisure pastime — занятие

в свободное время, занятие
для отдыха

household — семья

average — средний

foremost — основной, главный

production — постановка

(фильма, пьесы)

award — награда

especially — особенно

BBC (British Broadcasting

Corporation) — Би-би-си

(Британская радиовещатель-
ная корпорация)

ITV (Independent Television) — ИТВ

(Независимое телевидение)

advert, advertisement — реклам-
ное объявление

advertising — реклама, реклами-
рование

independent — независимый

to broadcast — транслировать

(по телевидению или радио)

recent — недавний, последний,
новый

current affairs — текущие
события

soap — сериал, «мыльная
опера»

either ... or — или ... или

to be set in — происходить в

(о действии фильма, книги)

area — район

depict — изображать, описывать

ordinary — обычный

relatively — относительно

circumstances — обстоятельства

character — герой

to attract — привлекать

audience — публика, зрители,
аудитория

educational — образовательный,
учебный

to allow — позволять, давать
возможность

to receive — принимать

to connect to — подсоединяться к

cable TV — кабельное телевиде-
ние

satellite TV — спутниковое
телевидение

to worry — беспокоиться

amount — количество

violence — насилие

Questions

1. How many channels are there in Britain? What are they?
2. What is the average viewing time per person in Great Britain?
3. What kinds of programmes do the British channels offer?
4. What is the most popular channel in Britain? Why?
5. Do the British channels show adverts?
6. Do the British watch soaps? What are the most popular soaps in Britain?
7. Which channel is used by the Open University to show educational programmes?
8. Can British people connect to cable or satellite TV?
9. What do the British think about their TV?
10. What British programmes are shown on Russian television?

Newspapers and Magazines in Britain

More national and regional daily newspapers are sold for every person in Britain than in most other developed countries. National newspapers have a total circulation of over 15 million copies on weekdays and over 17 million on Sundays. There are about 130 daily and Sunday newspapers, over 2,000 weekly newspapers and some 7,000 periodical publications.

If you get on a bus or catch a train in Britain, especially during the morning and evening “rush hour”, when most people travel to and from work, you will see a lot of people with their heads in a newspaper. Many people buy a morning paper, an evening paper and a couple of Sunday papers.

Newspapers are packed with the latest news, information, fashion and facts. They cater for a variety of political views, interests and levels of education. Papers are generally divided into “quality papers”, or broadsheets, and “popular papers” that are half the size of a broadsheet. But the size is not the only thing that makes them different. “Quality papers” are serious with long, informative articles, while “popular papers”, known as “tabloids”, have a more sensational reporting style and contain more human-interest stories than news. Tabloids have lots of stories about famous people. The headlines and the photos are usually very big, and there is not much text there. The two most popular British daily newspapers, *The Sun* and *The Daily Mirror*, are both tabloids. Tabloids sell many more copies than broadsheets.

Broadsheets, such as *The Times*, are not as popular as tabloids. Broadsheets have a lot of information; some pages report international news. The photos and the headlines are smaller than in tabloids.

The differences between tabloids and broadsheets are breaking down. The publishers of broadsheets now realize that tabloids are easier to read and hold. *The Guardian*, a broadsheet, now has a tabloid section. Many of the broadsheets now have stories about famous people. Tabloids used to be cheaper than broadsheets, but *The Times* is now the cheapest national newspaper.

The press is free to comment on matters of public interest. There is no control or censorship of the press. Newspapers are financially independent of any political party.

There are thousands of weekly and monthly magazines in Britain. They can be divided into four main categories: specialist magazines, such as the computer magazine *PC Weekly*; general magazines, such as *Radio Times*; women's magazines, such as *Slimming*; and teenage magazines.

Young people below the age of 18 do not buy newspapers, but they do buy magazines. Many more girls than boys buy magazines. The main interests for them are pop music, clothes and make-up. The most famous magazines of 15-year-olds are *Just Seventeen*, *Smash Hits* and *Shout*. Boys prefer to read about sports and computers. But they wish there were more magazines for them.

Vocabulary

newspaper — газета

magazine — журнал

national — общенациональный

regional — местный, районный

daily — ежедневный

developed — развитый

total — общий

circulation — тираж

weekly — еженедельный

especially — особенно

rush hour — час пик

couple — пара

fashion — мода

to cater for — обслуживать,
удовлетворять

variety — множество

to divide — делить

quality paper — серьезная газета

broadsheet — газета полного
формата высокого качества

popular paper — популярная
газета

tabloid — малоформатная газета
бульварного толка

size — размер

article — статья

to contain — содержать
headline — заголовок
to realize — понимать
cheap — дешевый

matter — вопрос, дело
ensorship — цензура
independent — независимый
make-up — макияж, косметика

Questions

1. Do the British like to read newspapers? 2. What kinds of newspapers are there in Britain? 3. What is the difference between broadsheets and tabloids? 4. What do quality papers usually contain? 5. What are the main features of tabloids? 6. Which papers are more popular — broadsheets or tabloids? 7. What are the most popular newspapers in Great Britain? 8. Are newspapers in Great Britain independent? Do they support any political party? 9. What categories are British magazines subdivided into? 10. What magazines do teenagers read in Britain? 11. Which British newspaper or magazine would you like to read? 12. What Russian newspapers and magazines do you know?

Mass Media in the USA

Mass communication has revolutionized the modern world. In the United States it has given rise to what social observers sometimes call a media state, a society in which access to power is through the media. The term media, understood broadly, includes any channel of information through which information can pass. Since a democracy largely depends on public opinion, all those involved in communicating information inevitably have an important role to play. The print and broadcasting media not only convey information to the public, but also influence public opinion. Television, with access to virtually every American household, is a powerful influence.

On average, American viewers watch TV about six hours a day, usually tuned to one of the national commercial networks: ABC (the American Broadcasting Corporation), NBC (the National Broadcasting Company), CBS (Columbia Broadcasting System) or Fox Broadcasting Company. These stations attract about 98 per cent of TV audiences.

Theoretically, anyone in the United States can start a newspaper or a magazine, but to become a radio or television broadcaster one must be granted a portion of the limited radio-television spectrum by the government's licensing board, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). For the most part, the American broadcasting system has always been a commercial system. It is supported by money from businesses that pay to advertise goods or services to the audience. Advertising messages are usually presented as 15, 30 or 60-second commercial announcements before, during and after programs. During a sixty-minute TV program you can expect to see about twelve minutes of commercials.

Commercial broadcasting is a huge industry bringing in profits of about 1.8 billion dollars annually. The commercial networks broadcast a variety of shows: news, drama, soap operas, comedy, sports, music, movies, children's programs, game shows and talk shows. There are a lot of competitions for viewers, especially during prime time, from 7 to 11 pm.

PBS (Public Broadcasting Service), supported by government and private funding, is the only noncommercial network. It broadcasts more serious drama, performing arts, science, public-affairs documentaries and educational children's programs. *Sesame Street*, the most popular children's show on PBS, appears on TV stations all over the world. All five networks broadcast twenty-four hours a day.

Viewers whose tastes are not satisfied by the many offerings of network and local programs are now increasing their options by subscribing to cable television. About 35 million Americans pay a monthly fee for greater selection. There are up to 500 cable stations. Two well-known ones are HBO (Home Box Office), which shows movies, and CNN, which specializes in news.

Satellite TV was originally designed to offer a greater selection of programs to people in rural areas that could not easily be connected to the cable system. It now provides anybody who is ready to have a satellite dish installed in his or her backyard with the same programming as cable TV. Conventional television has had to struggle to retain its audience as people switch over to cable viewing, satellite TV or renting video cassettes.

Across the United States there are more than nine thousand radio stations. Almost all of them are commercial, except for

National Public Radio stations. Listeners can tune into all kinds of stations: pop or classical music, news, sport, or community radio. Talk radio shows are very popular. Listeners call in and ask the talk-show host or guests questions about anything from cooking or car repair to politics or health. Callers often get a chance to give their opinion on the air.

There's something for everyone to read with 1,700 daily and 6,300 weekly newspapers. Eight out of ten Americans read a tabloid or standard newspaper every day. Often newspapers are delivered early in the morning so people can read them before leaving home. Standard newspapers have long articles about local, national and international news, while tabloid newspapers include short news articles and a lot of photos, stories about famous people, advice columns and horoscopes. Most newspapers are regional rather than national, although some are distributed all over America. *The New York Times*, for example, is available in New York and in most big cities. The paper with the largest circulation is *The Wall Street Journal*, which specializes in business news.

Nowadays Americans consider television their most important source of news, and a majority ranks television as the most believable news source. Accordingly, newspapers have to cope with competition from radio and television.

Vocabulary

access — доступ
broadly — широко
to depend on — зависеть от
to involve — вовлекать
inevitably — неизбежно, неминуемо
to convey — передавать
to influence — влиять
virtually — практически
on average — в среднем
network — сеть
to attract — привлекать
to broadcast — транслировать, вещать по радио или телевидению
to support — поддерживать

to advertise — рекламировать
announcement — объявление, сообщение
commercial — коммерческий рекламный ролик по телевидению
profit — прибыль, доход
annually — ежегодно
to satisfy — удовлетворять
to subscribe — подписываться
rural — деревенский, сельский
to retain — сохранять, удерживать
satellite TV — спутниковое телевидение
renting — прокат

conventional — традиционный
daily — ежедневный
weekly — еженедельный
on the air — в эфире
tabloid — бульварная газета
circulation — тираж

rank — считать
performing arts — исполнитель-
ские виды искусства
believable — правдивый
accordingly — соответственно
to cope with — справляться с

Questions

1. What national commercial networks do you know? 2. What kind of shows broadcast commercial networks? 3. What noncommercial networks do you know? 4. What kind of programmes broadcast noncommercial networks? 5. How many cable stations are there in the USA? 6. What are the two well-known cable stations? 7. What can you say about satellite TV? 8. How many radio stations are there across the USA? 9. What kinds of programmes on radio are very popular? 10. What can you say about standard newspapers? About tabloid newspapers?

Russian Television

Russian television has over 10 channels which show all kinds of programmes: news and sports programmes, talk shows and quizzes, documentaries and feature films, soaps and police series, comedies and concerts. The main channels on Russian television are ORT (Channel 1), RTR (Channel 2), TVCentre (Channel 3) and NTV (Channel 4). They offer TV viewers a variety of programmes: news and current affairs programmes, documentaries and feature films, soap operas and police series, game and talk shows, sports and children's programmes.

The most popular entertainment channels are STS, TNT and RenTV. STS is a mixture of cartoons and children's programmes, serials and feature films. One of the most favourite children's programmes on STS is *Sesame Street*. TNT and RenTV also combine cartoons, soaps and feature films, but they show a lot of comedy shows and sports programmes too. There are two specialized channels: MuzTV, which specializes in music, and 7TV, which appeals to the interests of sport-lovers.

In contrast to British television, all channels in Russia show adverts. Advertising messages are usually included into films and serials, and people don't like them very much.

Thanks to satellites, TV viewers in Russia can increase their options and watch TV from different countries. Conventional television has to struggle to retain its audience, as people switch over to cable viewing, satellite TV or renting video cassettes.

Although Russian radio and television services are more serious than in the West, Russian television has changed along with the rest of the world, and many viewers, especially those of the older generation, complain that there is too much violence on TV. Before the 1990s most programmes were educational, but nowadays Russian TV has got many different soap operas and police series. But people want more than entertainment. They want up-to-date and accurate information, and TV is quick to accept the challenge. TV news programmes are very important these days.

Vocabulary

TV viewer — телезритель
variety — множество
current affairs — текущие события
feature film — художественный фильм
soap opera, soap — сериал, «мыльная опера»
entertainment — развлечение
mixture — смесь
cartoon — мультфильм
to combine — сочетать
to specialize — специализироваться
to appeal to — обращаться к
in contrast to — в противоположность
advert, advertising message — рекламное объявление

to include — включать
thanks to — благодаря
to increase — увеличивать
option — выбор, возможность
conventional — традиционный
to struggle — бороться
to retain — сохранять, поддерживать
audience — публика, зрители, аудитория
renting — прокат
generation — поколение
to complain — жаловаться
violence — насилие, жестокость
up-to-date — новый, недавний, последний
accurate — точный
to accept — принимать
challenge — вызов

Questions

1. How many channels are there in Russia? 2. What kinds of programmes do the Russian channels offer? 3. Do the Russian

channels show adverts? 4. Can Russian people connect to cable or satellite TV? 5. Do you have satellite or cable TV? Do you like to watch them? 6. What is the most popular programme in Russia? Is it a soap? 7. Does Russian television show British TV programmes? What are they? Are they dubbed or sub-titled? 8. Compare British and Russian television. 9. Compare your TV watching habits with the average person in Britain. 10. Which programmes on Russian television would you recommend to your foreign friends?

TV or not TV?

It goes without saying that television is an essential part of people's lives. It's a wonderful source of information and one of the best ways to spend free time and not to feel bored. Television viewing is the most popular leisure pastime. It's not surprising, because TV channels show a great variety of programmes: documentaries and current affairs programmes, feature films and comedies, soaps and police series, concerts and talk shows.

Television is a reflection of the modern world. It gives you an opportunity to travel all over the world, to see different people and learn about their customs and traditions. Television keeps you informed about the rest of the world. And of course, it helps to escape from everyday problems.

I especially enjoy watching cartoons. We must admit that some of them are really wonderful and amusing, for example "South Park". Not long ago my friends talked me into giving this show a try, and I have never regretted it. It's about four kids who always get into funny situations. Of course, there are some things that I don't like about this cartoon, but by and large it is very good.

However, not everything shown on TV is made in good taste. There are programmes which contain a lot of violence. According to researchers, there is a direct link between violence on TV and the horrifying new crimes among the young. Many young people imprisoned for committing violent crimes report having imitated crime techniques watched on TV.

A lot of people think that violence on TV should be forbidden. On the one hand, of course, there should be channels for younger children without any violence at all. Media executives should

develop a new code of conduct against violence on TV. Moreover, I think we should pay more attention to developing children-oriented programmes. But on the other hand, it's impossible to keep children away from all the horrors that happen in the world.

Some people say that television is a terrible waste of time. Of course, there are TV addicts who watch TV for hours without choosing programmes. They spend time in front of television which they could spend talking to their friends and family. If you watch TV too much, your brain slips into the passive state and you forget about your duties. On the contrary, if you watch TV for an hour a day, to find out what is happening in the world or to relax, then television is really useful.

In short, television has both good and bad points. And people should learn how to make the best use of it.

Vocabulary

essential — неотъемлемый

source — источник

to feel bored — чувствовать скуку, скучать

leisure pastime — занятие в свободное время, занятие для отдыха

to surprise — удивлять

variety — множество

current affairs — текущие события

feature film — художественный фильм

soap — сериал, «мыльная опера»

reflection — отражение

opportunity — возможность

custom — обычай

the rest of the world — остальной мир

to escape — уходить, убегать

to admit — признавать

to talk into — уговаривать

to regret — сожалеть

by and large — в целом

taste — вкус

to contain — содержать

violence — насилие

according to — согласно

researcher — исследователь

to imprison — заключать в тюрьму

to commit a crime — совершать преступление

to forbid — запрещать

waste of time — бесполезная трата времени

TV addict — человек, которого нельзя оторвать от телевизора

on the contrary — наоборот

useful — полезный

Questions

1. Can Russian people be called the nation of TV viewers? Why?
2. Do you like watching TV? 3. How often do you watch TV?

4. What is your favourite channel? 5. What TV programmes do you like best? Why? 6. What are good features of television? 7. Do you agree that television has the power to educate? Why? 8. What do you think of violence on TV? 9. Can we forbid violence on TV? 10. Do you think watching TV is one of the best ways of spending free time? 11. What are the disadvantages of this way of spending free time? 12. Can people do without television?

Television: Pros and Cons

It goes without saying that television plays a very important part in people's lives. Television viewing is by far the most popular leisure pastime. For example, in Britain over 99 per cent of British homes have a TV set, and the average person watches "the box" 26 hours a week. It's not surprising, because TV channels show a great variety of programmes: documentaries and current affairs programmes, feature films and comedies, soaps and police series, concerts and talk shows.

A lot of people usually relax watching soaps — TV serials that dramatize their characters' daily life. Their story lines are entertaining but often unbelievable. I don't think that they show life realistically. But to many people the characters in the weekly TV serial shows have become more important than real people.

As for me, I prefer watching different quizzes. That's why my favourite TV programme is "Who wants to be a millionaire?" It is shown twice a week and lasts about an hour. The programme is now hosted by Maxim Galkin. It is a game show where the player is asked different questions. If the answers are correct, the participant gets a lot of money. But if he is wrong, he loses everything. I particularly enjoy watching this programme because the questions are always very interesting and they help me to expand my outlook. Besides, it's the perfect way to be in the know of everything. I find this programme clever and informative and try not to miss it.

Of course, not everything shown on TV is made in good taste. There are badly-written programmes that contain unnecessary bad language and violence. The strange thing is that neither politicians nor producers like to admit that watching violence on TV leads to greater violence in the streets.

Many people admit that the quality of television could be better. They would prefer to see fewer soap operas and crime series, and more history, drama and science. One reason for the poor quality of programmes is advertising. Not all people like watching commercials. They find ads silly and boring. As for me, I don't take advertising seriously. On the one hand, advertisements help people choose the best products and get the best value for their money. But on the other hand, they show life unrealistically and give untrue information. Besides, in adverts all people seem to be happy consumers, all kids seem to be healthy and well off. But this is not true at all. What is more, I find it very annoying when a film stops at the most interesting moment. Nevertheless, I am not against commercials on TV, because television companies get most of their money from advertising.

Another thing I would like to complain about is the amount of smoking in the films that are shown on TV. Smoking is often shown as a very "cool" thing to do, making young people much more likely to copy what they see and take up smoking themselves.

Some people say that television is a terrible waste of time. Of course, there are TV addicts who can't drag themselves away from the box. They watch TV for hours without choosing programmes and spend time in front of television which they could spend talking to their friends and family. In this case, television makes them really waste time. On the contrary, if we watch TV for an hour a day, to find out what is happening in the world or to relax, then television is really useful.

In short, television does have its good points. Many of the programmes are educational and can help with schoolwork. A good soap opera or a comedy is a source of relaxation for many people. Television also provides jobs for thousands of people. So I think it is not the TV itself which is to blame for the bad effect it has, but the fact that people do not know how to make the best use of it.

Vocabulary

it goes without saying — само собой разумеется
leisure pastime — занятие в свободное время, занятие для отдыха

average — средний
to surprise — удивлять
variety — множество
current affairs — текущие события

feature film — художественный фильм
soap, soap opera — сериал, «мыльная опера»
to escape — уходить, убежать
story line — сюжет
entertaining — развлекательный, интересный
unbelievable — невероятный, неправдоподобный
quiz — телевикторина
twice — два раза
to last — длиться
to host — выступать в роли ведущего
correct — правильный
participant — участник
particularly — особенно
to expand outlook — расширять кругозор
to miss — пропускать
taste — вкус
to contain — содержать
violence — насилие
neither ... nor — ни ... ни
to admit — признавать
to lead — вести
quality — качество
to prefer — предпочитать
crime — преступление
advertising — рекламирование, реклама
commercials — реклама по телевидению
ads, adverts, advertisements — рекламные объявления

silly — глупый
boring — скучный
on the one hand ... on the other hand — с одной стороны ... с другой стороны
to get the best value for money — наилучшим образом потратить деньги
consumer — покупатель
well off — обеспеченный, богатый
what is more — более того
annoying — раздражающий, надоедливый
nevertheless — тем не менее, всё же
to be against — быть против
to complain — жаловаться
amount — количество
cool — модный, современный
much more likely — гораздо более вероятно, скорее всего
waste of time — бесполезная трата времени
TV addict — человек, которого нельзя оторвать от телевизора
to drag — оттаскивать, отрывать
on the contrary — наоборот
useful — полезный
to broadcast — транслировать, передавать по телевидению
educational — образовательный, учебный
to provide — обеспечивать
job — работа
to blame — винить, обвинять

Questions

1. Why is watching TV one of the most popular leisure activities?
2. Do you like watching TV? 3. How often do you watch TV?
4. What is your favourite channel (programme)? 5. What are the

channels (programmes) your family likes to watch? 6. What are good and bad features of television? 7. Do you agree that television has the power to educate? Why? 8. What do you think of advertising on TV? 9. Do you think watching TV is one of the best ways of spending free time? 10. What TV programmes do you like best? Why? 11. What is your attitude towards soap operas?

Learning About the World

There are a lot of different ways of getting new information. In the past the only way to learn about the world was travelling. The first travellers were explorers who wanted to discover new lands. Nowadays millions of people travel around the world either for pleasure or on business. Travelling has always been a part of people's education. It teaches people about art and culture of different countries. It teaches them to be understanding. Besides, you can improve your knowledge of foreign languages. In my opinion, travelling is the most pleasant way of learning about the world. It's always interesting to discover different ways of life, to visit different museums, to try different food and to listen to different music. In brief, when we travel, we can learn a lot of things that we can never see and learn at home.

But to travel around the world you need a lot of money. That is why the main source of information for millions of people is mass media. Mass media includes newspapers and magazines, advertising and radio and, of course, television.

Television is a reflection of the modern world. It gives you an opportunity to travel all over the world, to see different people and to learn about their customs and traditions. Television keeps you informed about the rest of the world. When you need immediate information about the latest world events, you switch the TV on. There is always a great variety of programmes on TV: current affairs programmes and documentaries, plays and feature films, talk shows and TV games. A lot of people like TV news because they can see everything with their own eyes. Besides, TV has the power to educate and broaden our minds.

Some people think that the only way to be in the know of everything is to read newspapers and magazines. If you get on a bus

or catch a train during the morning and evening “rush hours”, when most people travel to and from work, you will see a lot of people with their heads in a newspaper or a magazine.

Newspapers are packed with the latest news, information, fashion and facts. They cater for a variety of political views, interests and levels of education. Papers are generally divided into “quality papers”, or broadsheets, and “popular papers” that are half the size of a broadsheet. But the size is not the only thing that makes them different. “Quality papers” are serious, with long, informative articles, while “popular papers”, known as “tabloids”, have a more sensational reporting style and contain more human-interest stories than news. In Russia we also have these two types of newspapers. For example, *Izvestiya* or *Kommersant* are broadsheets. They contain political, business and cultural information. Such tabloids as *Megapolis-Express* and *Express Gazeta* contain the latest gossip, sensations and crossword puzzles. People choose a paper according to their tastes and preferences. Though newspapers don’t react to events as quickly as TV, they usually provide us with extra details, commentaries and background information.

There are also a lot of magazines and other periodicals. Whatever your interest, there is likely to be a magazine about it — from sport, cookery and farming to religion, computers, cinema and more. Young people below the age of 18 do not buy newspapers, but they do buy magazines. Girls enjoy magazines about pop music, clothes, fashion and make-up, whereas boys prefer to read about sports, cars and computers. As far as I am interested in fashion, I enjoy reading *Yes*. It is a monthly magazine for girls containing the latest information about our favourite pop, film and soap stars, brilliant fashion and beauty, sports and romance. It approaches interesting subjects with intelligence and good humour. Besides, there is a lot of useful advice on various areas of life.

Still, many people prefer the radio. It’s good to listen to the radio in a car, or in the open air, or when you do something about the house. Listeners can tune into all kinds of stations: pop or classical music, news, sport or foreign radio stations. People can often call in and ask questions about everything from cooking or car repair to politics or health. Callers often get a chance to give their opinions on the air. Besides, radio has fresher news than newspapers. They are informed every half-hour.

The Internet has recently become another important source of information. It is a computer system that allows millions of people around the world to receive and exchange information about almost everything. The main use of the Internet is to find information — for your schoolwork or job, or just to find out more about your hobbies, sports or current events. All the latest information is available to you in your home, at any hour of the day and night. It's much faster and easier to surf the net in search of information from all over the world than to travel to libraries in dozens of countries.

However, the real world of the Internet may not be as perfect as it seems. With so much information available, finding what you want can take you hours. Multimedia web pages with photographs are attractive, but they make downloading slow and boring. Besides, there is too much advertising instead of real information.

With so many modern forms of getting information such as radio, TV and the Internet, people read fewer books, newspapers and magazines. Nowadays most people consider television their most important source of information, and a majority ranks television as the most believable news source. In my opinion, we can't say exactly which source of information is the best. It depends on what kind of information you need. However, I don't think we should forget the educational value of reading a good book.

Vocabulary

explorer — исследователь
to discover — открывать, обнаруживать
either ... or — или ... или
pleasure — удовольствие
to improve — улучшать
knowledge — знания
way of life — образ жизни
to try — пробовать
in brief — короче говоря
source — источник
mass media — средства массовой информации
to include — включать
reflection — отражение
opportunity — возможность

custom — обычай
the rest of the world — остальной мир
immediate — немедленный, срочный
event — событие
to switch on — включать
variety — множество
current affairs — текущие события
to educate — обучать
to broaden one's mind — расширять кругозор
the only way — единственный способ
rush hour — час пик

fashion — мода
to cater for — обслуживать, удовлетворять
level — уровень
to divide — делить
quality paper — серьезная газета
broadsheet — полноформатная газета высокого качества
popular paper — популярная газета
tabloid — малоформатная газета бульварного толка
half — половина
size — размер
article — статья
to contain — содержать
gossip — светская хроника
according to — в соответствии с
taste — вкус
preference — предпочтение
to provide — снабжать, обеспечивать
background information — «закулисная» информация
likely — вероятно
cookery — кулинария
make-up — косметика, макияж

to approach a subject — рассматривать вопрос, тему
intelligence — ум, интеллект
advice — совет
various — различный
to tune into — настраиваться на
health — здоровье
opinion — мнение
on the air — в эфире
fresh — свежий
recently — недавно
to allow — позволять
to receive — получать
to exchange — обмениваться
available — доступный
to surf the net — «бродить» по Интернету
in search of — в поисках
attractive — привлекательный
downloading — пересылка, скачивание информации
to consider — считать
majority — большинство
to rank — считать, относить к какой-л. категории
believable — правдоподобный
to depend on — зависеть от
value — значение

Questions

1. How do you get information about the world? 2. Can travelling help you to get information about the world? 3. When and where do you like to travel? 4. Why is visiting museums interesting and useful? 5. How often do you visit museums? 6. What can museums and places of interest tell you about the world? 7. Do you think TV programmes can help you to learn at school? In what way? 8. What sort of information do you get from newspapers and magazines? 9. What are the main types of newspapers in Great Britain? 10. What newspapers and magazines do you read? 11. Do you like listening to the radio? Why? 12. What can help you to learn better at school? 13. What is the best way of learning about the world?

Computers

There is no doubt that computers have become an important part of our everyday life. We can do almost everything with the help of a computer. It's much easier to edit and print documents using a PC. Besides, the World Wide Web allows us to access the latest information very quickly. If you want to travel abroad, you can find in the Internet the information about the country and its hotels. You can even buy things sitting at home and using your computer.

Interaction with the world is a great advantage of a computer. You can chat on-line and make new friends with people from all over the world. Besides, it's a chance to practise your English. And if you want to send a letter, clicking the mouse will be much more convenient than buying a stamp and an envelope and finding time to make a trip to the post office.

There are very few companies today that don't use computers. We must know how to work on computers, that's why computers have become a main part of school education. We have computer classes at many schools where we study computer science. I believe that within the next few years schools will begin to use laptop computers instead of books.

More than that, computers help us to do our homework. When I have to make a report for my Biology class or to write a composition, the first place I look for is the Internet. Besides, there are a lot of educational programmes that can be really useful in our work.

However, many teachers think that students who rely on computers to do all their work are being cheated out of mind-expanding experience. I can't agree with them because our home tasks are more complex today, that's why the way we work out problems and find solutions must become easier.

Of course, there are computer addicts that spend all day long in front of computers playing games, watching films or even reading books on-line. I don't believe that computers will replace printed books in the future, because printed books have certain advantages over electronic media. First of all, they are cheaper and easier to use. Secondly, printed books don't need electricity, and you can take a book with you wherever you like, even to bed. What's more, a printed book is better for human eyes than a computer screen. So

I think that printed books will coexist with computers and will always be a part of human culture.

Yet we must admit that a lot of young people find virtual reality more attractive than their everyday life. Computer addiction makes them neglect school work and their everyday responsibilities. I can't say that I'm a computer addict though I like to play computer games and to watch films on computer. I understand the consequences of computer addiction, that's why I try to control my computer use.

In conclusion, I'd like to say that computers have introduced wonderful possibilities for people, but of course, we shouldn't totally rely on them.

Vocabulary

doubt — сомнение

to edit — редактировать

to access — получать доступ

interaction — взаимодействие

to click the mouse — щелкать мышкой

convenient — удобный

stamp — марка

envelope — конверт

laptop computer — портативный компьютер, ноутбук

to rely on — полагаться на

to be cheated out — лишаться при помощи обмана

mind-expanding experience — знания, расширяющие кругозор

to replace — заменять

to coexist — сосуществовать

to admit — признавать

virtual — виртуальный

addiction — пристрастие

to neglect — отвергать, забывать о чем-л.

responsibility — обязанность

consequence — последствие

in conclusion — в заключение

totally — полностью

Questions

1. What do you think about the future of computers? 2. How can we use computers in our life? 3. Will computers be able to replace printed books in the future? Why do you think so? 4. What do you think about computerized education? 5. In what school subjects can computers be especially important? 6. Do computers save our time? Why? 7. Are computers really dangerous? 8. How often do you play computer games? 9. What is your attitude towards computer addiction? 10. How can we help computer addicts?

The Internet: Pros and Cons

Just ten years ago very few people heard about the Internet. Now it is nearly as common and useful as the telephone. As more and more people use the Internet, as it becomes cheaper and faster and easier to use, there will be new things on the Internet that we cannot imagine today.

On the one hand, the development of the Internet will bring new opportunities to many people. Now, with the Internet, the place where you live may become less important than who you are and what you can do. In the future we'll be able to find a job in any part of the world. What is more, the Internet will allow a lot of talented people to show the world their achievements.

Today most operating systems are the work of hundreds of programmers and they cost thousands of dollars. In 1991 Linus Torvalds wrote an operating system alone, and he gave it away. Now, with the help of many programmers who work together on the Internet, his Linux system has grown into a serious rival to the products of the industry leader, Microsoft.

It costs almost nothing to deliver software over the Internet. If programmers are willing to give their work away, and if programs are as good as their commercial rivals, the days of paying for software could soon be over.

What is more, the Internet is a great opportunity for people to report on the world. Using just a cheap PC, Matt Drudge nearly ended the career of US President Bill Clinton. He wrote the story about a sexual relationship between Bill Clinton and Monica Lewinsky and put it on the Internet. Soon a million people a day were looking at his Web site. With the Internet the future belongs not to traditional journalists, but to ordinary people with a story to tell.

But on the other hand, the possibilities of the Internet may seem frightening. For example, Vladimir Levin worked for a computer firm in St. Petersburg. From there, using the Internet, he was able to break into Citibank's computers in the USA. He moved more than \$10 million to other banks all over the world. Most of the world's money is stored in computers. Clever criminals are likely to use computers and the Internet, not guns, to steal it.

As the Internet becomes increasingly important to governments, it also becomes a stage for people who oppose them. The information wars of the future may be fought on Web sites.

Some people argue that the Internet is dangerous because it is addictive. A lot of people, and especially teenagers, spend hours chatting or playing games on-line. What is more, teenagers and even children look at sex pictures on the Internet. It is true that like photography, cinema and video before it, the Internet is growing partly because it is a way for people to find sexual material that they cannot easily obtain in any other way. Anyway, there are many ways for parents to prevent their children from seeing anything on the Internet that the parents do not like.

To sum up, it's impossible to say now what the Internet will be like in the future or how it will change our lives. But we must admit that the World Wide Web offers people great opportunities, and we must try to make the best use of it.

Vocabulary

common — распространенный

to allow — позволять

achievement — достижение

rival — соперник, конкурент

to deliver — распространять

software — программное
обеспечение

cheap — дешевый

PC (personal computer) —

персональный компьютер

relationship — отношения

Web site — страница в Интернете

to belong — принадлежать

ordinary — простой, обыкновенный

possibility — возможность

to seem — казаться

frightening — пугающий

to store — хранить

criminal — преступник

gun — оружие, ружье, пистолет

to steal — красть

increasingly — все более

government — правительство

addictive — вызывающий
привыкание, пристрастие

partly — частично

to obtain — получать

to prevent from — не давать,
предотвращать

Questions

1. When did the Internet appear in Russia? 2. Do many people use the Internet nowadays? What for? 3. What does the Internet allow us to do? 4. Does the Internet save our time? 5. What are the disadvantages of the Internet? 6. How do you think the Internet

will change our future? 7. Do you use the Internet? How? 8. What is your personal attitude towards the Internet?

Dialogues

1.

— Mike, how many channels are there on the British TV?

— Well, we have four main channels: BBC1, BBC2, ITV and Channel 4. And what about Russian television?

— Oh, we've got over ten channels on our TV, so everyone can choose whatever he likes to watch. As for me, my favourite channel is STS. It shows a lot of entertainment programmes and helps me to relax after a hard working day. And what about you?

— My favourite channels are BBC1 and ITV, because they offer a lot of sports programmes. I'd like to get satellite TV, because it has a channel devoted to sports and also the music channel, MTV. But my parents say the subscription is too expensive.

— We've got satellite TV in Russia too, and it is also very expensive. But we have special channels, devoted to sports and music, which are free of charge.

— How lucky you are!

2.

— What TV programmes do you like to watch most of all, Kate?

— There are quite a lot of brilliant programmes on Russian TV: talk and game shows, comedies and cartoons, police series and soap operas. I can't say exactly which programme I like best of all. Well, perhaps it's "Anshlag".

— "Anshlag"? What is it about?

— Oh, it's a very funny programme which consists of humorous stories and songs presented by Russian humorists. This programme is now hosted by Regina Dubovitskaya.

— I like humour programmes too. Does Russian TV show British humour programmes?

— Of course, it does. We always watch with pleasure such British programmes as "Mister Bin" and "Benny Hill's show". And what is your favourite programme, Gloria?

— I am fond of soap operas. British TV broadcasts a lot of different soaps, but my favourite one is "Neighbours".

— Why do you like it?

— Well, it is about the life of Australian teenagers. I like to watch it after school. It is very exciting and helps me to relax. Besides, I like to discuss with my friends what will happen to characters.

— We have a lot of soaps on Russian TV too. My Mum really enjoys watching soaps. As for me, I prefer detective series. In my opinion, they are more fascinating.

— Tastes differ.

3.

— Do you like to read newspapers?

— No, not really. They usually have long boring articles. The only thing to read in the newspapers is TV programme.

— I completely agree with you. Newspapers are for adults. My father says that newspapers help him to be in the know of everything. But I prefer to read magazines. They are more interesting.

— You are quite right! Whatever your interest, you can find a magazine about it. As for me, I am keen on computers and computer games. That's why I like to read such magazines as *Chip* and *Game.exe*. They are packed with the latest information about computers and computer games.

— I am with you there, but I wish there were more magazines for boys. If you don't like football magazines or computer games magazines, there is nothing for you to read.

— That's because boys are usually interested in sports and computers. But I am sure new magazines will appear soon.

4.

— Television is much spoken about these days. Are you for or against watching TV?

— I can't say that I am a telly addict, but I watch TV two or three hours a day. In my opinion, there are a lot of brilliant programmes on TV.

— I don't watch TV as much as you do. My parents say that watching TV hurts eyes and is harmful to our health. Besides, I don't usually have much free time on weekdays. But on Sundays I like to watch TV.

— What programmes do you especially like watching?

— Most of all I enjoy detective series like “X-files” or “Kamenskaya”. It’s exciting to follow the story line and to conduct investigations together with the characters. I particularly enjoy watching films about mysterious and supernatural events. And what about you?

— It would be rather difficult for me to choose my favourite programme because there are lots of good things on TV. You just have to look for them. Well, I like old films, cartoons, comedies and thrillers, pop concerts and humour programmes. I even enjoy soaps!

— Soaps? They are long and boring! I can never understand people who rush home to watch their favourite soap. I never watch soaps.

— Well, I agree that soaps show life unrealistically, but they are not harmful really. The acting is pretty good there. They help me to escape from boring everyday life. I just use them to relax.

— But there are a lot of other interesting programmes on TV that broaden our minds and expand our outlook: documentaries and wildlife programmes, talk shows and quizzes. They are clever and informative, aren’t they?

— Of course, they are. I can’t but agree that many of the programmes are made in good taste and with great professional skill. The only thing that really irritates me is the amount of advertising on TV. When I sit down to watch the show and I am really enjoying the story, suddenly the film stops. I find it really annoying. What is more, advertisements are misleading because they don’t talk about the products’ defects.

— As for me, I don’t take advertising seriously. Some advertisements are really funny. Besides, we shouldn’t forget that commercial channels get most of their money from advertising. I think everything has its pros and cons.

— The same can be said about TV. Of course, TV has some disadvantages, but it is the main source of information and the best form of entertainment for millions of people.

5.

— What do you think is the best way of getting information about the world?

— It is a very difficult question. Perhaps, the best way to learn about the world is watching TV. It is a wonderful source of

information. It allows everybody to follow the events in faraway countries without visiting them.

— I can't but agree with you. There are hundreds of various programmes that keep you informed about the rest of the world. What is your favourite programme?

— Most of all I enjoy watching "In the World of Animals". It is a very interesting educational programme. But for the television, I would not be able to watch extraordinary animals and to learn about their life and habits.

— I also enjoy watching TV, but I am fond of travelling too. While travelling we can meet different people and learn about their customs and traditions. We can see and learn a lot of things that we can never see and learn staying at home and watching TV.

— You are absolutely right! The best way to study geography is to travel. I enjoy visiting other countries and sightseeing. By the way, I always take a camera with me and take pictures of everything that interests me. Later I show them to my friends and relatives. But most of all I like visiting museums and galleries. They can tell us a lot about people's past and present.

— But we shouldn't forget about reading! Newspapers and magazines help us to be in the know of the latest news, fashion, design and sports. Besides, they usually provide us with extra details and commentaries.

— Actually, I don't like reading very much. It takes so much time. Books themselves take up a lot of space at home. And newspapers ... They make my hands dirty and the print is usually so small. I think we don't need to read books in order to learn. We live in a multi-media society. Let's take advantage of it and learn everything from TV, radio and computers.

— But how can we get information from computers?

— Haven't you heard about the Internet? It has become another important source of information. It's much easier to surf the Internet than to go to the library and find the necessary book or a magazine. You can also use the Internet to talk with people from different countries and to make new friends.

— Perhaps, you are right. Computers have changed our life for the better. So why shouldn't we make them work to our advantage?

6.

— Hi! I've bought a new computer! It's the latest model, and it's working very fast.

— I hope you haven't bought this model to play the latest computer games, have you?

— Oh, no, I use my computer to find the latest information in the Internet. I think it's the best way to be in the know of everything.

— I agree with you. Everything becomes more complex today, so the ways we find solutions to our problems should become easier.

— Besides, I like to read books on-line. In my opinion, computers will soon replace traditional books because they can provide interesting pictures and additional information about the author. What is more, I don't have to go to the library in order to find the necessary book.

— Well, it's true that new technologies are capable of introducing changes in our daily lives, but I can say that books on-line can never compete with printed books.

— Why are you so sure?

— Because printed books are cheaper and easier to use. What is more, they don't need electricity. And one of the good things about a printed book is that you can take it to bed.

— Well, I can also take to bed my laptop computer. But of course, tastes differ and a lot of people will prefer personal relationship with printed books, so I think that books and computers will coexist.

— I completely agree with you. I am not against computers, but I think that they can be dangerous.

— Dangerous? What do you mean?

— I mean they can be addictive. New computer games create virtual reality which some people find more attractive than everyday reality.

— I see. These people don't realize that they have become hooked on playing computer games. In fact they've become computer addicts.

— Yes, they start spending large sums of money on computer magazines and software and neglect work, school or family obligations.

— Well, I am not a computer addict. I do my homework regularly.

— Don't you know that most sufferers compound the problem by denying it?

— I hope you don't want to ban computers.

— Oh, no, but I think it would be better to encourage parents to limit the amount of time their children spend in front of the computer. Besides, pupils must be taught not to totally rely on computers. They still need to jog their brains.

— I completely agree with you.

Writing

1.

48 Lenskaya Street
Apartment 15
Moscow 129327
Russia

24 April 2005

Dear Paul,

How are you? I'm fine though I'm very busy these days. I'm getting ready for my final exams at school. Thank you for your letter. It was interesting to learn more about American television.

In your letter you asked me about my favourite TV programme. The series "The Code of Honour" is one of the few that I attempt to regularly tune into each week. A friend of mine talked me into giving this show a try and I have never regretted it.

It's about a team of young men who fought together in Chechnya. When they return to Russia, they become private detectives and continue their fight against dishonest and cruel people. I admire them because they are brave, strong and honest.

I'm not a die-hard fan analysing every sentence, glance or breath of every character in every episode, but I certainly enjoy the show. A person who says this show has poor acting or plot development is most likely to be disappointed by any TV series.

Of course, it's impossible to dot every "i" and cross every "t", but by and large the show remains at the top of its genre. The viewer's interest is caught from the very beginning of each episode and there is suspense till the very end.

So if you want to see a good Russian action series, watch "The Code of Honour". The next season will soon begin.

I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Bye,

Alexander Svetlov

2.

120 East 89th Street
Apartment 42
New York, NY
USA

1 October 2004

Dear Ms Smith,

I'm writing for help. I am only 14, but I think I'm seriously ill, as I have become a computer addict. Actually, I have been a computer addict since I was 11.

Now I feel that I spend too much time in front of my computer. I often neglect my everyday duties. I don't do my homework regularly, and I don't care about my marks at school any more. As a result, my grades have become worse.

Besides, I sometimes skip meals, and I don't sleep well at night, so I nearly fall asleep at school.

Moreover, I often have headaches and my back also hurts badly.

Mum says that I use my computer much more than it is necessary. I know that it's not normal, but I can't control its use, though I've tried to do it. My parents are threatening that they'll take my computer away. It drives me absolutely mad!

What should I do? I need your advice and help.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Tom Brian

UNIT 20

OUR ENVIRONMENT

Animals

Ever since true humans appeared on Earth, they have lived in close association with animals. They needed animals for tasks that required strength and speed. People depended on animals for food and clothing, but they also found a source of pleasure and spiritual strength in the animal life.

Humans domesticated some animals for food, clothing, power and companionship. Through protection and selective breeding people changed early domesticated forms into highly productive dairy and beef cattle, sheep, pigs and poultry. But despite the domestication of many species, we still depend on wild animals for food and clothing. Besides, a lot of animals are used for medical research. In addition, wild animals provide recreation in the form of hunting, bird watching, and visits to zoos and wildlife reserves.

Unfortunately, unmanaged commercial exploitation has driven some species of wild animals to the edge of extinction. For example, 143 elephants are slaughtered in Africa every day to get ivory. At this rate, they'll be wiped out in 25 years. What can we do to help animals survive? First of all, environmental organizations must analyse the consequences of humans' actions. Besides, people should create nature reserves for wild animals and birds. And of course, we must take care of those animals that are around us. There are a lot of abandoned animals in cities and towns, because their owners got rid of them. We must build and run animal shelters where neglected animals can find safety, food and veterinary care.

Nowadays a lot of people keep pets at home. A pet is a domesticated animal that is kept for pleasure rather than utility. Domesticated animals such as dogs, cats, hamsters and guinea pigs make good pets because they have been bred for thousands of years to coexist with humans.

Some people keep exotic pets like snakes, lizards or wild cats. Of course, exotic pets are fascinating and beautiful to watch. However, very often people keep exotic pets only in order to look extraordinary. They regard them as a status symbol. But captivity is not natural for wild animals. It is a constant stress to them, so they may become very aggressive as they get older. Besides, wild animals need to be examined by a vet with special knowledge and training in wildlife medicine. That's why it's not desirable to keep exotic animals as pets.

To sum up, we can say that for centuries animals have been our friends and companions, and we must do our best to ensure that this coexistence will continue in the future.

Vocabulary

association — связь
task — задача, задание
to require — требовать
strength — сила
to depend on — зависеть от
source — источник
to domesticate — приручать, одомашнивать
protection — защита
breeding — разведение, размножение
dairy and beef cattle — мясомолочный скот
poultry — домашняя птица
despite — несмотря на
species — вид(ы)
wild — дикий
research — исследование (-я)
recreation — развлечение
hunting — охота
unfortunately — к сожалению
exploitation — эксплуатация
edge — грань
extinction — вымирание
to slaughter — уничтожать, убивать

ivory — слоновая кость
at this rate — при таком темпе
to wipe out — уничтожать
consequence — последствие
to create — создавать
abandoned — покинутый
to get rid of — избавляться от
shelter — приют
neglected — отвергнутый
pleasure — удовольствие
utility — польза, использование
hamster — хомяк
guinea pig — морская свинка
to breed — разводить, выращивать
to coexist — сосуществовать
snake — змея
lizard — ящерица
fascinating — увлекательный
captivity — неволя
desirable — желательный
to do one's best — делать все возможное
to ensure — обеспечивать
coexistence — сосуществование

Questions

1. What is the role of animals in people's lives?
2. What did people use animals for in the past?
3. What do they use them for now?
4. Why do people keep pets at home?
5. What animals make good pets?
6. Why do people keep exotic pets?
7. Is it dangerous to keep exotic pets? Why?
8. Would you like to keep a pet? Why?
9. How can we help animals?

Trees

Trees are amongst the biggest and longest-living things on Earth, some dating back longer than the oldest buildings. Trees are one of the most valuable parts of the environment. People like trees for a lot of reasons.

As well as being nice to look at, trees also play an important role in improving the quality of our life. They offer shade and shelter, which in turn reduces the amount of energy needed to heat and cool nearby buildings. They also give us a lot of fruit to eat and the place for children to play. Besides they remove impurities from the air we breathe.

Urban trees are especially important because for many people they provide the only daily contact with the natural world. What's more, urban trees also provide a home for birds, small animals and butterflies. Without the trees we would lose the pleasure of seeing these creatures in our cities.

Regrettably, however, trees in cities are now coming under threat. There is a limit to the level of pollution they can put up with, and down at street level their roots are being seriously disturbed by digging needed to make a way for modern telephone, television and other cables.

On a world-wide scale forests help to slow down the effects of global warming by using up the gas known as carbon dioxide and giving out the oxygen we need to breathe. The world's largest rainforests (in Brazil, Africa and South East Asia) supply about 80 per cent of the oxygen for the world's fresh air.

Rainforests also give us thousands of valuable wild plants. One square kilometre of rainforests sometimes contains 250 different

types of plants, including 125 different trees. These plants and trees are valuable because scientists use them to make a lot of medicines.

Unfortunately, every year an area of rainforest as big as England and Wales disappears. Large companies cut down the trees for valuable hardwood and for wood for making paper. There are also forest fires. This breaks the ecological balance and deprives lots of animals of places to live. Every day about 50 kinds of rainforest plants and animals become extinct. Whole systems of plant and animal life are disappearing forever.

If nothing is done about it, soon there will be very few trees and animals on Earth. Environmental protection is more than just picking up litter. We must take into consideration all factors that people's survival depends upon.

Vocabulary

valuable — ценный
environment — окружающая среда
reason — причина
to improve — улучшать
shade — тень
shelter — убежище, кров
in turn — в свою очередь
to reduce — уменьшать
amount — количество
to remove — удалять
impurity — нечистота, грязь, примесь
to breathe — дышать
urban — городской
to provide — обеспечивать
the only — единственный
butterfly — бабочка
creature — существо, создание
regrettably — к сожалению
threat — угроза
level — уровень
pollution — загрязнение
root — корень
to disturb — нарушать, беспокоить
to dig — копать

scale — масштаб
carbon dioxide — двуокись углерода
oxygen — кислород
rainforest — тропический лес, джунгли
to supply — снабжать
fresh — свежий
wild — дикий
to contain — содержать
to include — включать
unfortunately — к сожалению
to disappear — исчезать
hardwood — твердая древесина
to break — нарушать
to deprive of — лишать
extinct — вымерший, вымирающий
protection — защита
litter — мусор
to take into consideration — принимать во внимание, учитывать, рассматривать
survival — выживание
to depend upon — зависеть от

Questions

1. Why do people like trees? 2. Why are trees one of the most valuable parts of the environment? 3. How can trees and wild plants help to cure people? 4. What is happening to rainforests now? 5. Are trees in cities in safety now? Why? 6. How does the disappearance of forests influence animals and birds? 7. What can people do to protect plant and animal life?

Pollution

People are now more concerned about their environment. One of the most serious environmental problems is pollution in its many forms: air pollution, water pollution, noise pollution and nuclear pollution.

As the population of large cities continues to grow, pollution problems become worse. The air around us becomes polluted as a result of our own activities. For instance, when coal is burnt, gases and smoke are produced that make the air dirty and unpleasant. The air in big cities is being polluted by traffic and industry. The most dangerous pollutant from cars is lead. Even small amounts can affect the brain and nervous system of people. The number of cars and lorries is growing all the time. On the one hand, they bring mobility to millions of people, but on the other hand, they need bigger, better and more expensive roads, which often ruin the countryside.

Every year the world's industries pollute the atmosphere with about 1,000 million tons of dust and other substances. Some factories release harmful substances all the time as a result of removing wastes from the factory. Other factories may usually produce little or no pollution, but can cause huge problems when there is an accident. Air pollution can cause lung diseases like pneumonia or bronchitis.

Water pollution has become a serious problem because factories also pour poisonous wastes into streams and rivers. Farming can also cause water pollution. The chemicals used by the farmer to protect crops against pests, weeds and disease sometimes get into rivers and kill fish. Although these chemicals are carefully

controlled, this still sometimes happen. To make things still worse, many towns pour their sewage straight into rivers with little treatment beforehand.

Oil pollution is like a recurring nightmare. Sea birds like gulls are always the most common victims. Covered in a thick black coating of oil, such birds are unable to fly or feed themselves.

Our land is also polluted because of our activities. Rubbish tips, dumped poisonous chemicals, broken cars, thrown away bottles and dropped sweet wrappers are all types of land pollution. Some types of land pollution are just unpleasant to look. Others can be dangerous for people and for animals. Land pollution is something that we can all help to prevent by not leaving rubbish in the streets or in the countryside.

Although noise is not a chemical and cannot be seen like a broken car, it is a kind of pollution. Noise is all around us, wherever we live, and we do not notice it most of the time. But people living near airports suffer from the noise of larger and powerful jet airliners taking off and landing. Loud noise can make people ill. People who are exposed to loud noises all the time become very nervous and upset. Moreover, they run a risk of going deaf.

The most alarming form of pollution is nuclear pollution. Accidents at nuclear power stations cause dangerous health problems. The waste products can last hundreds of years.

To sum up, pollution of the environment threatens human health. It can lead to different diseases. To make the air and water clean we need good filters and purifying systems.

Vocabulary

to be concerned about — интересоваться чем-л.

environment — окружающая среда

pollution — загрязнение

noise — шум

nuclear — ядерный, атомный

to pollute — загрязнять

coal — уголь

lead — свинец

amount — количество

to affect — влиять

brain — мозг

lorry — грузовик

expensive — дорогой

dust — пыль

substance — вещество

to release — выпускать, выбрасывать

to remove — удалять

waste — отходы

huge — огромный

accident — авария
to cause — вызывать
lung disease — легочное заболевание
pneumonia — пневмония, воспаление легких
bronchitis — бронхит
to pour — сливать, выливать
poisonous — ядовитый
crop — посев, урожай
pest — сельскохозяйственный вредитель
weed — сорняк
sewage — сточные воды, нечистоты, канализация
straight — прямо
treatment — очистка, обработка
oil — нефть
recurring — повторяющийся, возвращающийся вновь
nightmare — кошмар
gull — чайка

common — распространенный
victim — жертва
rubbish — мусор
tip — свалка (*мусора*)
to dump — выбрасывать, сваливать
sweet wrapper — фантик от конфеты
unpleasant — неприятный
dangerous — опасный
to prevent — предотвращать
although — хотя
to suffer from — страдать от
jet airliner — реактивный самолет
to be exposed to — подвергаться воздействию чего-л.
deaf — глухой
to threaten — угрожать
purifying system — очистительная система

Questions

1. What are the most serious environmental problems? 2. Where does air pollution in the cities mostly come from? 3. What are the reasons for water pollution? 4. How can we prevent land pollution? 5. What are the consequences of noise pollution? 6. Why are nuclear power stations dangerous? 7. What can people do to stop pollution of our environment? 8. How can you personally help to prevent pollution of the environment?

Environmental Problems

Environmental problems have become exceptionally acute in the modern world and environmental protection has become a vital necessity for all people.

Our planet is in serious danger. One of the most important environmental problems in the world today is the shortage of clean

water. Industrial pollution has made many sources of water undrinkable. Rivers, lakes and even seas have become poisonous. Thousands of fish die every year as a result of the illegal dumping of waste in rivers by factories all over the world.

Lake Baikal is one of the world's largest and most beautiful lakes. It contains a rich variety of fish and plants, including 1,300 rare species that do not exist anywhere else in the world. However, they are being killed by the massive industrial waste, which some factories still pour into the lake every day. A few years ago people thought that the supply of clean water was limitless. Now clean water is scarce, and we are beginning to respect this precious resource. We must protect the clean water that remains for the sake of our children and grandchildren.

Air pollution is another important problem. In hundreds of cities and towns the concentration of harmful substances in the air is over ten times the admissible level. Every day a huge number of plants and factories emit lots of harmful substances into the atmosphere of big cities. The great increase in the use of motor cars in the last quarter of the 20th century has caused an increase in a new kind of air pollution. Pollution from factories and cars poisons the air we breathe and is the main reason for the greenhouse effect and acid rains.

The acid rain can damage life in lakes and rivers and destroy forests. Greenhouse effect may also have disastrous consequences for our planet. It is already affecting several areas of the world with unusual weather causing droughts or heavy storms. The world's temperature is going up and the climate is changing. Cutting down on emissions from large plants and exhaust fumes from vehicles could help solve the problem. I think we should try and use alternative energy such as solar energy and wind energy, and design plants and cars that run on electricity, a much cleaner fuel than petrol.

One of the most alarming environmental problems is depletion of the ozone layer, which protects the Earth from the dangerous ultraviolet rays of the sun. Because of the ozone holes the dangerous rays get through the atmosphere, causing skin cancer and other serious diseases. Many scientists think that these ozone holes are the result of air pollution.

In my opinion, the most urgent ecological problem today is the environmental safety of nuclear power stations. Nuclear

pollution can't be seen but its effects can be terrible. We all know how tragic the consequences of the Chernobyl disaster are. Nuclear waste also endangers people's lives. People all over the world protest against nuclear tests and nuclear weapons. If we do not take any action, the possibility of a global nuclear disaster is very real.

Of course, we can't help mentioning such burning issues as destruction of tropical forests and wildlife, overpopulation and shortage of natural resources. The list of serious ecological problems could be continued.

In short, people have destroyed our environment by building huge cities and power stations, developing industries, cutting down trees and excavating mountains. In pursuit of new inventions and discoveries, as well as higher and higher profits, man has forgotten about nature, and it has led him to the edge of ecological catastrophe. Ignorance about ecology may lead to further destruction of nature and worsen living conditions for all living beings.

Vocabulary

environmental — экологический

exceptionally acute — исключи-
тельно острый

protection — защита

vital necessity — жизненная
необходимость

danger — опасность

shortage — недостаток, нехватка

pollution — загрязнение

source — источник

poisonous — ядовитый

to dump — выбрасывать,
сваливать

waste — отходы

to contain — содержать

variety — разнообразие

to include — включать

species — вид(ы)

to exist — существовать

to pour — выливать, сливать

supply — запас

scarce — дефицитный, скудный

precious — драгоценный

to remain — оставаться

for the sake — ради

harmful substances — вредные
вещества

admissible level — допустимый
уровень

huge — огромный

to emit — выбрасывать

increase — увеличение

to cause — вызывать

acid rain — кислотный дождь

disastrous consequences —
катастрофические послед-
ствия

to affect — влиять

drought — засуха

emissions — выбросы

exhaust fumes — выхлопные газы

alarming — тревожный

depletion — истощение
ozone layer — озоновый слой
to protect — защищать
rays of the sun — солнечные лучи
hole — дыра
skin cancer — рак кожи
disease — болезнь
scientist — ученый
urgent — неотложный, срочный
safety — безопасность
nuclear — ядерный, атомный
to endanger — угрожать
weapon — оружие

disaster — катастрофа
to mention — упоминать
issue — проблема, вопрос
destruction — разрушение
in pursuit of — в погоне за
invention — изобретение
discovery — открытие
profit — прибыль, доход
to lead — привести
edge — грань, край
ignorance — невежество,
незнание
to worsen — ухудшать

Questions

1. Why is our planet in serious danger? 2. What ecological problems are urgent now? 3. What is the influence of pollution on people's health? 4. What is happening to our forests? 5. What are the consequences of nuclear disasters? 6. Was life better a hundred years ago? Why do you think so? 7. What ecological problems exist in your home place? 8. How can we save our planet? 9. What can you personally do to help our ecology?

How to Help Our Planet

Today environmental issues are much spoken about on TV, radio and in newspapers. If people want to survive, they must do their best to solve these problems. Fortunately, it's not too late to save our planet. We understand that our environment is not just our home town but the whole Earth. The protection of the environment requires the cooperation of all nations. Governments should take measures that will help improve the environment.

There are a lot of environmental groups and international organizations whose main goal is to strengthen cooperation among environmentalists from different countries. The most famous of them is "Greenpeace", which combines the people's efforts for peace with the huge movement for nature conservation. "The World Wildlife Fund (WWF)" is the name of another international

organization that appeared in 1961. It has created or given support to National Parks in five continents. You may also join “Friends of the Earth Trust”, which is an educational charity set up to help people of all ages become aware of the threats to our environment.

However, there are a lot of simple things we should all do to stop the destruction of the environment. First of all, we must keep our cities and towns clean. That means, we mustn't drop litter in public places. If we see litter on the ground, we must put it into a litter bin. Besides, we shouldn't dump our rubbish without thinking which things, such as bottles and paper, can be recycled. And of course, we mustn't draw or paint on pavements, walls or trees.

We must stop using aerosol sprays because the stuff they contain destroys the ozone layer. We should take care of birds and animals. We can help to plant trees and create parks for endangered species. We can clean rivers and canals and create footpaths. But first of all we must change people's attitude towards the environment.

If we take action now, there might be some hope for the future. If we do nothing, we are heading for disaster!

Vocabulary

environmental — экологический
issue — проблема, вопрос
to survive — выживать
fortunately — к счастью
environment — окружающая среда
protection — защита
to require — требовать
government — правительство
to take measures — принимать меры
to improve — улучшать
goal — цель
to strengthen — укреплять
to combine — сочетать
effort — усилие
huge — огромный
support — поддержка
trust — общество (*напр., по охране чего-л.*)

charity — благотворительная организация
aware — знающий, осведомленный
threat — угроза
destruction — разрушение
to drop litter — бросать мусор
litter bin — корзина для мусора, мусорный бак
to dump — выбрасывать
rubbish — мусор
to recycle — перерабатывать
pavement — тротуар
stuff — вещество
ozone layer — озоновый слой
to take care of — заботиться о
endangered species — вымирающие виды
attitude — отношение
disaster — катастрофа

Questions

1. How can people protect our planet? 2. How can we save nature resources? 3. Should we reject the technological progress? 4. How can we safeguard the world's wildlife? 5. What is the aim of ecological organizations? 6. What ecological organizations do you know? 7. Do you have environmental programmes in your city? 8. What can you personally do to keep the world healthy?

Dialogues

1.

— Do you have any pet?

— Yes, I've got a cat, Murka. She is black and white and her hair is soft and fluffy. I find it really beautiful.

— How old is she?

— Oh, she is very young, that's why she likes to play very much. I often play with her after school.

— Where did you get her from?

— Well, my aunt gave her to me as a birthday present, and I was really happy. I have always dreamt of having a pet.

— Why? Why did you need a pet?

— You see, I have neither brother nor sister, so I often feel lonely. And Murka is my real friend.

— Do you take her with you when you go somewhere?

— Actually, she is very young, so she always stays at home with my grandmother, but I hope I'll be able to take her to our country house next summer. And what about you? Do you have a pet?

— Yes, I have a dog Rex. My parents bought it in a pet shop last summer. Rex is a bulldog and he is very strong and brave.

— I know that dogs are good guards, so you are lucky to have such a strong dog.

— You are right. Dogs are very good pets. They can help people in many ways. A lot of dogs help blind people to walk and to cross the street.

— Do you punish your pet?

— Actually, I don't. Rex is a very clever dog. He always answers to his name and does what I tell him to do. And what about you?

— Murka is also very clever, and she never does anything wrong. I think that pets are our friends and we must love them.

— I completely agree with you.

2.

— What do you think about zoos?

— In my opinion, they are a good thing. I'm for them.

— Well, I think I'm against them. I don't like to see animals in cages. Personally, I think zoos are bad for the animals and bad for us.

— That's not right. They aren't bad for the animals. Animals are aggressive. We have to put them in cages.

— I don't agree. I think animals like chimps and elephants can't live a happy life in the zoo. Captivity is not natural for wild animals.

— I wouldn't say that. First, elephants don't live in cages and, secondly, why don't they escape all the time? In my opinion, that's because they are happy in zoos.

— Perhaps, you are right. People take good care of animals in zoos. But some people keep exotic pets like snakes, lizards or even wild cats. What are the reasons for having such extraordinary animals at home?

— Well, exotic pets are capable of bringing tremendous joy into the lives of their owners. They are often fascinating and beautiful to watch.

— But we often come across warnings about keeping wild animals at home. Isn't it dangerous?

— Yes, it's very dangerous, because such animals may become unpredictable as they get older. For example, a 13-year-old boy was recently attacked by a tiger kept in a cage built near his grandfather's home.

— Oh, it's really terrible! I agree that wild animals can be only kept in zoos. But what animals make good pets, I wonder?

— Domesticated animals make good pets because they have been bred for thousands of years to coexist with humans. I'd recommend dogs, cats, rabbits, guinea pigs, hamsters, domestic mice or rats, budgies, canaries and tropical fish.

— Thank you for your advice.

3.

— What is your attitude towards animals?

— Well, I think that animals are an important part of our life, aren't they?

— I completely agree with you. Humans have always lived in close association with animals. But unmanaged exploitation and hunting have driven some species to the edge of extinction.

— That's terrible. People all over the world protest against hunting, but many people still prefer this way of spending their free time. For example, in Great Britain fox-hunting is among the most popular leisure activities.

— But today fox-hunting and other blood sports are under discussion in Britain too. Some people suggest using guns that injure without killing.

— Yet not all people realize that animals are very important for humans. A lot of people still regard them as simply lumps of walking meat and they are not against hunting.

— But on the other hand, some people see them as almost human. For example, when a rich Londoner discovered that her poodle was diabetic, she paid for daily injections for 16 years in order to keep it alive. And when it died, she had a memorial erected to it at London's Battersea Dog's Home.

— It's incredible! But I agree that some animals, like dolphins, are truly intelligent. Some scientists who have worked with dolphins believe that they might be even more intelligent than us. But they are still being hunted and killed.

— I'm sure that we must ban hunting and cruel experiments on animals.

— I completely agree with you.

4.

— What do you think is the most important environmental issue nowadays?

— Well, in my opinion the most serious ecological problem today is the shortage of clean water.

— Why? Don't we have enough water on our planet?

— My answer is "yes" and "no". On the one hand, there is a lot of water on our planet. It is in oceans, seas, rivers and lakes.

But on the other hand, very little water on Earth is good for drinking.

— Really? Why?

— Because rivers and lakes are polluted by factories and farms.

— Is there any solution to this problem?

— Of course, there is, but it requires cooperation of all people.

— So, what exactly can we do to improve the quality of water?

— First of all, we can ban pouring industrial waste into rivers and lakes. Besides, we can install different purifying systems.

— I am with you there. Fresh water is very important for human beings. But we shouldn't forget about the ocean.

— I completely agree with you. Because the ocean gives us food, energy and minerals.

— You are right, but today the ocean also needs help because ships dump toxic waste, tankers leak and spill oil and boaters throw trash overboard.

— The situation may sound hopeless, but I'm sure we can do something about it.

— Yes, of course. For example, we can protect birds and marine life.

— But how can we do it?

— First, we mustn't throw plastic bags or bottles in or near the water, because sea birds, turtles, whales and other sea animals often mistake plastic things for food and die. Besides, we can take part in beach clean-up projects.

— I can't but agree with you. And I want to add that people should understand that their activities can affect oceans and seas.

— Exactly! People should understand that all water usually flows into seas and oceans, so what they do inland can affect marine life.

— I agree with you, but first of all we must learn more about the state of the ocean and what can be done to improve it.

— You are absolutely right!

5.

— Many people think that life was better in the past. The air was cleaner, the water was purer and life was safer.

— No wonder, because there are a lot of environmental problems nowadays. You only have to listen to TV news to realize that they are not solved.

— You are quite right! However, problems such as the hole in the ozone layer and acid rain often seem unimportant to us. It's difficult to get upset about tropical forests on the other side of the planet.

— I can't agree with you. Of course, we can't see ozone holes, but the dangerous rays of the sun get through the atmosphere, causing skin cancer and other diseases. More and more often people are told not to be in direct sunlight.

— To tell the truth, air pollution seems to be much more serious problem. We pollute the air we breathe. Everyone can see smoke coming out of tall factory chimneys. Everyone can smell the gas from the back of a bus. In big cities the concentration of harmful substances in the air is rather high. This can also have disastrous consequences for our health.

— I am of the same opinion. Water pollution is another serious problem. Thousands of fish die every year because factories pour a lot of waste into rivers. If people drink polluted water, they may die too.

— What is more, the seas are also in danger. When I went with my parents to the seaside last summer, I was surprised that the water was not blue but brown with rubbish floating in it.

— But the most urgent environmental problem is nuclear pollution. I am against the use of nuclear energy. The waste products can last hundreds of years.

— And who is to blame for all these environmental problems?

— The answer is simple: all of us. The technological progress of the 20th century resulted in widespread mechanization, atomic powers stations, new roads and highways. But it cannot be denied that the price for rapid industrial development is very high.

— Should we reject the progress then?

— Never! But we must take control of the progress to give it a humanistic direction. We must take into consideration all the factors that people's survival depends upon. The solution of the environmental problems requires the cooperation of all nations.

— Are you a Greenpeace supporter?

— Yes, I am. It's a noble aim to keep the planet and cities clean. We want everybody to do his or her best in caring for all human beings and living creatures.

Writing

1.

Flat 147
21 Selezneva Street
Moscow 224563
Russia
14 October 2005

Greenpeace
Canonbury Villas
London N1 2PN
UK

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to ask for more information in connection with your “Call for Volunteers” to help Greenpeace. I am not a member of Greenpeace but I would like to know more about how I can help.

I would be grateful if you could tell me what kind of work is involved and whether I would need any special qualifications. Also, how old do volunteers need to be? I am sixteen years old and I live in Moscow. I do not have much experience of environmental work but I like going for walks. I recently started birdwatching as a hobby.

I would also like to know where the work will take place. I would like to work in my own area if possible. I believe there are a lot of ecological problems in my town.

Finally, could you tell me when the work would be as I would prefer summer work? I go to school but I have a lot of free time in the holidays.

If there is anything else I need to know, please let me know.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Mark Adamov

2.

15 May 1983

Sandbourne Echo
Sandbourne
Dorset

Dear Sir,

When is something going to be done to protect the children of this town from the so-called “dog lovers”?

The streets are filthy, and so are the beaches. What annoys me most though, are the owners who allow their dogs to foul children’s playgrounds and playing fields. Dogs are carriers of several serious diseases which can affect children for life.

In theory you can be fined for allowing your dog to foul pavements or playgrounds. In practice, nothing is ever done to prevent it happening. I’ve heard enough about “animal rights”. What about children’s rights?

Yours faithfully,

Mrs P Stephens

UNIT 21

INTERCULTURAL COMMUNICATION

Making Introductions

Nowadays people seem to be taking a more casual approach to etiquette than in previous times. However, it is valuable to know the basic tenets of etiquette so that you know what to do in business and social settings.

Introductions are one of the things we do frequently in our work and daily life. There are a few key rules to ensure you conduct according to the traditions of etiquette.

There are occasions in which you need to introduce yourself. To introduce yourself extend your hand and say, “Hello, I am Jack Brown.”

When you are introduced to someone, you should always stand and shake hands and make eye contact. Not shaking hands could be perceived as a sign of rejection and could be very insulting to the other person. If you are wearing gloves, you should remove them before shaking.

Some of the situations in which you should shake hands:

- when meeting a person for the first time or when saying goodbye;
- when renewing acquaintances;
- when greeting a host or hostess or being introduced to someone;
- when ending a transaction or leaving a business or social event.

There are certain rules of shaking hands:

- a woman offers to shake hands with a man;
- an older person extends his or her hand first to a younger one;
- a “more important” person offers to shake hands with a “less important” person.

A woman does not rise to shake hands with anyone, unless that person is much older or very prominent.

A man should stand when shaking hands with someone. He should also rise when a woman comes into a room for the first time and remain standing until she is seated.

In social situations a man is traditionally introduced to a woman. However, in the business world introductions are based on a person's rank or position in a company. The highest-ranking person is introduced to everyone else in order of his or her position. The only exception to these traditions is when you are dealing with a client. In this case the client should be introduced first. Use a friendly relaxed manner when introducing people. Remember to smile.

If name tags are worn, they should be placed on the right shoulder. The reason for this is that most people are right-handed and when people shake hands, using their right hand, their eyes can best see the name tag and the name of the person.

When you are given a business card, take the time to read it. Don't simply slip it into your pocket. Say the name of the person out loudly to check that you have the correct pronunciation. If you aren't sure how to pronounce it, ask the person to pronounce it for you.

Vocabulary

introduction — представление человека

casual — повседневный, обычный

approach — подход

tenets — принципы

social setting — окружающая обстановка

key rules — основные правила

to ensure — обеспечивать

to extend — протягивать

to shake hands — обмениваться рукопожатием

to make eye contact — смотреть в глаза

to perceive — воспринимать

sign of rejection — знак неприязни

insulting — оскорбительный

glove — перчатка

to remove — снимать

to renew — возобновлять

acquaintance — знакомство

transaction — сделка

rank — служебное положение

the highest-ranking person — человек, занимающий высший пост

name tag — бирка с именем

shoulder — плечо

business card — визитная карточка делового партнера

Questions

1. Who is introduced to whom in social situations? 2. How should you introduce a client? 3. How would you introduce yourself? 4. How to shake hands properly? 5. In what situations do people shake hands? 6. If name tags are worn, where should they be placed? 7. Why is it so important to be introduced to people and introduce people properly? 8. Will all these tips help you to make a good first impression on people?

Greetings

The purpose of greetings in all languages is the same: to establish contact with another person and to show friendliness.

It is very important to use the correct form of greeting. Do you know, for example, that “Good day” is not exactly the same as “Добрый день?” It is not an arrival greeting, as in other languages. “Good day” is used when leaving, but even then not very often.

“Hello” is the universal form of greeting. It is acceptable in any situation except after a very formal introduction. A friendly “Hello” said with a smile is warm and informal. “Hello” followed by a name is even friendlier and more personal.

“Hi” is a greeting for people who already know one another. “Hi” is an abbreviation of “hiya”, which in turn is a corruption of “How are you?” It should never be used in any formal situation.

To people you do not know very well, you may say “Good morning” (until lunch time), “Good afternoon” (until 5–6 pm) and “Good evening” (after 6 pm).

To neighbours, colleagues and other people whom you see regularly, you may say “Morning”, “Afternoon”, “Evening”.

As a greeting people often say “How are you?” Since this widely used phrase implies no sincere interest in an answer, the best response is either “Fine, thank you” or “Very well, thank you”.

“How do you do?” is said after formal introductions. You say this without expecting any answer but “How do you do?”

Vocabulary

purpose — цель
greeting — приветствие
to establish — устанавливать
friendliness — дружелюбие
arrival — прибытие
universal — универсальный

acceptable — приемлемый
abbreviation — сокращение
neighbour — сосед
to imply — подразумевать
response — ответ

Questions

1. What is the purpose of greetings? 2. Why is it very important to establish contact with another person? 3. What kind of greeting is “Good day”? 4. Is “Hello” acceptable in any situations? 5. What do you know about “Hello”? 6. What do you know about “Hi”? 7. To whom we can say “Morning”, “Afternoon” or “Evening”? 8. What do you know about a greeting “How are you”? 9. What do you know about a greeting “How do you do”? 10. Why is it so important to use etiquette properly?

Miss, Mrs or Ms?

While communicating, it's necessary to address to a person correctly. Mrs [misiz] stands before the surname of a married woman. Most women, when they marry, take the surname of their husband. For example, if Mary Smith marries John Turner, she becomes Mary Turner. In formal circles a wife may be addressed by her husband's first name: Mrs John Turner. This practice, however, is dying out. A woman can keep her own name if she wishes. Many professional women keep their name for business purposes.

“Miss” goes for unmarried ladies. It is also a respectful form of address used by pupils to a woman teacher. We often meet this word before the name of a place or activity, which a young lady has been chosen to represent, usually because she is beautiful (Miss Russia was voted Miss World 2000).

Women's Lib, the Women's Liberation Movement, has introduced the abbreviation Ms (read as [miz]). It began to be used in the 1970s by women who did not want other people to know if they were married or not. This neutral variant is used to refer to a

woman who does not wish to be called either “Miss” or “Mrs” or when we do not know if she is married and are afraid to make a mistake in this respect.

The usual way of showing both a married and a maiden name is to use the French expression *née* (read as [nei]): Mary Turner, nee Smith.

Vocabulary

to address — обращаться
married woman — замужняя женщина
surname — фамилия
formal circles — официальные круги
to die out — вымирать
respectful form — уважительная форма

business purposes — деловые цели
to introduce — представлять
abbreviation — сокращение
neutral variant — нейтральный вариант
to refer — обращаться
in this respect — в связи с этим
maiden name — девичья фамилия
née — урожденная

Questions

1. Where does the word Mrs stand? 2. Where may a wife be addressed by her husband’s first name? 3. Why do many professional women keep their maiden name? 4. Where does the word Miss stand? 5. Where else is this word used? 6. What does the abbreviation Ms mean? 7. When did it begin to be used? 8. What is the usual way of showing both a married and a maiden name?

The Art of Speaking

The art of speaking has existed since time immemorial. It flourished in ancient Greece and Rome where it also received its theoretical grounds. So when people speak, it’s very important to use language in a way that is effective and influences people. It is necessary to clarify concepts and goals when you speak. There are some laws of rhetoric which include:

- the law of harmonizing dialogue. In other words, effective speech communication is only made possible through dialogue-like interaction of speech event participants;

- the law of advancing towards the pre-set communicative goal, when both a communicator and a recipient steadily move to the designated aim;
- the law of emotional colouring of speech. The speaker is supposed to feel what he talks about with all his heart and soul;
- the law of bestowing pleasure. The speaker should aim at pleasing his audience and making communication as rewarding as possible. The speaker is supposed to be enthusiastic himself. And for this purpose he has to be sincere and to know what he is talking about and why he is talking.

Nowadays it's very important to persuade people when you speak or communicate with them. Sincere appreciation is one of the secrets in handling men. But not flattery is. It seldom works with discerning people. It is shallow, selfish and insincere. It usually fails. The difference between appreciation and flattery is simple. One is sincere and the other is insincere. One is selfish and the other is unselfish. So when you communicate, try to figure out the other man's good points. Then forget flattery. Give honest, sincere appreciation. Be hearty in your approbation and lavish in your praise.

Don't forget that everybody in the world is seeking happiness — and there is one sure way to find it. That is controlling your thoughts. "Nothing is good or bad," said Shakespeare, "but thinking makes it so." Happiness doesn't depend on outward conditions. It depends on inner conditions. So when you talk to people, greet your friends with a smile. Don't fear being misunderstood and don't waste a minute thinking about your enemies. Keep your mind on the great and splendid things you would like to do, and your partner will appreciate you and your ideas. A pleasant smile is a strong indication of a friendly and open attitude. When you smile, you demonstrate that you have noticed the person in a positive manner.

The ancient Chinese are wise a lot, and they have a proverb that you should always remember. It goes like this: "A man without a smiling face must not open a shop." So don't forget about the value of a smile when communicating, and everything will be OK.

Vocabulary

to flourish — распространяться
grounds — обоснование
to influence — влиять
to clarify — вносить ясность
concept — идея, понятие
goal — цель
rhetoric — риторика
the law of harmonizing dialogue — закон гармонизирующего диалога
interaction — взаимодействие
participant — участник
the law of advancing — закон достижения
the pre-set communicative goal — предварительно установленная цель общения

emotional colouring of speech — эмоциональная окраска речи
soul — душа
to bestow pleasure — дарить радость
to reward — награждать
sincere — искренний
to persuade — убеждать
appreciation — высокая оценка
flattery — лесть
to discern — различать
selfish — эгоистичный
approbation — одобрение
lavish — щедрый
outward — внешний
inner — внутренний
to appreciate — оценивать
wise — мудрый

Questions

1. Where did the art of speaking appear? 2. Where did the art of speaking receive its theoretical grounds? 3. Why is it necessary to clarify concepts and goals when you speak? 4. What laws of rhetoric do you know? 5. Why is it very important to persuade people when you speak or communicate with them? 6. What is flattery? 7. What is the difference between appreciation and flattery? 8. Why is it very important to remember about the value of a smile when communicating? 9. What Chinese proverb about a smiling face do you know? 10. In what way do all these tips help you while communicating?

The Language of Conversation

Conversation is the most natural, most frequent and most widely occurring of all kinds of spoken English. It occurs during communication. It may be between strangers, or between acquaintances, or between intimates; it may involve exchanging

information, or merely exchanging goodwill or, perhaps, ill will. Conversation is a reciprocal speech situation. Any speaker has direct feedback in the form of looks, nods, facial expressions to help him communicate effectively.

There are some differences in sound between spoken prose and conversation. And among them are:

- The intonation patterns of conversation are more varied than those of spoken prose.
- The tempo of conversation is less even than that of spoken prose.
- Pauses in spoken prose occur at the boundaries of important units (sentences, clauses), but in conversation their role is different and their occurrence is less predictable.
- Silence is important in conversation, though often it goes unnoticed. The gap may be filled by gestures and facial expressions, the conversation continues during them, though not in words.
- Normal non-fluency is characteristic of conversation. This is rare in spoken prose.
- The apparent incompleteness of conversation because not everything needs be put into words.
- Repetition is important, so also are such expressions as *sort of, kind of, you see, shall I say, you know, I mean, I mean to say, what I call, well*, etc. These may be called temporizers. They enable us to play for the time while we think of what to say next. Other temporizers are *mm* and *er* — these are referred to as spoken pauses.

So there are some practical ideas about conversational situations:

- using simple sentences;
- using tag questions;
- using parataxis (*It's cool, It's warm*);
- using abbreviated verb forms;
- using phrasal verbs;
- using temporizers;
- using determiners (*the, this, those*, etc.) and intensifiers (*too, pretty, quite, rather, bit*, etc.);
- using initial markers (*well, but*, etc.);
- using feedback (*yeah, mmm*, etc.).

Vocabulary

frequent — частый	predictable — предсказуемый
to occur — возникать	silence — тишина
acquaintances — знакомые	gesture — жест
intimates — близкие друзья	fluency — беглость
to involve — включать	apparent incompleteness — очевидная незакончен- ность
to exchange — обмениваться	repetition — повторение
merely — просто, только	temporizer — замедлитель
goodwill — доброжелательность	to enable — позволять, давать возможность
reciprocal — взаимный	to refer to — относиться
feedback — взаимодействие	spoken pause — разговорная пауза
nod — кивок	parataxis — безличное предло- жение
facial expression — выражение лица	abbreviated verb form — сокра- щенная форма глагола
intonation pattern — интонаци- онный образец	determiner — определитель
to vary — различаться	intensifier — усилитель
tempo — темп, ритм	initial marker — вводное слово
pause — пауза	
boundary — граница	
clause — придаточное предло- жение	

Questions

1. What is conversation? 2. What helps a person communicate effectively? 3. Are there any differences in sound between spoken prose and conversation? 4. What are they? 5. What are the most important differences in sound between spoken prose and conversation in your opinion? 6. What are practical ideas about communication? 7. What ideas do you use while communicating? 8. Do they help you during conversation?

Body Language

93 per cent of our communication with others is non-verbal. What we actually say makes up only 7 per cent. That's what US scientist Ray Birdwhistell found out when he began to study body language in the 1950s. He filmed conversations and then played them back in slow motion to examine gestures, expressions and

posture. When he noticed the same movements happening again and again, he realized that the body can talk too.

We use our bodies all the time. We nod instead of saying “Yes”, shrug our shoulders to mean “I don’t know” or raise our eyebrows to show surprise. The way we sit or stand, the expression on our face can reveal far more than words. But many of us miss these signals, because we don’t know what they mean.

For example, if a friend is fibbing to you, he starts blushing. He is embarrassed because he knows he isn’t telling the truth. Sometimes he looks away while he is talking. That’s because our eyes can reveal what we are thinking. Boys tend to look at the ground when they’re lying, while girls look at the ceiling. If they put a hand over their mouth, it’s another signal they’re lying.

Imagine you’re asking your teacher for a few more days to finish your homework. As you talk, she starts rubbing her ear. This is a signal that she doesn’t want to hear what you’re saying.

We use folded arms as a defensive barrier to protect ourselves when we feel nervous or think someone is criticizing us. So, if you’re making a point in a discussion, and the others fold their arms, you’d better give up! You won’t convince them, even if they say they agree with you.

A loud, hollow laugh is an obvious sign of nerves. And how much space we take up when we’re sitting down also shows whether we feel confident.

In fact body language gives away our true feelings so often that politicians are taught not to touch their faces, as placing their hands near the mouth or eyes demonstrates insecurity and suggests an attempt to cover up what you really think.

So you can follow these tips to your own advantage. For example, you’ve met somebody who you’d like to get to know better. Look him in the eyes — it shows you’re sincere. When he is talking, lean slightly forward towards him and tilt your head on one side. This gives him the message “I’m interested and I’m paying attention”. Imitate his gestures. But be careful! Don’t be too obvious or he’ll think you’re making fun of him.

If you want to look confident and full of energy, you may wear bright clothes or something you like and feel you look good in. And you should smile and be relaxed. If you feel pretty tense, you should gently shake your arms and legs to release all the tension. This will

stop you from looking embarrassed or awkward. When you hold your back straight and lift your chin slightly, this creates an impression of self-confidence and pride.

Vocabulary

non-verbal — без помощи слов, невербальный

to play back — воспроизводить запись

slow motion — замедленная съемка

gesture — жест, телодвижение

posture — поза

to nod — кивать головой

to shrug shoulders — пожимать плечами

to reveal — обнаруживать, показывать

to fib — говорить неправду, привирать

to blush — краснеть

embarrassed — смущенный, сконфуженный

to look away — отводить взгляд

defensive barrier — защитный барьер

to tend — быть склонным к чему-л.

ceiling — потолок

to fold one's arms — скрещивать руки

to make a point — высказываться, настаивать на своем

to convince — убеждать

to give up — отказываться

to use smth to one's own advantage — использовать что-л. в своих интересах

sincere — искренний

to lean forward — наклоняться вперед

to tilt — наклонять

obvious — явный, очевидный

hollow — несерьезный, пустой

obvious sign — очевидный знак

pretty tense — очень напряженный, возбужденный

to release — избавляться

awkward — неловкий, неуклюжий

to hold one's back straight — держать спину прямо

to lift — поднимать

chin — подбородок

self-confident — уверенный в себе

pride — гордость

Questions

1. Who found out that 93% of our communication is non-verbal? 2. How did he find out it? 3. What do we want to say when we shrug our shoulders? 4. How can you notice if a friend is fibbing to you? 5. Can people's eyes reveal what they are thinking? 6. What other gestures and postures do you know? 7. Do they help you in communication? 8. Do you use body language to your own advantage? 9. In what way do you use body language to your own advantage?

Culture Traditions in Britain

If you are invited to dinner at someone's home, you should take some flowers or a box of chocolates. If you are invited to an informal party, it is quite common to take a bottle of wine or even a few bottles of beer. At English parties men are expected to wear a suit and tie. If you wish to bring a friend along, that's fine, but it is polite to ask first. You are not expected to turn up with very expensive presents. People in Britain are generally quite careful about time. When you are invited to someone's house, you should either arrive on time or no later than fifteen minutes after the time arranged. If in doubt, give your hosts a ring. You should be careful about overstaying your welcome. Look out for signs of tiredness in your hosts. You can say, "Well, I think it's time we are going."

Usually in Britain they introduce people by their first name or their first name and surname together. Most people use first names at informal parties. It is usual to shake hands with men and to kiss women on the cheek when you are introduced to them. Do not embrace, however, on this first encounter and do not stand too close to the other person. As you are introduced to someone, you say, "How do you do?" or "Pleased to meet you." You need not wait to be introduced — just introduce yourself.

You can "break the ice" with strangers by talking about the weather: "Shame about the weather." "Is it still raining?" or "Bit chilly today, don't you think?" When you have broken the ice like this, you can then go on to ask the person you are talking other questions.

Another good topic for conversation is work. However, people do not like talking about politics except in a general way, and you should avoid asking them what political party they vote for. When you first meet someone, it is also not appropriate to ask about their age or how much they weigh.

A pub is where you drink beer or other alcoholic drinks, but light refreshments are also available. Pubs serve drinks at fixed times and generally accept last orders at about 11 pm. It may be difficult to get a drink after this time. At lunch time and sometimes in the evening food is served. If you order more than three pints of beer, the food is free of charge, so drink as much as you can and then ask (politely) for your free meal. People may pay for their own drinks or take it in turns to buy a "round", in other words, to pay for the whole group.

Vocabulary

wine — вино

suit — костюм

tie — галстук

to turn up — появляться

to arrange — договариваться,
улаживать

in doubt — в сомнении

to give a ring — звонить

to overstay — пересидеть

tiredness — усталость

to introduce — представлять

to embrace — обниматься

encounter — встреча

to break the ice — растопить лед

shame — досада

to go on — продолжать

to earn — зарабатывать

conversation — разговор

politics — политика

appropriate — подходящий

to weigh — весить

light refreshment — легкий

освежающий напиток, легкая
закуска

to be free of charge — бесплатно

Questions

1. What presents should you take if you are invited to dinner at someone's home? 2. When should you arrive if you are invited to someone's house? 3. How do people in Britain usually introduce one another? 4. What are popular topics to talk if you want to "break ice"? 5. What is served at pubs?

Dialogues

1.

— You're a businessman, you travel a lot. What can you tell our listeners about etiquette in different countries?

— As for me, I have to be very careful about other countries' cultural habits. For example, in Japan they consider it very rude if you look at them for too long. So if you go there, try to avoid prolonged eye contact.

— But I know that in some Asian countries it seems to be quite the opposite. On trips to Pakistan I've found that men often stare at you for ages. It makes me quite nervous.

— I visited Australia several times. And there, the "thumbs up" sign that you use in Britain and the States is actually quite rude and people avoid it.

— And one more interesting fact about Japan. In Japan white means death, so you don't use white for wrapping gifts.

— In Japan chrysanthemums are traditional flowers for gifts. But in many European countries you should avoid to present chrysanthemums. And here in the States there's no problem with them.

— Oh, thank you very much for the interview.

2.

— I believe very strongly that good manners make for good business.

— Yes, I share your opinion. I think if you make an arrangement to meet at a particular time, then you should arrive on time. I think this is true in Britain as well as here in Germany.

— And when I am in the Mediterranean countries, I'm often disappointed in this respect, where punctuality is not so important.

— When you are on business trip, it's very important to know customs of other countries. For example, you should know that pork, shellfish and alcohol are forbidden in many Arab countries.

— On the other hand, if you've invited a Hindu round for dinner, it wouldn't please them to be presented with a plate of beef, as cows are sacred in the Hindu religion.

— In many countries where they speak Spanish, they have rather long names because they often use their father's and mother's surname. So it's very difficult for them when they talk to people from the States or Britain, whether to call them by their first name or to call them Mr Smith.

— Yes, if you don't want to give offence, you should know everything about the country you visit.

3.

— Professor, you're a psychologist who specializes in educational psychology.

— Of course, it's very important to know psychology when you communicate with people. First of all getting on with people can be very simple, as simple as just making eye contact when you speak to people. Look at people, it's so simple. For instance, I knew someone, a colleague at work, who would greet you in the morning

with a cheery “Good morning! How are you?” and all that, but he would be looking over your shoulder all the time at somebody else.

— No eye contact?

— That’s right. This person wasn’t really talking to you, just going through the motions.

— Insincere?

— Yes.

— Right. And what about gossip? People like to gossip about each other, don’t they?

— To some extent, yes. We all do, it’s natural curiosity. But I don’t think anybody likes people who spread rumours or repeat gossip about others.

— Thank you very much for your cooperation with us. Bye.

— Any time. Bye-bye.

4.

— How can we look confident while communicating?

— Well, you can always fake it. For example, you should just wear bright clothes.

— But not everyone feels good in bright clothes.

— That’s right. It’s even more important to wear something you like, something you feel you look good in. And of course, you should smile and be relaxed.

— Imagine that I have a job interview. What would you recommend?

— First of all release all the tension. Just take a few deep breaths and gently shake your arms and legs. This will stop you from looking awkward.

— And what about when I walk into the interview room?

— Just hold your back straight and lift your chin slightly. This creates an impression of self-confidence and pride.

— Thank you very much.

— My pleasure.

5.

— Are there many superstitions in your country?

— Yes, many people in my country are still superstitious, especially people who live in the country or older people. However, quite a few young people also believe in superstitions.

— And what are the superstitions?

— One common superstition is called the “evil eye”. This means that if you say something good about someone, you will bring them bad luck. For example, if you tell parents their child is very beautiful or very clever and then something bad happens to that child, the parents will blame you and say you “gave it the evil eye”.

— And in my country there are some superstitions that are linked to objects. Many people believe that a rabbit’s foot brings good luck, so whenever they go on a journey, they take a rabbit’s foot with them. Another superstition is that if a woman sits at the corner of the table, she will never get married.

— I personally don’t take superstitions seriously. Nevertheless, I think traditions like these make life more interesting and they also connect modern life in the city to when people lived in villages in the country.

Writing

1.

15 January 2005

Dear Ann,

Thanks for your letter. Sorry I’ve taken so long to write, but it’s taken some time to get used to the way of life here. Just finding your way around is quite tricky. You have to look out for cars coming from the wrong side of the road.

Anyway, Boston is great! It’s fantastic for shopping. One of the things they have here, which we don’t, is a drugstore. It’s not a chemist’s, exactly, because it sells all kinds of things. It does sell medicine, but you can also get a pizza there if you want!

I’ve noticed they really do things in a big way here. The buildings, the cars, even the food they eat. The portions you get in restaurants are huge. You ask for chicken and they bring you half a chicken! And the cokes are huge too.

Anyway, there's more to write about, but I'll save it for my next letter. We're going out on the town tonight.

That's all for now. Write soon,

Best wishes,

John

2.

21 September

Dear Granny,

Haven't seen you for ages. I miss you very much. I've seen a lot of wonderful sights in London. They impressed me greatly. But I'd like to tell you about one very interesting thing — the art of tipping.

This word was posted in eighteenth-century London coffee houses. But even now such a tradition exists in Britain. I didn't know what tip to give to the waiter. And a friend of mine recommended me what to do. He says that waiters make their feelings known in a loud and insulted voice or have even been known to return the tip to the customer. So you had better watch out.

There are other interesting customs in Britain, and I'll write about them in my next letter.

Kiss you,

David

ЕСЛИ ЗАВТРА ЭКЗАМЕН?!

В пособие включены тексты для чтения и обсуждения по темам, которые будут вынесены на устный выпускной экзамен по английскому языку в 11 классах общеобразовательных учреждений.

Предлагаемые вопросы к текстам способствуют более глубокому восприятию прочитанного. Задания построены так, что ответы на них помогут учащимся эффективно повторить весь пройденный материал и очень быстро подготовиться к успешной сдаче экзамена.

Материалы подготовили опытные педагоги и методисты Елена Ильинична Кисунько и Елена Сергеевна Музланова.

Если завтра экзамен, а вы еще не приступили к его подготовке, то это пособие для вас.